PNX2000 User Manual
UM10105_1

Audio Video Input Processor

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

PHILIPS

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Functional Specification

Chapter 2: Control Interface

Chapter 3: I2D

Chapter 4: Video Processing (Viddec)

Chapter 5: Data Capture Unit

Chapter 6: ITU656

Chapter 7: Audio Processing

Chapter 8: CGU

Chapter 9: Standards, Modes and Settings

Chapter 10: Device Initialization

Chapter 11: Application Example

Chapter 12: PCB Layout Guidelines

Chapter 13: Support Tools

List of Figures

Chapter 1: Functional Specification

Chapter 2: Control Interface

Chapter 3: I2D

Chapter 4: Video Processing (Viddec)

Chapter 5: Data Capture Unit

Chapter 6: ITU656

Chapter 7: Audio Processing

Chapter 8: CGU

Chapter 9: Standards, Modes and Settings

Chapter 10: Device Initialization

Chapter 11: Application Example

Chapter 12: PCB Layout Guidelines

Chapter 13: Support Tools

List of Tables

Chapter 1: Functional Specification

Chapter 2: Control Interface

Chapter 3: I2D

Chapter 4: Video Processing (Viddec)

Chapter 5: Data Capture Unit

Chapter 6: ITU656

Chapter 7: Audio Processing

Chapter 8: CGU

Chapter 9: Standards, Modes and Settings

Chapter 10: Device Initialization

Chapter 11: Application Example

Chapter 12: PCB Layout Guidelines

Chapter 13: Support Tools

Chapter 1: Functional Specification

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

1.1 Introduction

The PNX2000 is a companion IC device for the Nexperia DVP SOC PNX8550, to be used in combination with the PNX3000.

It is aimed at mid and high-end analogue and hybrid TV sets, focusing on input decoding of a single stream of analogue audio and a single stream of analogue video signals. In addition, the PNX2000 is used for decoding and the presentation of all audio output streams in the system.

1.2 PNX2000 Feature Summary

1.2.1 Video Features

- Automatic Gain Control (AGC) to correct amplitude errors at input source.
- Synchronization identification (used for channel search).
- Sync processing for 1FH and 2FH video input source.
- Standard detection of PAL, NTSC or SECAM and various 1FH/2FH component video input sources.

1.2.1.1 1FH Video

- Color decoding (ITU-601) for PAL, NTSC or SECAM input sources.
- 2D comb filter.
- Supports component video sources with sync on CVBS or green.
- Fastblank insertion of RGB signals onto CVBS input.

1.2.1.2 2FH Video

- Supports various progressive and interlaced component video sources.
- Synchronization of video sources with sync on Y or external H/V inputs.

1.2.1.3 VBI Data Capture

- Decodes 525 line standards – WST, WSS, VPS, CC, VITC.

- Decodes 625 line standards – WST, WSS, CC, VITC.

1.2.1.4 ITU656 output interface

- Video and VBI formatted into an ITU-style output data stream, compliant to ITU-656/1364 (exception being the use of a data valid signal).
- Interfaces to PNX8550 IC.
- Supports CVBS/C mode to interface to external picture improvement devices.

1.2.2 Audio Features

1.2.2.1 Demodulator and decoder

- Demodulator and Decoder Easy Programming (DDEP)
- Auto standard detection (ASD)
- Static Standard Selection (SSS)
- DQPSK demodulation for different standards, simultaneously with 1-channel FM demodulation
- NICAM decoding (B/G, I, D/K and L standard)
- Two-carrier multistandard FM demodulation (B/G, D/K and M standard)
- Decoding for three analogue multi-channel systems (A2, A2+ and A2*) and satellite sound
- Adaptive de-emphasis for satellite FM
- Optional AM demodulation for system L, simultaneously with NICAM
- Identification A2 systems (B/G, D/K and M standard) with different identification time constants
- FM pilot carrier present detector
- Monitor selection for FM/AM DC values and signals, with peak and quasi peak detection option
- BTSC MPX decoder
- SAP decoder
- dbx noise reduction
- Japan (EIAJ) decoder
- FM radio decoder
- Soft-mute for DEMDEC outputs DEC, MONO and SAP
- FM overmodulation adaptation option to avoid clipping and distortion

- Sample rate conversion (SRC) for up to three demodulated terrestrial audio signals. It is possible to process SCART signals together with demodulated terrestrial signals.

1.2.2.2 Audio Multi Channel Decoder

- Dolby® Pro Logic® II Surround (DPL2) — Registered Trademark of Dolby® Laboratories
- Six channel processing for Main Left and Main Right, Subwoofer, Center, Surround Left and Surround Right

1.2.2.3 Volume and tone control

- Automatic Volume Level (AVL) control
- Smooth volume control
- Master volume control and Balance
- Soft-mute
- Loudness
- Bass, Treble
- Dynamic Bass Enhancement (DBE)
- Dynamic Ultra Bass (DUBII)
- Non processed subwoofer
- 5 band equalizer
- Acoustical compensation
- Programmable beeper
- Noise generator for loudspeaker level trimming

1.2.2.4 Reflection and delay

- Dolby® Pro Logic® Delay
- Pseudo hall/matrix function

1.2.2.5 Psychoacoustic spatial algorithms, downmix and split

- Incredible Mono
- Incredible Stereo
- Virtual Dolby® Surround (VDS 522,523)
- Virtual Dolby® Digital (VDD 522,523)
- Bass Redirection according to Dolby® specifications

1.2.2.6 Interfaces and switching

- Digital audio input interface (stereo I^2S input interface)
- Digital audio output interface (stereo I^2S output interface)
- Digital crossbar switch for all digital signal sources and destinations
- Output crossbar for exchange of channel processing functionality
- Voice recognition output interface (stereo I^2S output interface)
- Audio monitor for level detection
- 8 audio DACs for six channel loudspeaker outputs and stereo headphones output
- 4 audio DACs for stereo SCART output and stereo LINE output.
- Serial data link interface for interfacing with the analogue multi-purpose interface IC PNX3000.

1.3 Functional Description

The following figure shows a block diagram of the PNX2000 device.

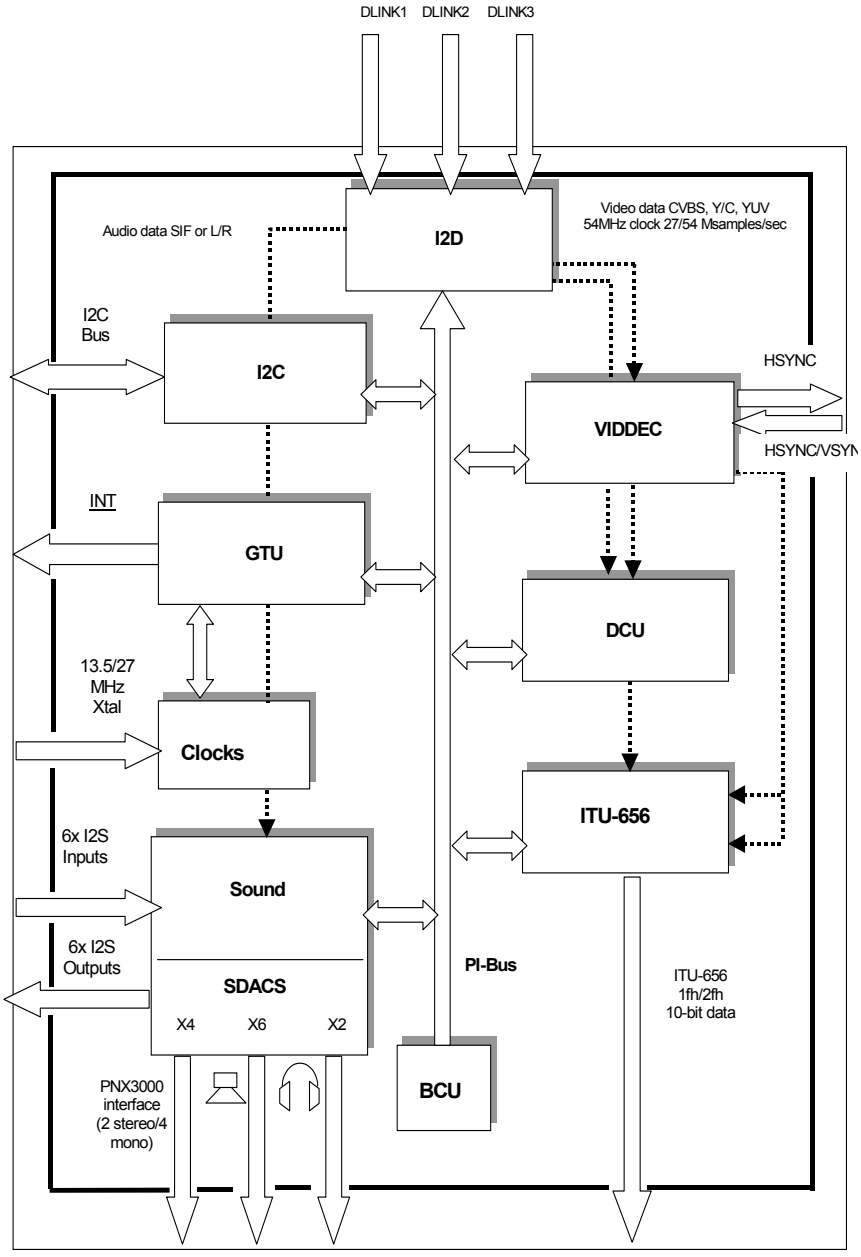


Figure 1: PNX2000 Block Diagram

1.4 Overview of Functional Partitioning

The following table illustrates how the major functions are mapped to hardware blocks.

Table 1: Major Functions

Function	Block	Description
High speed data-link	I^2D	Receives data in 3 streams from PNX3000
Video Decoder Processor	VIDDEC	Decodes and processes CVBS, YUV or Y/C in YUV stream
Serial Interface	I^2C	To access all the internal registers
Global Task Unit	GTU	Generates all the internal clocks, Reset and Power management
TV Sound Decoder	DEMDEC DSP	Demodulation, decoding of terrestrial TV audio standards
Audio Processor	AUDIO DSP	Processing analogue and digital audio sources
Data Capture Unit	DCU	Acquires VBI data (Teletext, CC, VPS) and formats in a stream
Formatter Unit	ITU-656	Formats YUV, VBI data and CVBS data in ITU-656
Bus Control Unit	BCU	Bus arbitration among all the internal blocks

Table 2: Interfaces

Interface	Description
I^2C	The PNX2000 IC is controlled using an I^2C bus. It performs like an I^2C-bus to PI-bus bridge, i.e. translates I^2C-slave received commands to PI-bus master commands.
I^2D	Receives data in three streams from PNX3000.
I^2S	Serial digital audio interface (6 stereo inputs and 6 stereo outputs) for connection to other devices that support the I^2S standard. Can be used to receive decoded sound from a multi-channel digital audio decoder, provide additional ADCs and DACs, or loop audio signals through an external processor or delay line.
ITU656	Mainly intended to transfer output data stream externally to the PNX8550 but the output data stream could also be readable by other ITU 656 input devices that implement data valid signalling
DACS	Digital-analogue converters used to generate analogue outputs from Sound Core

Chapter 2: Control Interface

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

2.1 PNX2000 Control Interface

The PNX2000 device is controlled via an I^2C interface. Internally, an I^2C-to-PI Bus bridge converts I^2C accesses into read and write transactions on the internal PI-Bus. This PI-Bus provides access to the control and status registers for all the modules in the PNX2000 design. The operation of the internal PI bus is controlled by the BCU block.

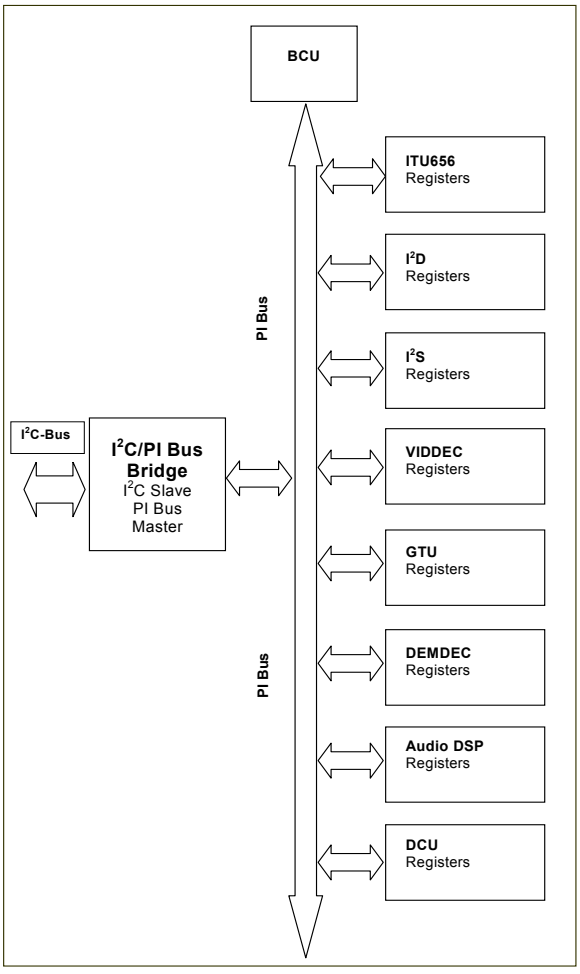


Figure 1: Control Interface

2.2 I²C Bus Interface

2.2.1 I²C Bus Features

The I²C module has the following features:

- 7-bit I²C slave address.
- LSB of I²C address selectable from external pin, to allow two PNX2000 devices to coexist on a shared I²C bus.
- Auto increment addressing to allow sequential (burst) register accesses with no address transmission overhead.
- PI Bus data width 32 bits.
- PI bus address width 32 bits.
- I²C data transmitted in big endian format (MSB transmitted first).
- Up to 400 kHz I2C bus speed.

2.2.2 Allocated I²C Address

The 7-bit I²C address of the PNX2000 device is:

A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0	RW
1	0	0	0	1	0	X	X

Bit A0 can be selected via the external pin I2CADR. This pin defaults to pull-down (A0 = 0) if left unconnected.

2.2.3 I²C Register Access Protocol

The following diagrams illustrate the procedure used to access register locations over the I²C bus.

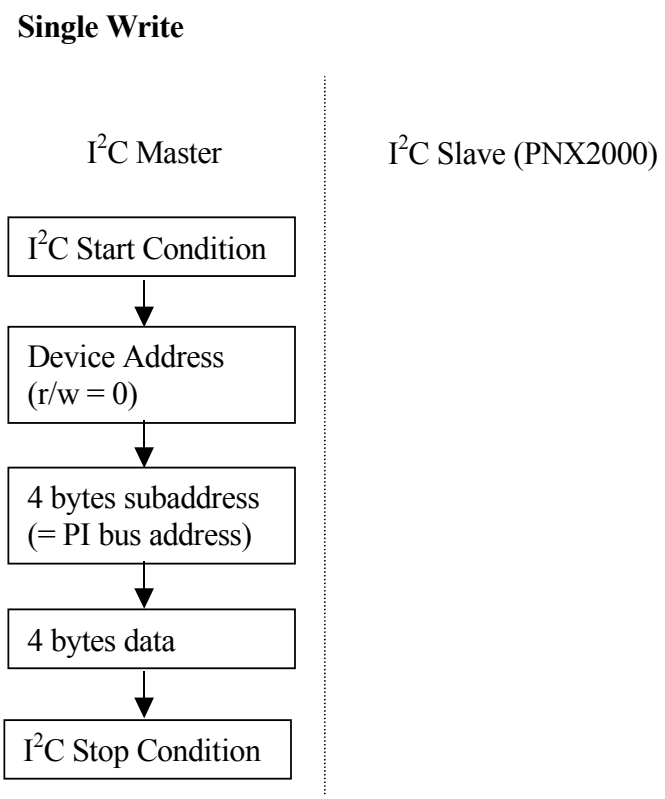


Figure 2: Single Write

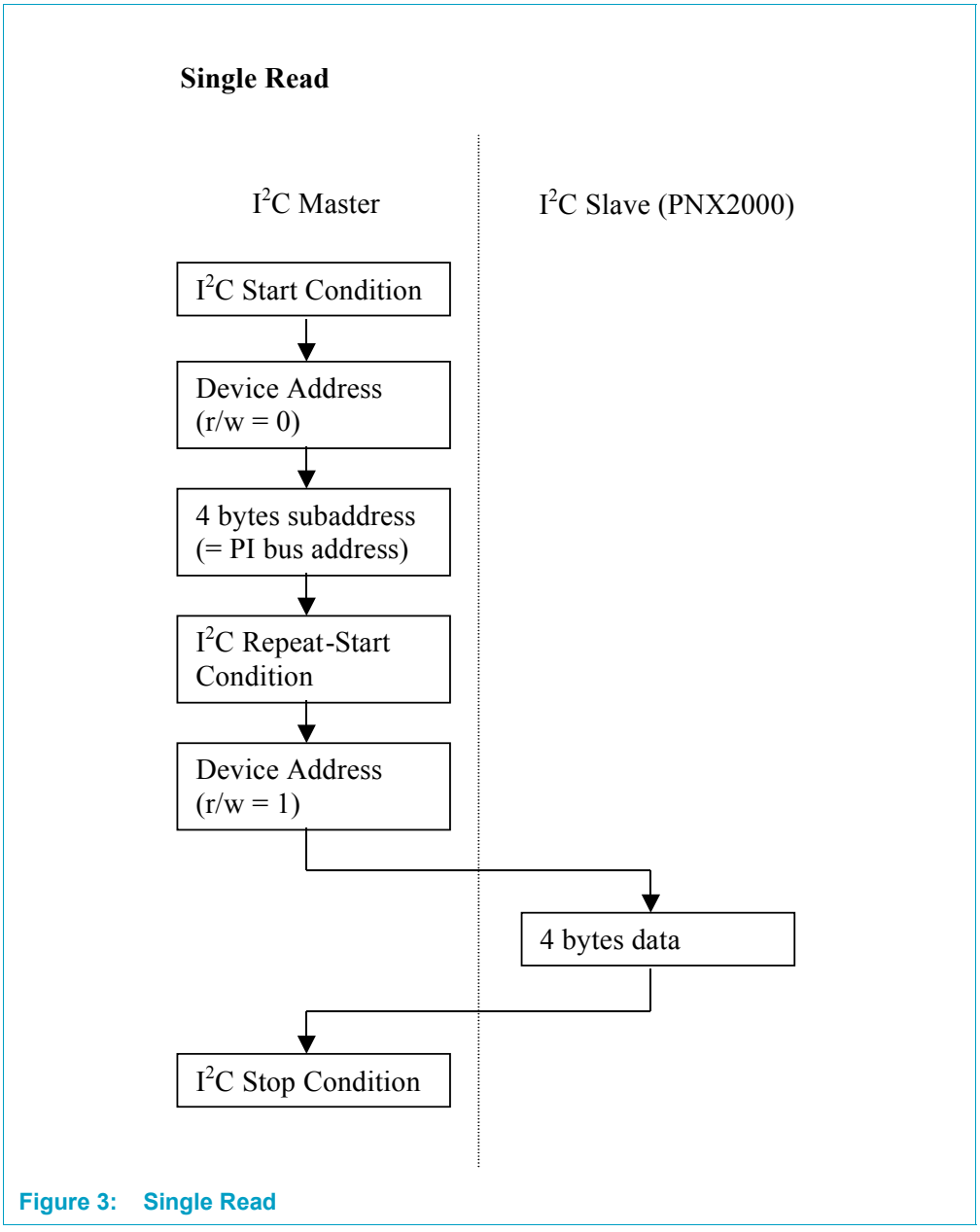


Figure 3: Single Read

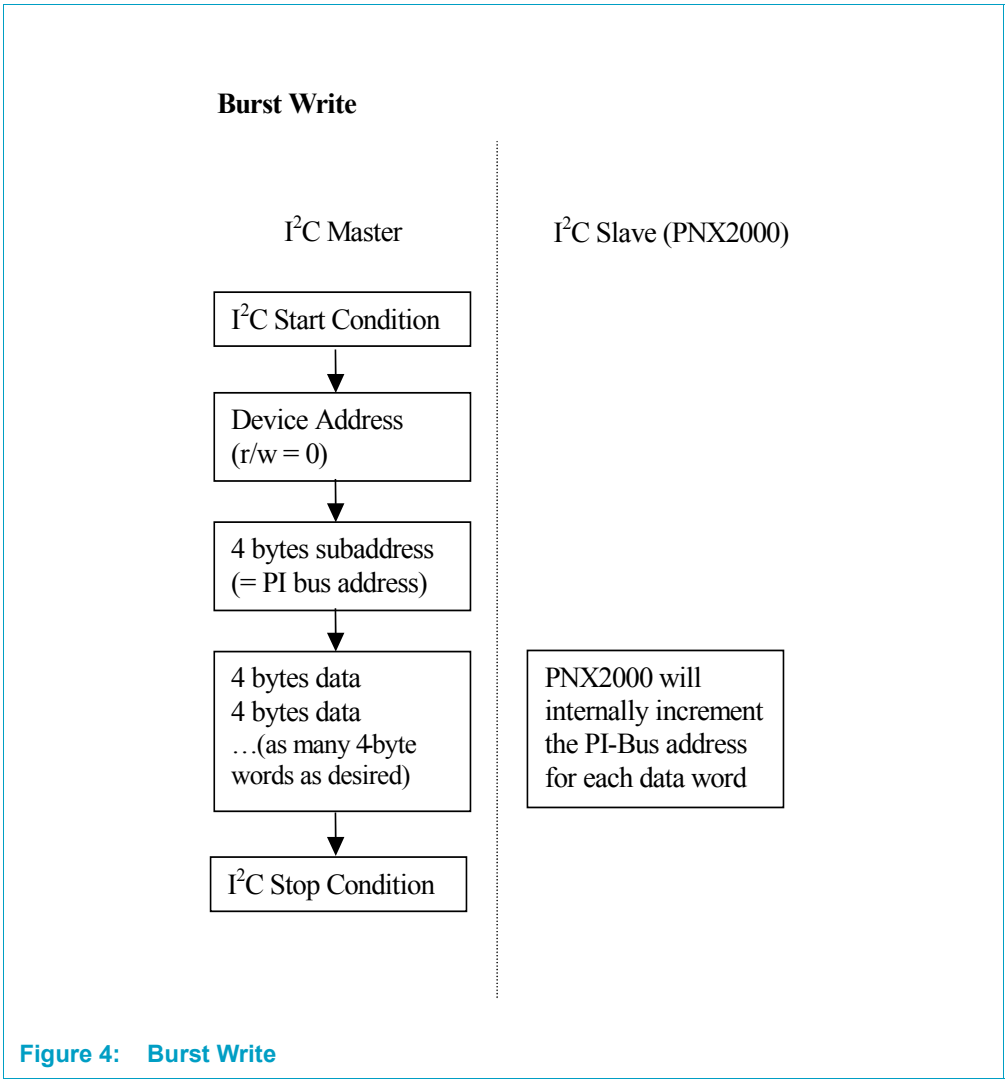


Figure 4: Burst Write

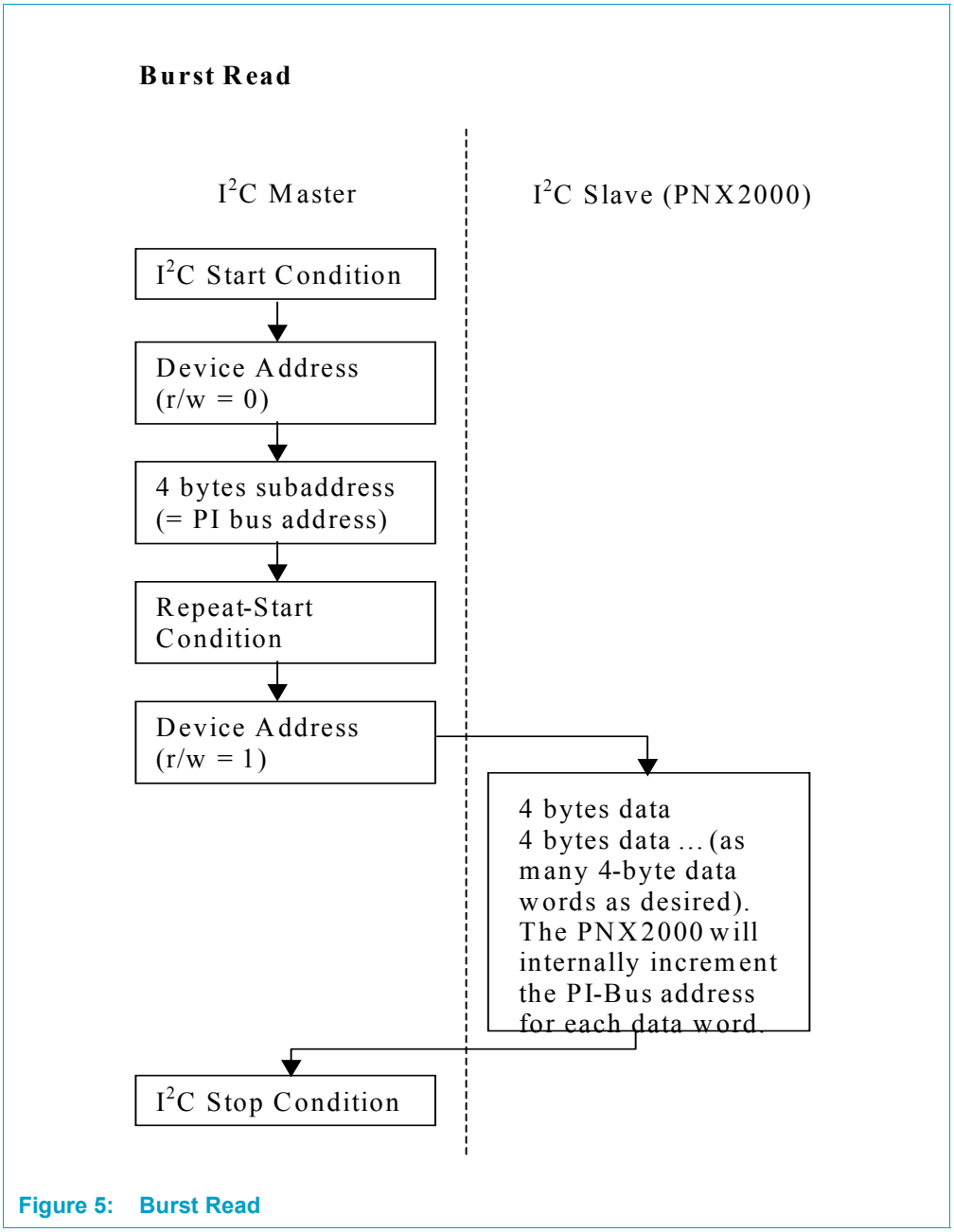


Figure 5: Burst Read

2.2.4 I²C Interface Block

The I²C interface module contains no software-accessible status or configuration registers.

If the internal PI-Bus locks up, the I²C interface will lock the external I²C bus by holding the SCL signal low. The only way to break the lockup is to reset the entire PNX2000 device. In order to avoid this condition, the BCU timeout register should be configured by software early in the PNX2000 initialization process.

The PNX2000 I^2C module will not respond to a 'general call' on the I^2C-bus, i.e. when a slave address of 0000000 is sent by a master. In case of any illegal address, transmission of the data that follows is not acknowledged, and the transmission is aborted.

The I^2C-bus slave devices are capable of operating at a maximum speed of 400 kbits/s in accordance with the I^2C fast-mode specification.

2.3 BCU Module

2.3.1 BCU Features

The BCU module performs the following functions:

- Address space mapping and slave selection
- Bus error notification and logging
- Bus timeout monitoring, with software programmable timeout threshold
- Interrupt generation on bus error and timeout

2.3.2 Registers

The BCU contains eight software accessible registers which are listed in

the following table. Note that the base address of the BCU is 0x07fe8000.

The "reset" values given in the tables in the following subsections correspond to the state of a variable after PI-Bus reset.

Table 1: BCU Register Map

Register Name	Offset from BCU Slave address	Description
BCU_INT_STATUS	0x00	BCU interrupt status
BCU_INT_SET	0x04	BCU interrupt status set
BCU_INT_CLEAR	0x08	BCU interrupt status clear
BCU_FAULT_STATUS	0x0C	BCU bus fault status
BCU_FAULT_ADDRESS	0x10	BCU bus fault address
BCU_INT_ENABLE	0x14	BCU interrupt enable
BCU_TOUT	0x18	BCU time-out control
BCU_SNOOP	0x1C	BCU memory coherency control

2.3.2.1 BCU Interrupt Status Register (BCU_INT_STATUS)

This register contains the BCU interrupt status variables. It is read-only. The register also controls the bus fault logging process.

Table 2: BCU_INT_STATUS register

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31:2	RSD	-	-
1	BCU_TO	0	R
0	BCU_BE	0	R

RSD — Reserved bits, will produce zero on a read action and ignored on write action

BCU_TO — Time-out error:

0: no time-out error has occurred. Fault logging enabled if BCU_BE=0 and BCU_TO=0.

1: time-out error has occurred. Fault logging stopped. Registers BCU_FAULT_STATUS and BCU_FAULT_ADDRESS contain valid information. Depending on the state of the BCU_INT_EN flag in the BCU_INT_ENABLE register, an interrupt request may be generated.

BCU_BE — Bus error:

0: no bus error has occurred. Fault logging enabled if BCU_TO=0 and BCU_BE=0.

1: bus error has occurred. Fault logging stopped. Registers BCU_FAULT_STATUS and BCU_FAULT_ADDRESS contain valid information. Depending on the state of the BCU_INT_EN flag in the BCU_INT_ENABLE register, an interrupt request may be generated.

2.3.2.2 BCU Interrupt Enable Register (BCU_INT_ENABLE)

This register contains a variable to enable/disable BCU interrupt request generation. It is read/writable. Note that this register does not have two enable bits (i.e. corresponding to the two status bits in the BCU_INT_STATUS, BCU_INT_SET, and BCU_INT_CLEAR registers). One enable bit controls the generation of both bus error and timeout interrupts.

Table 3: BCU_INT_ENABLE register

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31: 1	RSD	-	R
0	BCU_INT_EN	0	R/W

RSD — Reserved bits, produce zero on read action and ignored on write.

BCU_INT_EN BCU — Interrupt Enable

0: disable BCU interrupt request.

1: enable BCU interrupt request. An interrupt request is generated when the BCU_TO and/or BCU_BE flags in the BCU_INT_STATUS register are set.

2.3.2.3 BCU Interrupt Status Set Command (BCU_INT_SET)

A write action to this address location allows to set variables in the BCU_INT_STATUS register. A read action returns 0. The BCU_INT_SET command is provided for diagnostic purposes only.

Table 4: BCU_INT_SET command

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31:2	RSD	-	R
1	BCU_TO_SET	-	W
0	BCU_BE_SET	-	W

RSD Reserved bits, produce zero on read action and ignored on a write.

BCU_TO_SET Time-out interrupt set:

0: no effect

1: set BCU_TO variables

BCU_BE_SET Bus error interrupt set:

0: no effect

1: set BCU_BE variables

2.3.2.4 BCU Interrupt Status Clear Command (BCU_INT_CLEAR)

A write action to this address location allows to clear variables in the BCU_INT_STATUS register. A read action returns 0.

Table 5: BCU_INT_CLEAR command

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31:2	RSD	-	R
1	BCU_TO_CLEAR	-	W
0	BCU_BE_CLEAR	-	W

RSD Reserved bits, produce zero on read action and ignored on a write.

BCU_TO_CLEAR Time-out interrupt clear:

0: no effect

1: set BCU_TO variables

BCU_BE_CLEAR Bus error interrupt clear:

0: no effect

1: clear BCU_BE variables

2.3.2.5 BCU Bus Fault Status Register (BCU_FAULT_STATUS)

This register captures status information on the PI-Bus operation that incurred a bus error or time-out. The register content is valid only when the BCU_TO and/or BCU_BE flags in BCU_INT_STATUS are set. The register is read-only. Note that the PNX2000 design has only one bus master - the I^2C interface.

Table 6: BCU_FAULT_STATUS Register

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31:8	RSD	-	-
7	BCU_MASTER*	X	R
6	BCU_LOCK	X	R
5	BCU_READ	X	R
4:0	BCU_OPC	X	R

[6-1] * BCU_MASTER is not relevant for PNX2000

[6-2] X undefined

RSD (Reserved bits) will produce zero on a read action and will be ignored on a write action.

BCU_LOCK LOCK status of failed bus operation:

0: LOCK = 0

1: LOCK = 1

BCU_READ Data direction of failed bus operation:

0: write operation

1: read operation

BCU_OPC Opcode of failed bus operation:

refer to PI-Bus specification [2] for opcode definition.

2.3.2.6 BCU Bus Fault Address Register (BCU_FAULT_ADDR)

This register captures the address in a PI-Bus operation that incurred a bus error or time-out. The register content is valid only when the BCU_TO and/or BCU_BE flags in BCU_INT_STATUS are set. The register is read-only.

Table 7: BCU_FAULT_ADDR Register

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31:2	BCU_ADDR	X	R
1:0	RSD	0	R

[7-1] X undefined

BCU_ADDR failed bus operation address

RSD reserved bits, produce zero on a read action ignored on a write

2.3.2.7 BCU Time-Out Register (BCU_TOUT)

This register defines the PI-Bus time-out threshold. It is read/writable. Although this register has a default value of 0, it should be written with the value 0x800 soon after reset, to prevent potential PI-Bus and I^2C bus lockups.

Table 8: BCU_TOUT Register

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31: 0	BCU_TO_THRESHOLD	0	R/W

BCU_TO_THRESHOLD Time-out threshold:

0: never time-out

1: time-out after 1st data cycle in bus operation

4294967295: time-out after 4294967295th data cycle in bus operation

2.3.2.8 BCU Memory Coherency Register (BCU_SNOOP)

This register enables/disables the start of the memory coherency protocol. This register should be left at the default value, as the PNX2000 device does not support cache-coherent memory access.

Table 9: BCU_SNOOP Register

Bits	Variable	Reset	R/W
31:3	RSD	X	R
2	BCU_SNOOP_MASTERS	0	R/W
1	BCU_SNOOP_WRITE	0	R/W
0	BCU_SNOOP_READ	0	R/W

[9-1] X undefined

RSD Reserved bits, produce zero on a read action ignored on a write

BCU_SNOOP_MASTERS Bit not relevant for PNX2000. To be left at default value.

BCU_SNOOP_WRITE Bit not relevant for PNX2000. To be left at default value.

BCU_SNOOP_READ Bit not relevant for PNX2000. To be left at default value.

2.4 Memory Map

The PNX2000 memory map is given in the following table. Note that the address ranges allocated to each block are not fully occupied by addressable register locations.

Table 10: Memory Map

PI Bus Address	Block
0x07F0.0000 0x07F3.FFFF	AUDIO_DSP
0x07F8.0000 0x07FB.FFFF	DEMDEC DSP
0x07FE.8000 0x07FE.8FFF	BCU
0x07FF.5000 0x07FF.5FFF	DCU
0x07FF.7000 0x07FF.7FFF	GPR(GTU)
0x07FF.8000 0x07FF.8FFF	I^2D
0x07FF.9000 0x07FF.9FFF	VIDDEC
0x07FF.A000 0x07FF.AFFF	ITU656

Chapter 3: I²D

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

3.1 Introduction

This section provides an overview of the I²D link and how it may be applied. It gives the user a guide to use the datalink and its functions. The purpose of the link is transmitting data in three streams from the PNX3000 to the PNX2000. The use of serial data connections results in a considerable reduction in pin count and the number of connection wires that are needed between both IC's.

The communication between one datalink transmitter and one datalink receiver consists of two signals, a data signal and a strobe signal. The strobe signal contains the data, bit-sync and word-sync information. For optimal EMC performance both data and strobe are low voltage differential signals. The voltage swing on the wires is about 300mV.

In the PNX3000 the video and audio data to be transmitted is multiplexed in an output register of 42 bits. The content of that 42-bit register is serial transmitted on one of the three datalinks. In the PNX2000 the serial data is demultiplexed into parallel streams. With a software selection in the PNX3000 you can choose which data you want to set in the output register for the datalink and in the PNX2000 you have to make a selection which data from the datalink you want to use. The data on the datalink is divided in several groups of signals (video, audio and strobe_signals). It is important that the transmitter and receiver are in the same transmitting mode.

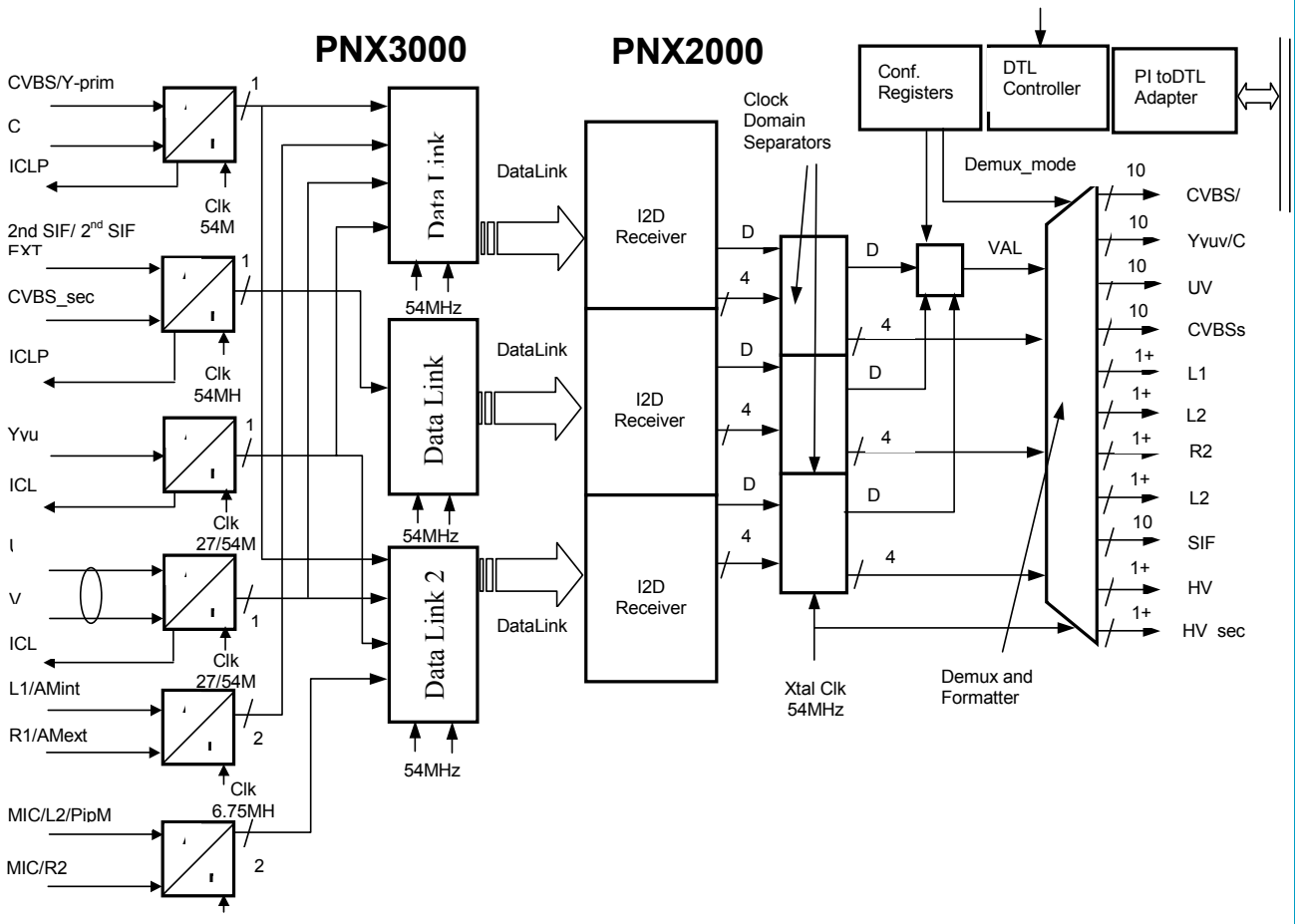


Figure 1: Overview - I²D Transmitter/Receiver

3.2 Functional Capabilities of the Links

The I²D link has the following characteristics.

- The datalink runs at 297MHz / 594 Mbs.
- The driver rise/fall time is around 200 pS.
- The datalink uses differential signals.

The receiver has an internal termination resistor of 100Ω differential connected.

- The differential threshold is 50 mV.
- The signalling voltages are between 200 – 500 mV.
- The datalink traces, both pairs should be of equally length and are internally terminated with 100Ω (The PCB-lines also characteristic).

- The max length of the datalink tracks is 20 cm (equal length), normal advice is 5 cm maximal.
- The maximal capacitance on the line is around 15 pF.

3.3 Transmitter

In the PNX3000 the data coming from the A/D converters (digital video and audio) is multiplexed and put in data words. Each data word on the data links consists of 44 bits (4 video samples of 10 bits each, 2 audio samples of 2 bits and 2 word-sync bits). The word clock is 13.5MHz. The data rate on each of the three data links is 44 bits/cycle*13.5*106 Cycle/s=594Mbit/s. Figure 2 shows which signals are digitized and these can be sent to the digital video processor by the datalink. Mode 0 is the 1fh mode and mode 1 is the 2fh mode (for datalink 1 and 2). Both modes can transferred up to three video channels plus one sound IF signal and two L+R audio signals over the data links simultaneously. For detailed transmission information see Table 2.

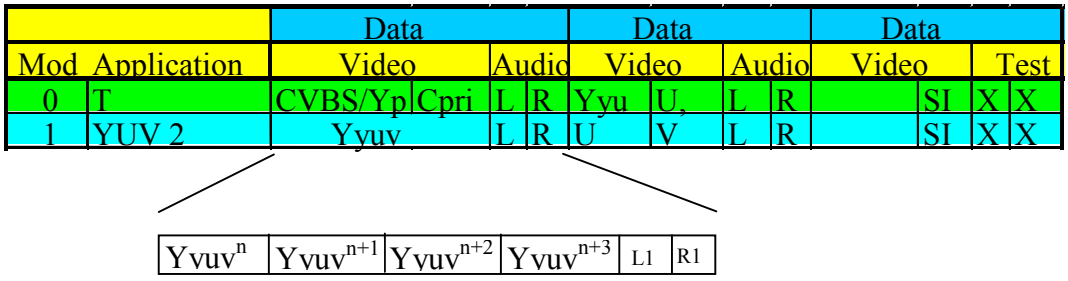


Figure 2: Overview - Datalink Modes, Transmitter Side PNX3000

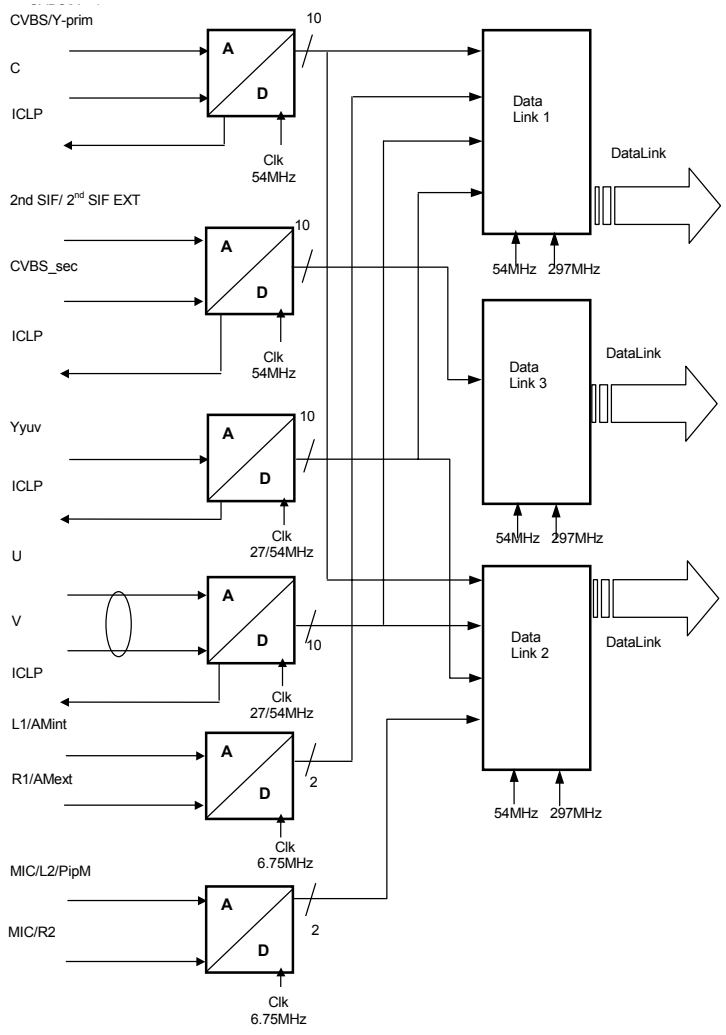


Figure 3: Simplified Transmitter Side PNX3000

3.4 Receiver

The I^2D datalink is intended for the communication between the PNX3000 and the PNX2000.

The I^2D receiver module consists of three datalink receivers, and three Data Strobe receivers. The data receiver regenerates the serial data bit-streams, and converts them to parallel words of 42 bits (picture 4x10 bits and 2 bits of audio). When the data is ready for output a valid Word Sync pulse is generated in the I^2D receiver module. The Word Sync pulses are used by the clock domain separator to take over the 42 bits wide data from the I^2D receivers to the PNX2000 clock domain.

The clock domain separator module converts the data from the transmitter clock (13.5 or 27 MHz) domain (PNX3000) to the PNX2000 clock (13.5 / 54 MHz) domain. There is a clock domain separator necessary because the signals in the PNX3000 are processed via different paths and then multiplexed on a serial data line with a Data Strobe (and Word Sync). This leads to a static but unknown phase difference between the PNX2000 and PNX3000 clock. In addition, the duration of the serial data differs according the link length and group of data on the link and the different processing in the PNX3000. That is why a clock domain separator is necessary.

The data from the clock domain separator module is passed to the de-multiplexer module. This module formats the data into several audio and video streams (parallel data) together with accompanying VALid pulses derived from the clock domain separator (ready for takeover) to the Viddec and Demdec modules.

When the expected Word Sync pulse is not detected in the I^2D receiver, the clock domain separator still generates a DV pulse. The previous data is still on the parallel output lines of the I^2D receiver. When the Word Sync pulse is not detected, the counter counts the missing DataValids. This internal counting continues until it reaches the DV_MISS_MAX value (Table 8). When the limit of DV_MISS_MAX is reached, an interrupt DVx_MISS_STAT is generated, ref to Table 11 for more details, and a synchronization action must follow. When the limit is reached the internal counter is frozen.

When the max value of DV_MISS_MAX is not reached and a Word Sync pulse arrives in the receiver window, the counter DV_MISS_MAX is reset.

When there is a situation in which the expected Word Sync pulse is detected in the I^2D receiver, but not within the data valid window (receiver window) of the Clock domain Separator, the pulse is Out Of Window (OOW). The clock domain separator generates a Data Valid (DV) pulse on the time that the clock domain separator expects to receive a Word Sync pulse from the receiver. The data can still be valid if the pulse comes to early, but if the pulse comes to late, the previous data can be on the output when the clock domain separator takes the data over. When the Word Sync pulse is out of his window detected, it generates an Out Of Window (OOW) pulse (referring to I2D _REC_SYNC_LOST). This Out Of Window pulse increments the counter (it counts the OOW pulses), the counter value itself cannot be read. This counting continues till it reaches the OOW_MAX value (register I2D _REC_SYNC_LOST). When the limit of OOW_MAX is reached, an interrupt SYNCx_LOST_STAT is generated, ref to I2D _INT_STATUS for more details, and a synchronization action must follow. When the max value of OOW_MAX is not reached and a Word Sync pulse arrives in the receiver window, the counter OOW_MAX is reset.

At the end of the receiver is a de-multiplexer, the de-multiplexer reformats the data into several audio and video streams (parallel data) to the Viddec and Demdec.The functional block diagram of the receiver is shown in Figure 4.

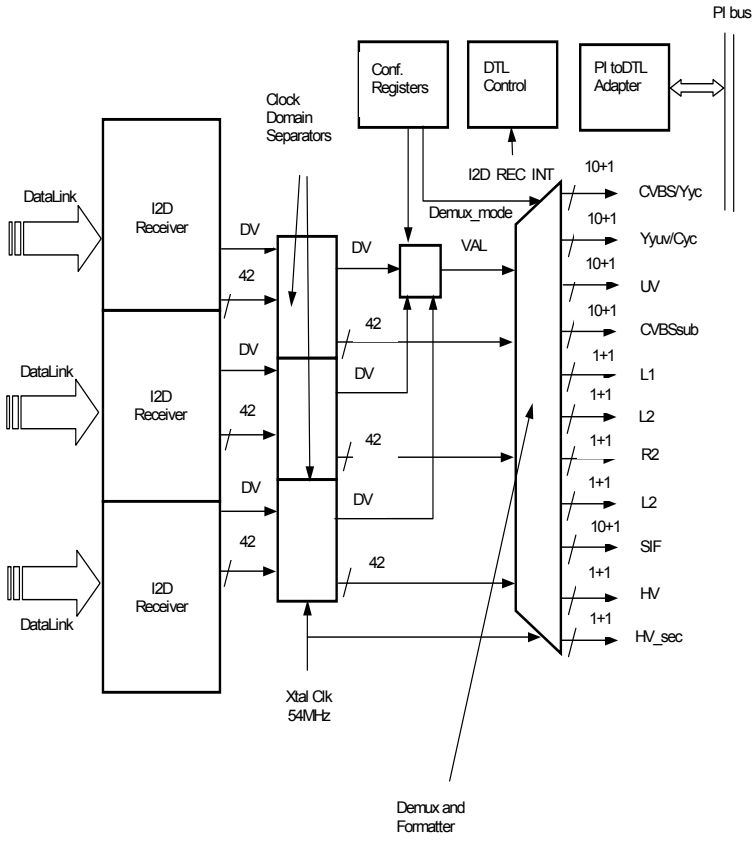


Figure 4: Simplified Receiver Side PNX2000

3.4.1 Transmitter / Receiver Transmission Modes.

The data from the PNX3000 can be sent in two modes (0, 1) to the receiver in the PNX2000. Table 1 describes the data that can be extracted from the datalink. The transmitter in the PNX3000 has to be set by the external I^2C communication link. The microprocessor in the PNX2000 transmits the mode settings and other multiplexer settings by the I^2C bus to the PNX3000. The receiver in the PNX2000 has to be configured in the same mode by the PI bus in the PNX2000. In Table 1 is described the dataflow and possible modes on each link. The software for the receiver runs in the MIPS processor in the PNX2000. The software takes care of the boot sequences, interrupts and the use of the data on the datalink.

When the transmitter is in mode 0 (all three transmitters are in mode 0), the receiver has the possibility to extract data in mode 0a en 0b (for all three links together). This is possible due to the group of 42 bits send together, see Figure 1 and Table 2.

When Viddec uses Y and C from mode 0 datalink 1, it can't use YUV from datalink 2 (no sync available, they use the same bus in the demultiplexer output). If the Viddec use YUV from datalink 2 (input from RGB in PNX3000) it use the CVBS datalink 1 for sync.

Table 1: Content of Data Links

Datalink 1 mode setting	mode reg value	Bits 41	40	39:30	29:20	19:10	9:0
mode 0a	0x0	R1	L1	C^{n+1}	CVBS or **Y**$^{n+1}$	C^{n}	CVBS or **Y**^{n}
mode 0b	0x1	R1	L1	-	**CVBS** or Y^{n+1}	-	**CVBS** or Y^{n}
mode 1	0x2	R1	L1	$Yyuv^{n+3}$	$Yyuv^{n+2}$	$Yyuv^{n+1}$	$Yyuv^{n}$

Datalink 2 mode setting	mode reg value	Bits 41	40	39:30	29:20	19:10	9:0
mode 0a	0x0	R2	L2	-	-	-	-
mode 0b	0x1	R2	L2	V^{n}	$Yyuv^{n+1}$	U^{n}	$Yyuv^{n}$
mode 1	0x2	R2	L2	V^{n+2}	U^{n+2}	V^{n}	U^{n}

Datalink 3 mode setting	mode reg value	Bits 41	40	39:30	29:20	19:10	9:0
mode 0a	0x0	HV_{sec}	HV	SIF^{n+1}	$CVBSsec^{n+1}$	SIF^{n}	$CVBSsec^{n}$
mode 0b	0x1	HV_{sec}	HV	SIF^{n+1}	$CVBSsec^{n+1}$	SIF^{n}	$CVBSsec^{n}$
mode 1	0x2	HV_{sec}	HV	SIF^{n+1}	$CVBSsec^{n+1}$	SIF^{n}	$CVBSsec^{n}$

A CVBS or Y signal may be connected to the inputs of the PNX3000. The type of signal on Datalink 1, in Mode 0 (a or b) is not known, but the preferred is shown **bold underlined**.

If from datalink 1 (mode 0b) the CVBS is used, via fast insertion the Viddec can use the YUV (1fH-mode) signals from datalink2 if the signal contains a sync signal.

Figure 5, Figure 6 and Figure 7 show the use modes (video) in the receiver at the output of the multiplexer.

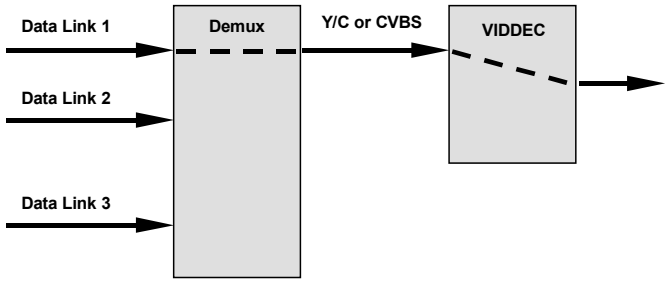


Figure 5: Mode 0a Transmission

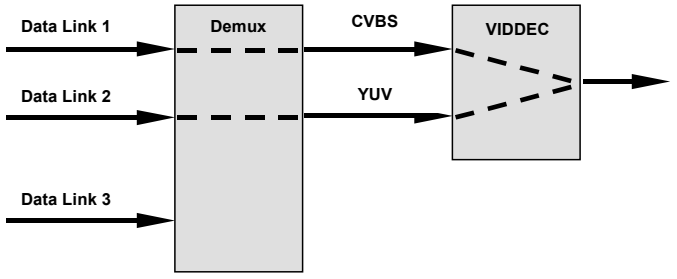


Figure 6: Mode 0b Transmission (Default)

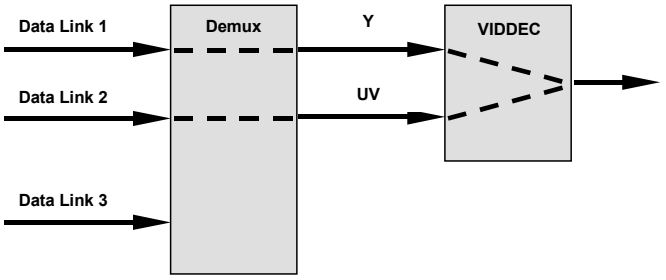


Figure 7: Mode 1 Transmission (2fh on Main Channel, on sub is 1fh)

The control software has to set the right settings in the MPIF and AVIP.

3.4.2 Data Rate and Timing Output Signals

The output rate of the data from the datalink receiver is shown in Table 2.
The HV_PRIM and HV_SEC are for the horizontal and vertical sync for the primary and secondary channel (timing pulses in IF part). These are clamping signals, which are coming from the VIDDEC. The frequency of the signals is dependent of the select-

ed mode. These signals are not needed for I2D link.

Table 2: Data Rate Output Signals

Pin Name	Sample Rate (Msamples/s)	
	1FH	2FH
CVBS_YYC_OUT	27	-
YYUV_CYC_OUT	27	54
UV_OUT	27	54
CVBS_SEC_OUT	27	-
LEFT1_OUT	6.75	
RIGHT1_OUT	6.75	
LEFT2_OUT	6.75	
RIGHT2_OUT	6.75	
HV_OUT	54	
HV_SEC_OUT	54	
SIF_OUT	27	

All data is generated on the negative edge of the 54 MHz clock.

3.5 Configuration Registers.

The I^2D configuration registers are used to control the I^2D receiver module. For description of the de-multiplexer outputs see following figure.

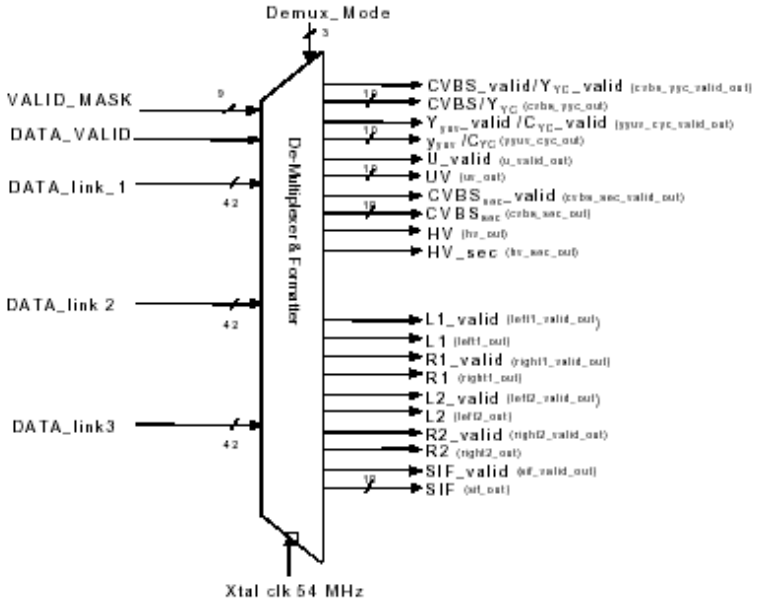


Figure 8: Read Write and Control Flow

The I²D configuration register block contains the control registers which are used to configure the I²D receiver block, address decoder and two state machines. One to synchronise the write request and the register write enable, and the other one to synchronise the read request and read enable.

3.5.1 I²D Register Map

This section provides information on the I²D configuration. Each of the registers within the receiver block is described separately below. The base address for the I²D is set to 0x07FF8000 (32 bits), the last 3 digits (12 bits) are for the I²D control register.

Table 3: I²D Register Summary

Name	Access Type	Width	Address	Reset Value
I2D _RX_CTRL	Read/Write	32	0x000	0x1
I2D _RX_STATUS	Read	32	0x004	0x1
I2D _MOD_ID	Read	32	0xFFC	0x01410000
I2D _INT_SET	Write	32	0xFEC	0x00000000
I2D _INT_CLEAR	Write	32	0xFE8	0x00000000
I2D _INT_ENABLE	Read/Write	32	0xFE4	0x00000000
I2D _INT_STATUS	Read	32	0xFE0	0x0000002a
I2D _REC_DEMUX_MODE	Read/Write	32	0x018	0x0001fff9
I2D _PRBS_CTRL	Read/Write	32	0x024	0x00000000
I2D _PRBS_STAT	Read/Write	32	0x020	0x00000078
I2D _REC_SYNC_LOST	Read/Write	32	0x01C	0x000003e8

3.5.1.1 I2D_RX_CTRL

Table 4: I2D_RX_CTRL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..01	RSD_31 To 1	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
0	RX_APPL_PD	Read/Write	0x1	Power down for analogue receiver in application mode. '0' : The analogue receiver is active (normal mode) '1' : The analogue receiver is in power down mode (For PNX2000 sleep/coma modes)

This is the bit to wake up or set the I²D receiver in power down mode.

3.5.1.2 I2D_RX_STATUS

Table 5: I2D_RX_STATUS

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..01	RSD_31 To 1	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
0	PD_STAT_RX	Read	0x1	Power down status of analogue datalink receiver. '0' : The receiver is active (normal mode) '1' : The receiver is in power down mode

This is a status bit to verify if the datalink receiver is really activated or if it was still in power down mode. When the I2D_RX_CTRL bit 0 differs from the I2D_RX_STATUS bit 0, there is a hardware problem, probably due to an internal test mode.

3.5.1.3 I2D_REC_DEMUX_MODE

Table 6: I2D _REC_DEMUX_MODE

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..18	RSD_31 To 18	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
17	SOFT_RESET	Write Only	0x0	Soft_reset of the clock domain separator
16	DATA_VALID_MASK	Read/Write	0x1	Mask the overall data valid flag (to enable data output to the cores). '1' Enable '0' Hide
11..3	VALID_MASK	Read/Write	0x1ff	Mask data valid of several type of data busses. Each bit: '0' to hide. Bit no: [11]= SIF ; [10] =Right 2; [9]= Left 2;; [8]= Right 1; [7] =Left 1 ;[6] =CVBS sec; [5]= U ;[4] =Y ; [3] =CVBS.
2:0	DEMUX_MODE	Read/Write	0x1	Select the I^2D content format to output mode '000' mode 0a '001' mode 0b '010' mode 1

- Soft_reset is not latched, it resets (unlock) the clock domain separator. Read first the I2D _REC_DEMUX reg. Then OR with bit 17 and then write back the register.
- Data_valid_mask is connected to clock domain separator to control (enable 1 / disable 0) data_valid signal. Default (hard reset) value is enabling (1), with this bit you enable or disable all data Valid signals. It is recommended that this bit is not used.
- Valid_mask (bit 3 - 11) is connected to the demultiplexer block to control (enable 1/disable 0) the demultiplexer valid output signals for the desired buses. Default (hard reset) is 0x1FF hex (enable all). When the Valid signal comes from the Clock domain separator, the output data from the multiplexer is ready and has to be read. When the Valid signal is a (0), the data is invalid. Every parallel signal coming from the demultiplexer can be accompanied with the appropriate data valid pulse derived from the Clock domain separator. This pulse can be enabled by setting a value ‘1’ to its respective bit shown in the table below to the item VALID_MASK of the register REC_DEMUX_MODE. To prevent crosstalk, it is recommended to enable the data valid signals for the ones in use.

Table 7: Demultiplexer Output with Mask Selection

Data bus	Bit Position	VALID_MASK	Data link
SIF	12	$(0x100)_H$	3
R2	11	$(0x80)_H$	2
L2	10	$(0x40)_H$	2

Table 7: Demultiplexer Output with Mask Selection *...Continued*

Data bus	Bit Position	VALID_MASK	Data link
R1	9	$(0x20)_H$	1
L1	8	$(0x10)_H$	1
$CVBS_{sec}$	7	$(0x08)_H$	3
UV	6	$(0x04)_H$	2
Yyuv / Cyc	5	$(0x02)_H$	1
$CVBS_{pri}$ / Yyc	4	$(0x01)_H$	1

Demux_Mode (bit 0 – 2) is connected to the demultiplexer block to select the data mode on the demultiplexer output. Default value is 0x01 bin. (Mode 0B, seeFigure 6)

3.5.1.4 I2D _REC_SYNC_LOST

Sync lost timer before generating an interrupt.

Table 8: I2D_REC_SYNC_LOST

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..16	DV_MISS_MAX	Read/Write	0x3e8	Number of consecutive valid pulses missing before generating an dv error interrupt '0' disables detection and resets the counter
15..0	OOW_MAX	Read/Write	0x3e8	Number of consecutive valid pulses out of the catching window before generating an 'out of sync' (sync lost) interrupt' 0' disables detection and resets the counter

DV_MISS_MAX[31..16] (16 bits) is connected to the clock domain separator to set the maximum value of consecutive missing data valid pulses. The default (Hard reset) value is 0x3E8 (1000 dec). When the maximum value is reached an interrupt 'DVx_MISS_STAT' is generated for the appropriate link (see register INT_STATUS).

OOW_MAX[15:0] (16 bits) is connected to the clock domain separator to set the maximum value of consecutive out of window data valid pulses. The default (Hard reset) value is 0x3E8 (1000 dec). When the maximum value is reached an interrupt 'SYNCx_LOST_STAT' is generated for the appropriate link, (see register INT_STATUS).

Remark: To ensure proper counting during lowering this value, first write a value of 0 into the DV_MISS_MAX or OOW_MAX value. Otherwise, the counter marker may be shifted over the max_count, which will result in a 16 bit overcount (afterwards it will continue at 0).

If an interrupt is to be cleared, the following procedure must be followed:

1. Write a 0x0 into OOW_MAX and DV_MISS_MAX register to disable detection and reset the counter.
2. Clear the appropriate link in the <XREF>12D_INT_CLEAR register (for all write 3F).
3. Write the requested value to the OOW_MAX and DV_MISS_MAX register, then write a 0 in the 12D_INT_CLEAR register.

3.5.1.5 I2D _PRBS_STAT

Pseudo Random Bit Sequence checksum status. In this PRBS mode there is a bit-error check on the content of the datalink, not on the datalink itself. The PRBS mode can be used for bit-error rate analysis. The functions of OOW and DV_MISS are still working.

Table 9: I2D_PRBS_STAT

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..7	RSD_31 To 7	Read Only	0x0	Reserved
6	DV_UNDET	Read Only	0x1	Global data valid undetected '1' DV undetected yet '0' DV has been detected
5	DV3_UNDET	Read Only	0x1	Data valid of datalink 3 undetected '1' DV undetected yet '0' DV has been detected
4	DV2_UNDET	Read Only	0x1	Data valid of datalink 2 undetected '1' DV undetected yet '0' DV has been detected
3	DV1_UNDET	Read Only	0x1	Data valid of datalink 1 undetected '1' DV undetected yet '0' DV has been detected
2	DLINK3_ERROR	Read Only	0x0	Error on datalink 3
1	DLINK2_ERROR	Read Only	0x0	Error on datalink 2
0	DLINK1_ERROR	Read Only	0x0	Error on datalink 1

This mode is only useful for debug/test mode and for testing of the datalinks. This mode is not necessary for application. It can be used to check the datalink channels on data transfer.

3.5.1.6 I2D _PRBS_CTRL

Pseudo Random Bit Sequence checksum settings.

Table 10: I2D_PRBS_CTRL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..8	RSD_31 To 8	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
7	PRBS_ENABLE	Read/Write	0x0	(1) Enable check on Pseudo Random Bit Sequence, (0) is normal mode and no check on PRBS.
6	DV_UNDET_SET	Write Only	0x0	Set data valid detection status to undetected for global dv
5	DV3_UNDET_SET	Write Only	0x0	Set data valid detection status to undetected for datalink 3
4	DV2_UNDET_SET	Write Only	0x0	Set data valid detection status to undetected for datalink 2
3	DV1_UNDET_SET	Write Only	0x0	Set data valid detection status to undetected for datalink 1

Table 10: I2D_PRBS_CTRL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
2	DL3_ERR_RST	Write Only	0x0	Clear error status bit of datalink 3[10-1]
1	DL2_ERR_RST	Write Only	0x0	Clear error status bit of datalink 2[10-1]
0	DL1_ERR_RST	Write Only	0x0	Clear error status bit of datalink 1[10-1]

[10-1] The DLx_ERR_RST registers don't always work well. To clear the DLINKx_ERROR status in the I2D_PRBS_STATUS register, the PRBS_ENABLE (bit 7) should be toggled off and on again.

This mode is only useful for debug mode, and for application not necessary. The testing of datalinks is not necessary in normal mode, but can be usefull to check the data transfer over the datalink.

3.5.1.7 I2D _INT_STATUS

The status of (possible) DVP interrupt requests.

Table 11: I2D _INT_STATUS

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..6	RSD_31 To 6	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
5	DV3_MISS_STAT	Read Only	0x0	Data valids are missing for datalink 3. The max value dv_miss_max has been reached.
4	SYNC3_LOST_STAT	Read Only	0x0	Data valid out of sync indication for datalink 3. The max value oow_max for out of window dv pulses has been reached.
3	DV2_MISS_STAT	Read Only	0x0	Data valids are missing for datalink 2. The max value dv_miss_max has been reached.
2	SYNC2_LOST_STAT	Read Only	0x0	Data valid out of sync indication for datalink2. The max value oow_max for out of window dv pulses has been reached.
1	DV1_MISS_STAT	Read Only	0x0	Data valids are missing for datalink1. The max value dv_miss_max has been reached.
0	SYNC1_LOST_STAT	Read Only	0x0	Data valid out of sync indication for datalink1. The max value oow_max for out of window dv pulses has been reached.

In this register you can read the status of the link if there are missing data valid errors, and if there has been loss of sync on one of the datalinks.

3.5.1.8 I2D _INT_ENABLE

Enable the DVP (Digital Video Platform) interrupt for request to the system IRQ controller.

Table 12: I2D _INT_ENABLE

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..6	RSD_31 To 6	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
5	DV3_MISS_ENA	Read/Write	0x0	Enable interrupt for missing data valid of datalink 3
4	SYNC3_LOST_ENA	Read/Write	0x0	Enable interrupt for lost of sync of datalink 3
3	DV2_MISS_ENA	Read/Write	0x0	Enable interrupt for missing data valid of datalink 2

Table 12: I2D _INT_ENABLE

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
2	SYNC2_LOST_ENA	Read/Write	0x0	Enable interrupt for lost of sync of datalink 2
1	DV1_MISS_ENA	Read/Write	0x0	Enable interrupt for missing data valid of datalink 1
0	SYNC1_LOST_ENA	Read/Write	0x0	Enable interrupt for lost of sync of datalink 1

With this register you can enable or disable interrupts.

3.5.1.9 I2D _INT_CLEAR

Clear DVP interrupts. The I2D _INT_CLEAR is not a register, but a trigger mechanism.

Table 13: I2D_INT_CLEAR

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..6	RSD_31 To 6	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
5	DV3_MISS_CLR	Write Only	0x0	Clear indication for missing data valid of datalink 3
4	SYNC3_LOST_CLR	Write Only	0x0	Clear indication for lost of sync of datalink 3
3	DV2_MISS_CLR	Write Only	0x0	Clear indication for missing data valid of datalink 2
2	SYNC2_LOST_CLR	Write Only	0x0	Clear indication for lost of sync of datalink 2
1	DV1_MISS_CLR	Write Only	0x0	Clear indication for missing data valid of datalink 1
0	SYNC1_LOST_CLR	Write Only	0x0	Clear indication for lost of sync of datalink 1

To clear the interrupts, write a 0 into OOW_MAX and DV_MISS_STAT registers. Then clear the INT_CLEAR register (write 3F, for reset all) and write the OOW_MAX and DV_MISS_STAT value (recommended is 0x50).

3.5.1.10 I2D _INT_SET

Set a DVP interrupt.

Table 14: I2D _INT_SET

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..6	RSD_31 To 6	Reserved	0x0	Reserved
5	DV3_MISS_SET	Write Only	0x0	Simulate data valids are missing for datalink3. The max value DV_MISS_MAX has been reached.
4	SYNC3_LOST_SET	Write Only	0x0	Simulate data valid out of sync indication for datalink3. The max value OOW_MAX for out of window DV pulses has been reached.
3	DV2_MISS_SET	Write Only	0x0	Simulate data valids are missing for datalink2. The max value DV_MISS_MAX has been reached.
2	SYNC2_LOST_SET	Write Only	0x0	Simulate data valid out of sync indication for datalink2. The max value OOW_MAX for out of window DV pulses has been reached.
1	DV1_MISS_SET	Write Only	0x0	Simulate data valids are missing for datalink1. The max value DV_MISS_MAX has been reached.
0	SYNC1_LOST_SET	Write Only	0x0	Simulate data valid out of sync indication for datalink1. The max value OOW_MAX for out of window DV pulses has been reached.

This register allows the software to simulate a missing data valid, or loss of sync on one or more links.

3.5.1.11 I2D _MOD_ID

Table 15: I2D _MOD_ID Block information

Bits	Name	Access Type	Reset Value	Description
31..16	MODULE_ID	Read Only	0x141	Module identifier
15..12	MAJOR_REV	Read Only	0x0	Major Revision. Any revision that may break SW compatibility.
11..8	MINOR_REV	Read Only	0x0	Minor Revision. Any revision that still keep SW compatibility.
7..0	APERTURE	Read Only	0x0	Aperture Size.

In this register you can read the hardware version. With the software version identified you have a better overview of the hardware/software capabilities. Also, the software can have better control over the modules if hardware version is known.

3.6 Interrupt Procedure

When the I^2D core detects an interrupt condition, i.e. a situation that requires software interaction, it sets the corresponding Internal Interrupt Status bit in the Interrupt Status register. Then the I^2D checks whether this interrupt condition is enabled by inspecting the corresponding bit in the Interrupt Enable register. If this bit is ‘1’, a system interrupt request will be generated.

The software should remove the cause of the interrupt condition by taking the appropriate action. As soon as the cause is removed, the Internal Interrupt Status bit in the Interrupt Status register must be cleared by writing a ‘1’ to the corresponding bit of the Interrupt Clear register.

For debugging purposes the software can also generate ‘fake’ interrupt conditions by writing a ‘1’ into bit *i* of the Interrupt Set register. The result is that the Interrupt Status bit *i* will go high.

3.6.1 Interrupt Behaviour

The I^2D interrupt architecture contains 4 registers: status, enable, set and clear. Activation of an interrupt request starts as soon as the interrupt condition becomes true. The interrupt condition can be read from the status register, its name indicates the interrupt generated. Every interrupt condition (set interrupt or write action) can set bits in the status register. The status register indicates one or more pending interrupt conditions.

To disable interrupts:

- via register INT_ENABLE to enable/disable interrupts on a line
- via setting OOW_MAX and DV_MISS_MAX to 0x0.

To clear interrupts:

- write 0x0 in DV_MISS_MAX and OOW_MAX register
- clear the interrupts via register INT_CLEAR (write 0x3F to it)

- set default value 0x50 in DV_MISS_MAX and OOW_MAX register

3.6.2 Software Action with Registers

When an interrupt occurs, the reaction of the system is set maker dependent. It is recommended to execute the soft-reset procedure. A software loop should check whether the fault situation won't occur again (polling or via interrupts). There are several operating situations that can occur:

1. Start up
2. Normal operation
3. Soft_reset
4. Change of source selection
5. Sync lost on a datalink
6. Missing of data valid pulses
7. Test mode: pseudo random mode, set interrupt status bit for lost data and/or sync

3.6.2.1 Start Up

During startup, registers will have a default value after releasing the reset to the I2D receiver registers.

The bit 0 in I2D_RX_CTRL has to activate the receiver. A 0 has to be written to it, by startup the bit is: 1 (power down), needed to power down the HF datalink receiver in sleep and coma modes. Enabling is needed for normal operations.

During startup the clock domain separator has to lock on the Data Valid signals. After power up all the I2D interrupt sources are disabled. The clock domain separator block is waiting for Data Valids (validity the data of the corresponding datalink) coming from the three analog datalinks. If there are Data Valids on at least two data_links, which are in the same clock period, the clock domain separator is locked on these pulse rates.

Procedure at start up:

- Activate the receiver in reg: I2D _RX_CTRL, bit 0 (RX_APPL_PD) write 0.
- Disable the DV_MISS_MAX and OOW_MAX counter, by writing a 0, (disable int)
- Give a Soft_Reset, in I2D _REC_DEMUX_MODE write bit 17.
- Write 3F to the INT_CLEAR,
- Enable the DV_MISS_MAX and OOW_MAX counter and write defaut 0x50, the minimum value is 2.

After this soft-reset the clock domain receiver locks again and the Data and Strobe Signals should be stable. The receiver should now enter Normal operation, if not refer to conditions **5** and **6** below.

3.6.2.2 Normal Operation

During normal operation PNX2000 sends an operating status signal to the PNX3000 receiver (1 per second). When the receiver is in lock, the clock domain separator continues to check that the Data Valid pulses are coming in the right window from the datalinks. If the clock domain separator does not get Data Valid pulses within the desired window, the number of MISsing Data Valid, or Out Of Window pulses, from the corresponding link is incremented. If the number missing Data valid pulses to the de-multiplexer is larger than OOW_MAX, or DV_MISS_MAX, the interrupt status is set and an interrupt can be generated. When this happens, operating condition **5** or **6** occur.

Remark: If the clock domain separator does not get Data Valid signal within the desired window, the data can still be valid.

3.6.2.3 Soft_reset

When a fault condition appears the clock domain separator gets out of lock (no data pulses are detected within the window), when the limit of OOW_MAX or DV_MISS_MAX is reached. However, the software resets the Rec_Demux_mode register 07FF8018 and bit 17 from this register resets the clock domain separator and the receiver can again lock on the data-stream.

Such a fault condition appears during start-up, for this reason the receiver is powered down during switch on.

A temperature change, or start-up transient can cause fast phase shift of the datalink and the clock domain receiver does not receive DV pulses within the catching or locking window.

3.6.2.4 Change of Source Selection

When there is a request to change the video source, the AVIP sends a command via the I2C bus telling the MPIF that it has to change the source. When the MPIF changes the source, the Data Valids generated in the receiver are still right, but the content from a packet is not right (due to the asynchronous switch over). The MIPS_software itself has to find out where the MPIF has changed over. The change over is in one packet.

3.6.2.5 Sync lost on a datalink (Out Of Sync)

When the counter OOW_MAX counts too many word sync out of the locked window (meaning a number of such words, counted by a counter, exceeds the value set via OOW_MAX item), the output data is not stable anymore. A sync_lost indicator is raised, meaning SYNC3_LOST_STATSYNC2_LOST_STATSYNC2_LOST_STAT is set to '1'. Change in value of a sync_lost indicator from '0' to '1' should be a trigger for software to perform a soft_reset action to calibrate the clock domain again in order to guarantee a good picture and sound quality.

The following steps can be executed in this situation:

1. Set a soft_reset item from the I2D_REC_DEMUX_MODE register to '1' in order to calibrate the clock domain.

2. Write '0' into OOW_MAX item and afterwards write back again the chosen value (recommended is 0x50). This action is necessary to clear the internal Out Of Window counters.
3. Clear the interrupts by writing 0x3F into I2D_INT_CLEAR register.

This calibration loop is needed to ensure a proper picture on the output. Otherwise there can appear speckles on the screen and sound can be disturbed. Software can decide whether they regular poll the status register or enable the interrupt.

In normal circumstances this interrupt should not appear. But when it does, software should act as described in this section to ensure good picture and sound quality.

3.6.2.6 Missing data_valid pulses

When the clock domain separator doesn't receive word sync pulses, the DV_MISS_MAX counter for a respective link is incremented. However each consecutive time a word sync (or data valid) is received, the DV_MISS_MAX counter of the appropriated datalink is reset. When the counter reaches the programmed value, defined in DV_MISS_MAX register, the corresponding bit of the INT_STATUS register (DV3_MISS_STAT or DV2_MISS_STAT or DV1_MISS_STAT) is set to 1 and the datalink receiver generates an interrupt flag.

If there is an indicator of data valid missing raised, meaning DV3_MISS_STAT DV2_MISS_STAT DV1_MISS_STAT is set to '1', it is likely that the output data is invalid. Change in value of a data valid missing indicator from '0' to '1' should be a trigger for software to perform a recovery in order to guarantee a good picture and sound quality.

The following steps can be executed in this situation:

1. Check the status of the datalink receivers. The RX_APPL_PD of the I2D_RX_CTRL register should be set 0 and the PD_STAT_RX (bit 0) of I2D_RX_STATUS should be equal. If this status bit is 1, there is an internal hardware problem and should be stored in the Error register.
2. Set a soft_reset item from the I2D_REC_DEMUX_MODE register to '1' in order to calibrate the clock domain again.
3. Write '0' into DV_MISS_MAX and afterwards write back again the chosen value (recommended is 0x50). This action is necessary to clear the internal DV_MISS counter.
4. Clear the interrupts by writing 0x3F into I2D_INT_CLEAR.
5. Put PPRS_ENABLE to '1' to start measurements on the I2D Receiver.
6. If the DV_UNDET bit remains high in 100ms, the I2D can not lock anymore to the input. If the DVx_UNDET bits remain high in 100 ms, the corresponding data valid did not arrive at all. In this situation, there is an external (hardware) problem and should be logged into the Error register.
7. If the interrupt returns within 1 second, there is an external (hardware) problem of bad reception and should be logged into the Error register.

Software can decide whether they regular poll the status register or enable the interrupt. In normal circumstances this interrupt will never appear. But when it does (due to a hardware defect or external factors), software should act as proposed in this section. It is up to the custumer whether this software loop is implemented and if the errors are logged in the Error register.

It is advised to blank the picture output when this condition appears, since the data is corrupted. Most likely Viddec won't be able to lock and sound is disturbed. Check whether the MPIF is booted up and functioning properly.

3.6.2.7 Test mode

It is not possible to do a boundary scan of the datalink transmitters in the MPIF and it is not possible to do a boundary scan of the inputs of the AVIP receiver. So it is very difficult to test the ICs on those points. Therefore it is possible to bring the MPIF in pseudo-random mode (from version MPIF N1D). In this mode the manufacturer can evaluate the transmitter-receiver link on various data profiles and analyze the link behavior.

This test mode can be used to evaluate the data transfer from MPIF to AVIP.

The procedure is described below.

1. Blank the picture on the screen and switch off the sound output, to avoid noise on the screen and noise out of the speakers.
2. Set the MPIF in pseudo-random mode via the PRND bit from the MPIF Datalink_mode register. See user manual MPIF.
3. Write a '1' to Soft_reset from the I2D_REC_DEMUX_MODE register to calibrate the clock domain again.
4. Set the OOW_MAX and DV_MISS_MAX counter in register: REC_SYNC_LOST to 0x0. (Disables counter and interrupts generation) and write back again the chosen value (recommended is 0x50).
5. Clear the I2D_INT_CLEAR register by writing 0x3F.
6. Activate the Pseudo-Random Bit Sequence check. Write 1 to PRBS_ENABLE (bit 8) of the I2D_PRBS_CTRL register.
7. When the PRBS mode is activated, the circuit checks the data coming from the MPIF. Afterwards poll the Pseudo Random Bit Sequence status (PRBS_STAT) register regular. The value of this register should be 0x0.
   - When the DVx_UNDET did not become '0', the datalink did not receive any datavalid from the HF datalink receivers.
   - When the DLINKx_ERROR is '1', it means the pseudo-random data was not right on the line the corresponding error bit. This bit stays high until it is cleared by toggling PRBS_ENABLE.
   - When Interrupt DVx_MISS_STAT is high, the data valid does not appear regular.
   - When Interrupt SYNCx_LOST_STAT is high, the datalink is not calibrated well. A soft_reset could be executed to calibrate again.

The working of PRBS registers is independent of the OOW and DV_MISS counters. The data speed on the line is very high, so you know immediately if the line is good.

If no errors are observed during execution of the test, software can again switch off the PRBS mode of MPIF and the I2D receiver and release the system (i.e. enable sound and picture output).

If there are errors it means that:

- The transmitter in the MPIF is not functioning,
- The receiver in the AVIP is not functioning,
- The wire connection is not good (with one open wire it was found that the transmission was still good. (The wire connection can be checked with the DCF status bit of MPIF).
- There are outside disturbances (e.g. EMC, power stability).

Chapter 4: Video Processing (Viddec)

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

4.1 Overview

VIDDEC has the following features:

- AGC on all inputs to ensure optimum use of the bit range
- CVBS and Y/C input
- Multi-standard Color decoder including PAL M and PAL N
- 2D Comb Filter
- YPrPb / RGB processing, both 1Fh and 2Fh
- Sync on CVBS, Y or external (external 2Fh only)
- Fast blanking for RGB on SCART (1Fh only)

The input can handle CVBS, Y/C and YUV signals.

Remark: The system can handle also RGB signals because the PNX3000 converts RGB signals to YUV. The Y from YUV and C from Y/C share the same channel. In practice, Y/C and YUV are not present at the same time, so this is no limitation.

The signals from the I^2D receiver block are fed to the input of a data synchronizer block. All incoming data streams are 10 bits wide and have the same sample frequency. U and V, which are sampled at half the sample frequency of CVBS, C and Y, are combined in one data stream.

The U and V stream is demultiplexed in separate U,V streams for further processing. In the sample rate converter the data streams are transferred from the free running sample clock to a line locked clock domain. At the same time the data sample size is increased to 13 bit.

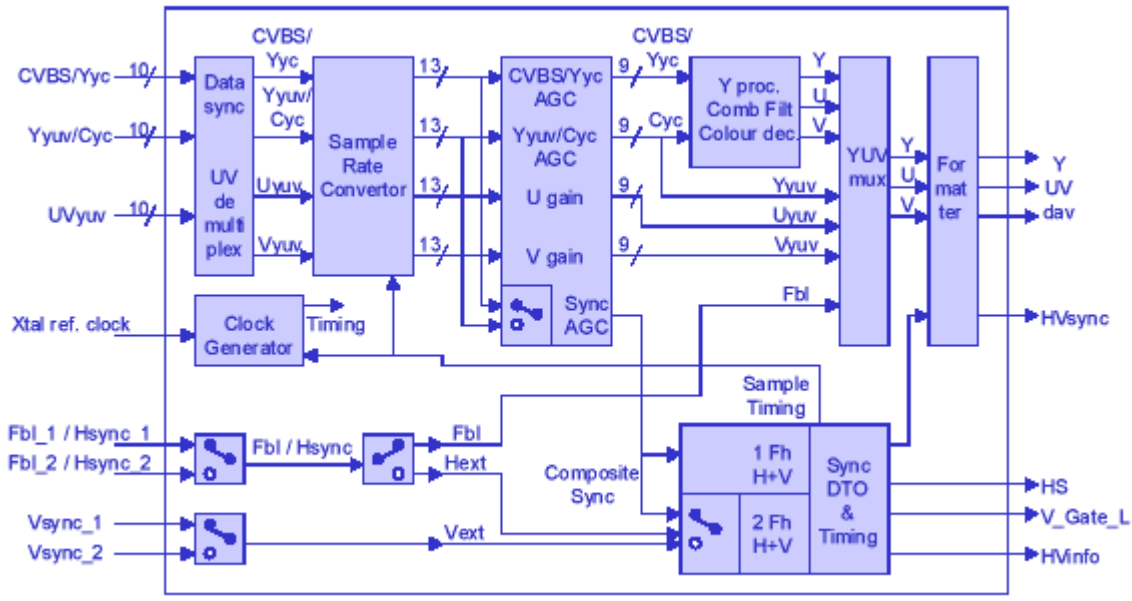


Figure 1: Block Diagram VIDeo DECoder

The 13 bit wide data streams enter the AGC block. This block takes care to fit the incoming signals optimally in the available 9 bit space for further processing in the chain. Level deviations at the PNX3000 inputs from +3 dB to – 3dB are corrected. In this way no excessive headroom needs to be reserved which improves the signal to noise in the chain. The sync signal has a separate AGC block. The input for the Sync AGC can be taken from the CVBS/Y channel or from the Y channel from YUV.

The CVBS and Y/C data are fed to a multi-standard color decoder. This decoder can handle all world standards of PAL, SECAM and NTSC including Latin America. All necessary filtering and traps are included. The input of the color demodulator can be switched between the CVBS signal and the C signal to enable Y/C processing. The decoder also incorporates a 2D combfilter for PAL (4 lines) and NTSC (2 lines) for improved luminance and chrominance separation.

The YUV at the output of the color decoder connect to an YUV switch. At the other input of this switch the YUV signals from the YUV input are connected. The switch can be controlled by an external voltage (Fast Blanking on insertion pin) or forced by software. A formatter combines the U and V stream again to one data stream with the same sample frequency as the Y stream The sync output from the AGC goes to the synchronization block. This block generates the Horizontal and Vertical pulses for further processing (HVsync), as well as timing information for the PNX3000 for correct black level clamping (HVinfo).

The YUV path and the synchronization can handle both 1Fh signals as 2Fh signals. For 2 Fh signals, the sampling frequency for YUV is doubled and also the synchronization uses a special 2 Fh part for sync processing.

The sync can be derived from the Y signals or from external H and V pulses. Also ATSC YUV signals (tri level sync and Fh = 33.75 kHz) can be handled in 2 Fh mode. To process 2Fh signals, the VIDDEC must be set in 2Fh mode by doubling one of its clock frequencies coming from another block in PNX2000.

4.2 Data input, Sample Rate Converter and timing

Figure 2 shows typical input and sample rate conversion.

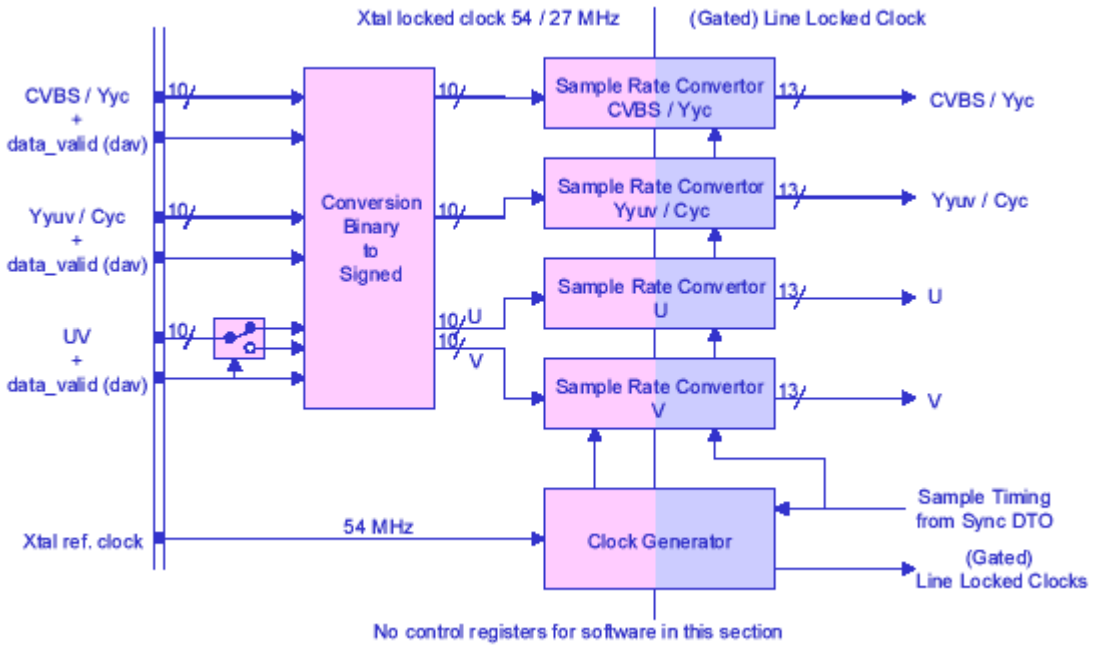


Figure 2: Input and Sample Rate Conversion

4.2.1 Short Description

The input can handle CVBS, Y/C and YUV. To distinguish the Y from Y/C and from YUV the first is called Yyc and the second Yyuv. Cyc and Yyuv share the same data path. The selection which signal is routed to the input is made by the I^2D receiver block.

Figure 3 shows the data streams from I²D to VIDDEC for different modes.

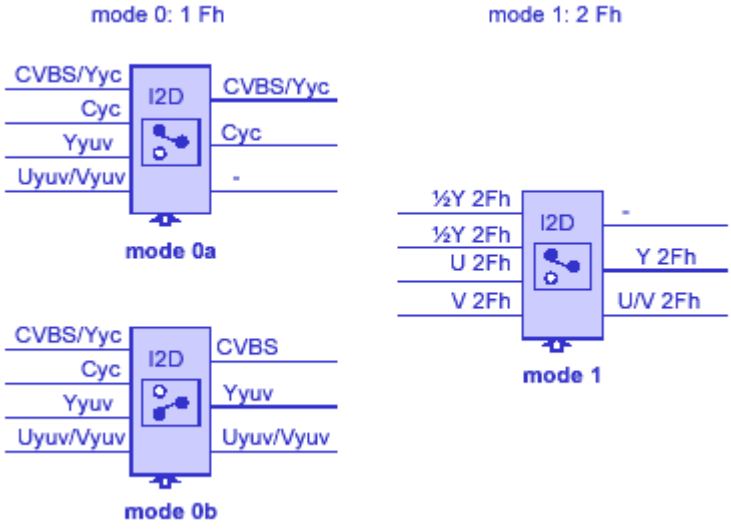


Figure 3: Selection Input Data Streams for VIDDEC in I²D

For 1 Fh, all input data streams are 10 bit, sampled with 27 MHz derived from a free running system clock. For 2 Fh, the Y and multiplexed UV data stream have a sample rate of 54 MHz.

In the first block the data is converted from unsigned to signed and the UV data stream is demultiplexed in separate U and V streams. The data streams are then fed to a sample rate converter. The samples are converted from the free running system clock domain to a (gated) line locked clock domain. (see PNX8550 for more information)

The number of bits per sample is increased to 13 bits at the output to enable optimal processing in the next AGC block.

4.3 AGC

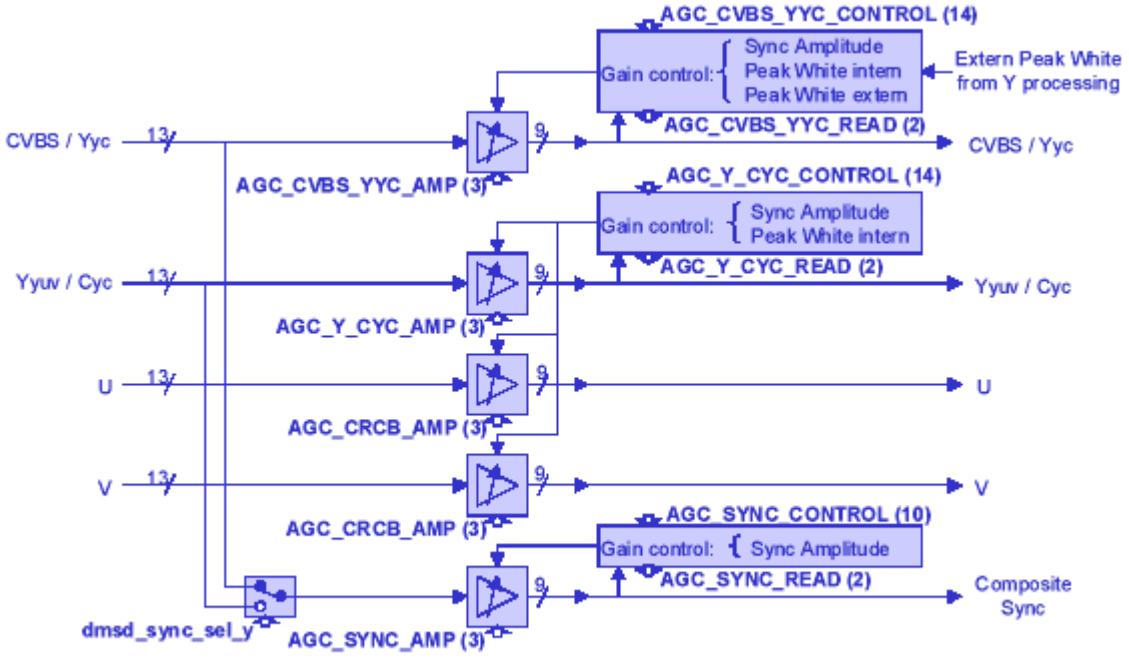


Figure 4: AGC Block Diagram

4.3.1 Short Description

The up converted 13 bit wide signals, coming from the sample rate converter, are passed through an AGC stage to utilise the full 9 bits resolution of the color decoder.

The CVBS/Y, U and V signal path have their own AGC circuit, the Cyc and Yyuv share the AGC circuit because these signals are not available at the same time. Selection between Cyc and Yyuv is done in the I^2D receiver with the bits **mode1..0**.

At the input of the Sync AGC circuit, it is possible to select between the CVBS/Yyc signal or the Yyuv signal for sync processing.

The AGC stage consists of a general programmable gain stage and a control circuit.

The gain stage is identical for all input signals. It features:

- Programmable black level for the input stage
- Programmable black level for the output stage
- Programmable gain range

For gain stages, which only carry one type of signal (CVBS/Yyc, U, V, Sync), the settings are fixed.

For gain stages carrying different signals (Cyc or Yyuv) the settings must be adapted for the selected signal. There are 3 control circuits, one for CVBS/Yyc, one for Cyc or Yyuv, one for Sync signal, each adapted for the specific signal properties. The control options are:

- Control on Sync amplitude
- Setting target sync amplitude
- Control on Peak White (Only CVBS/Yyc, Cyc or Yyuv)
- Setting target Peak White amplitude (Only CVBS/Yyc, Cyc or Yyuv)
- Minimal gain
- Maximal gain
- Fixed gain (No AGC)
- Hold momentary gain

In addition, the CVBS/Yyc control circuit can also use the (external) Peak White Limiter of the Color Decoder to adapt the gain. The U and V gain stages are slaved to the Cyc/Yyuv gain stage and the Cyc/Yyuv control circuit. At the output the streams are 9 bits wide. The signals are routed to the Color decoder (CVBS/Yyc and Cyc), to the YUV switch (Yyuv, U, V) and to the Sync circuit (CVBS/Yyc or Yyuv).

4.3.2 AGC Gain Stages

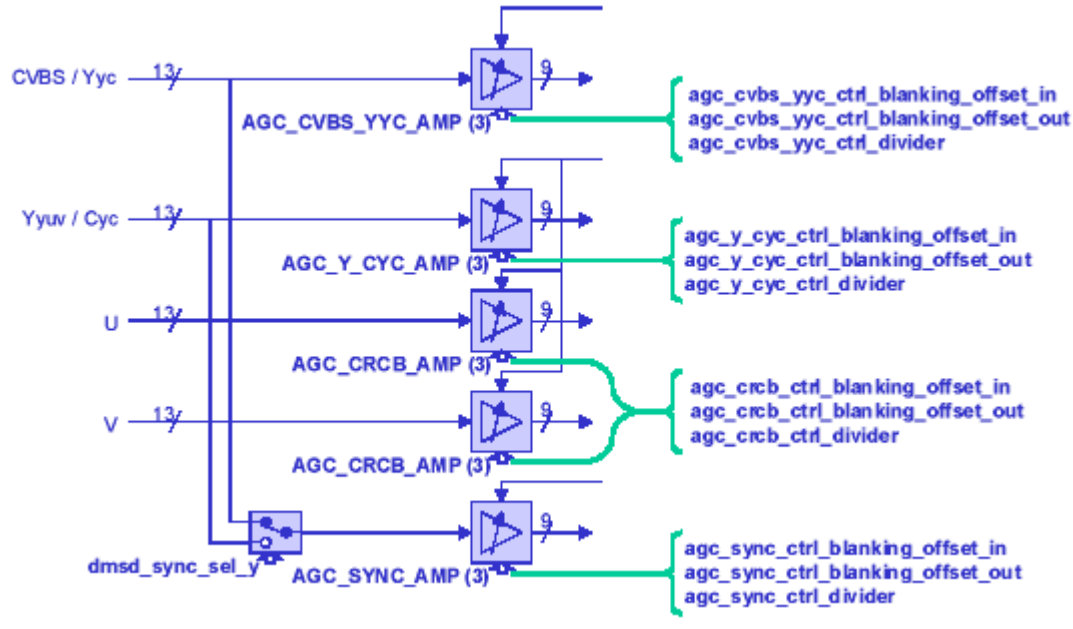


Figure 5: AGC Gain Stages

The 10 bits wide data, coming from the I^2D receiver, are up converted to 13 bits by the sample rate converter before entering the AGC gain stage. This implies that the incoming data is multiplied with a factor of 8.

The gain stage is made universal for all channels, and to adapt the stage to the specific input/output requirements, the black level at the input (**ctrl_blanking_offset_in**), the gain (ctrl_divider) and the black level at the output (**ctrl_blanking_offset_out**) are programmable.

After the gain stage, the data width is brought back to 9 bits wide to fit the data width of the processing by the color decoder. Beside the data width, also the black level and signal format (signed or unsigned) is adapted for the next stage. Below, a survey is given from the input data versus output data of the AGC stage. In the picture, the maximum data value, the minimum data value and the blanking level is indicated.

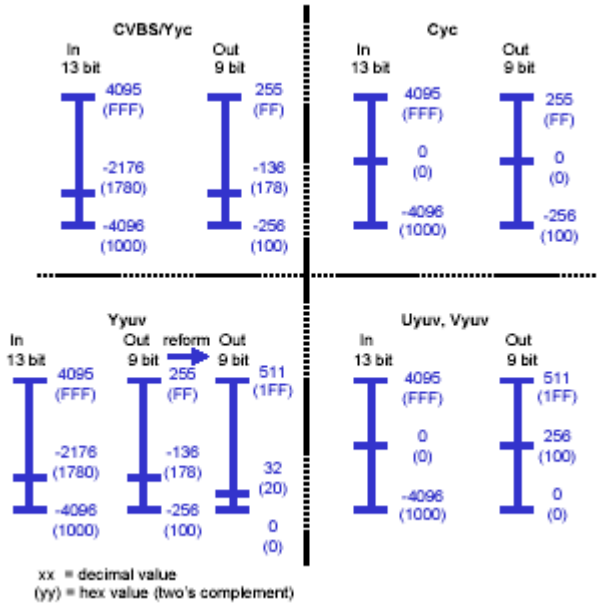


Figure 6: Input Format vs. Output Format of AGC

As indicated, different signals need different conversion. Especially the AGC gain stage in the Cyc / Yyuv path needs attention, because it has to be configured differently depending on the selected signal path.

Table 1: Bit Description - AGC Gain Stages - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
040	2	dmsd_sync_sel_y	Selects sync input 2 Sync from CVBS/Yyc path (1Fh) 3 Sync from Yyuv path (1Fh or 2Fh)	0/x	R/W
084	31..29	agc_cvbs_yyc_divider	Sets amplification range of the AGC block	3	R/W
	24..16	agc_cvbs_yyc_blanking_offset_out	Sets output blanking level	138	R/W

Table 1: Bit Description - AGC Gain Stages - Address 0X7FF9xxx *...Continued*

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
	7..0	agc_cvbs_yyc_blanking_offset_in	Sets input blanking level	80	R/W
088	31..29	agc_y_cyc_divider	Sets amplification range of the AGCblock	4/3	R/W
	24..16	agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_out	Sets output blanking level	138/1C0	R/W
	7..0	agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_in	Sets input blanking level	80/0	R/W
08C	31..29	agc_crcb_divider	Sets amplification range of the AGC block	3	R/W
	24..16	agc_crcb_blanking_offset_out	Sets output blanking level	C0	R/W
	7..0	agc_crcb_blanking_offset_in	Sets input blanking level	0	R/W
080	31..29	agc_sync_divider	Sets amplification range of the AGC block	6	R/W
	24..16	agc_sync_blanking_offset_out	Sets output blanking level	138	R/W
	7..0	agc_sync_blanking_offset_in	Sets input blanking level	80	R/W

Remark: In all Bit Description tables the R/D column indicates Reset/Default. If default value is not given it is the same as the reset.

dmsd_sync_sel_y

The sync for the synchronization block can be taken from the CVBS/Yyc path or the Cyc/Yyuv path. The Cyc/Yyuv path can also be used for 2Fh signals with sync on Yyuv.

Remark: For 1Fh RGB signals, the sync is often taken from the (accompanying) CVBS signal.

agc_xxx_divider

The divider sets the maximum gain of the stage. The first part of the stage is a pre-amplifier, whose gain can range between a minimum of 0 and a maximum of 1023. The gain can be controlled by the AGC loop or programmed for a fixed gain

(see Section 4.3.3)

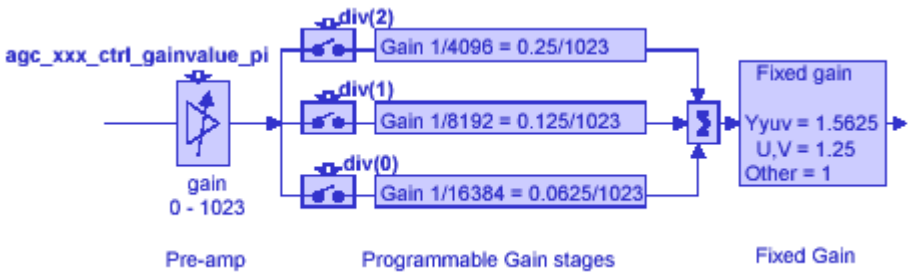


Figure 7: AGC Universal Programmable Gain Stage

The programmable part of the gain stage consists of 3 parallel branches (dividers), which can be selected individually or in combination. The amplification of the 3 branches at maximum pre-amplifier gain (1023) is 0.2500, 0.1250 and 0.0625 respectively and are controlled by **agc_xxx_divider** bits 2..0 in the same order.

So the gain range from the 13 bits input to the 9 bits output of the summation block can be set between:

- Minimal gain, **agc_xxx_divider** = 0 0 1 [binary] is 0.0625
- Maximum gain, **agc_xxx_divider** = 1 1 1 [binary] is 0.4375

Remark: At least one branch has to be enabled.

This gain is finally multiplied by the fixed gain of the following block. This fixed gain is not equal for all AGC gain stages.

In formula:

gain = pre-amp gain (dec) * ((**div(2)***0.25 + **div(1)***0.125 + **div(0)***0.0625) / 1023) * fixed gain

Programming

For the AGC divider stages of CVBS/Yyc, CrCb (Uyuv/VYuv) and Sync, the reset value is the required value. No need to program these values.

Only for the Cyc/Yyuv stage, programming is needed, depending on the selected signal path:

- Yyuv signal (YPrPb or RGB): **agc_y_cyc_divider** = 3 hex (bit 011)
- Cyc signal: **agc_y_cyc_divider** = 4 hex (bit 100)

agc_xxx_blanking_offset_in

Looking at the input format, we have two standard blanking levels at the input, 0 (0 hex) and –2176 (1780 hex two's complement). The selection between these two levels is made by the most significant bit of **AGC_xxx_blanking_offset_in** (bit 7):

- **agc_xxx_blanking_offset_in** (7) = 0 selects offset 0 (0 hex)
- **agc_xxx_blanking_offset_in** (7) = 1 selects offset -2176 (1780 hex, two's complement)

The bits **agc_xxx_blanking_offset_in (6..0)** control the offset in two's complement mode. Resolution per step is 4 hex on the 13 bit wide input data, i.e. one step increases the 13 bit data by 4 hex. Calculating back the resolution to the 10 bits data at the output of the I^2D receiver (or input of the sample rate converter), the resolution is ½ LSB on the 10 bits data, which is fine enough for this purpose.

The offset control is mainly to correct problems of black level offsets in previous stages like the AD conversion. For PNX2000, no black level offset correction is needed. So only the most significant bit 7 is used to select between the two standard blanking levels at the input.

Programming

For the AGC stages of CVBS/Yyc, CrCb (Uyuv/VYuv) and Sync, the reset value is the required value. No need to program these values. Only for the Cyc/Yyuv stage, programming is needed, depending on the selected signal path:

- Yyuv signal: **agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_in** = 80 hex (bit 7 = 1)
- Cyc signal: **agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_in** = 0 hex (bit 7 = 0)

agc_xxx_blanking_offset_out

At the output, we have more difference in required format. The signals fed to the color decoder are formatted in two's complement, while signals following the YUV path, are unsigned. The blanking level has now to be programmed correctly for each signal path. The offset value is 9 bits wide and has a resolution of 1 LSB/step related to the 9 bits wide output. The range is (in two's complement) –256 to 255. To have enough range for the offset programming, an offset of 64 dec (40 hex) is added. This shifts the range to – 192 to 319 The formula to calculate the needed offset value is:

(decimal): **agc_xxx_blanking_level_offset_out**(dec) = required blanking level(dec) – 64

(hex): **agc_xxx_blanking_level_offset_out**(hex) = required blanking level(hex) – 40

For the required blanking level the value is given in Figure 7 Input format vs. output format of AGC. Except for **agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_out**, the needed value equals the reset value:

agc_sync_blanking_offset_out = 138 (hex)

agc_cvbs_yyc_blanking_offset_out = 138 (hex)

agc_crcb_blanking_offset_out = C0 (hex)

agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_out

The gain stage for the (combined) Cyc / Yyuv path contains an extra formatter stage which contains a fixed gain and transforms the output levels of Yyuv to the levels, suited to feed to the YUV switch. For the calculation of the **agc_y_cyc_blanking_level_offset_out** for use with Yyuv we have to use the levels before the formatter.

So the blanking level for Yyuv out is –136 dec (178 hex two's complement).

Using the formula the value for Yyuv becomes –200 dec (138 hex).

The blanking level for Cyc is 256.

The value for use with Cyc becomes 192 dec (C0 hex)

The range of the **agc_xxx_blanking_offset_out** is larger than needed for the application in PNX2000.

It is possible to program the offset so high that the value of the output is higher than the output range of 9 bits. In that case, the value is not clipped but folds over. Because these high settings are not practical for PNX2000 other than for testing, this is no limitation. In practice, the described values should be used, which have no problems.

Programming

For the AGC stages of CVBS/Yyc, CrCb (Uyuv/VYuv) and Sync, the reset value is the required value. No need to program these values.

Only for the Cyc/Yyuv stage, programming is needed, depending on the selected signal path:

- Yyuv signal: **agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_out** = -200 dec (138 hex, two's complement)
- Cyc signal: **agc_y_cyc_blanking_offset_out** = 256 dec (C0 hex)

4.3.3 AGC Control Circuit

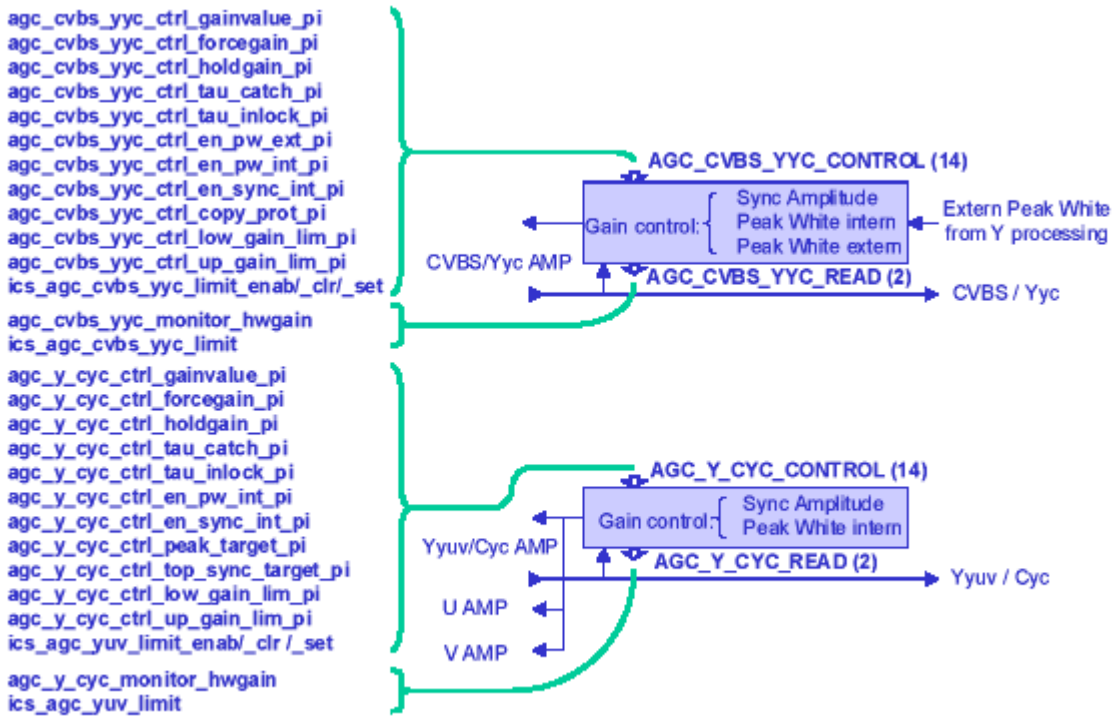


Figure 8: AGC Control Circuit CVBS/Yyc and Yyuv/Cyc

4.3.3.1 AGC Control Circuit for CVBS / Yyc path

The control circuit for the CVBS / Yyc path has a very flexible set-up. It is designed to work in an automatic mode. In this case, the sync amplitude is used to determine the needed gain factor for amplification of the total signal to the nominal level. To cope with signals having compressed sync, a peak white limiter will take care that no clipping occurs. In the CVBS / Yyc control circuit it is possible to use the AGC internal peak white limiter or the "external" peak white limiter of the color decoder.

To improve the behavior for non-standard conditions, the maximum and minimum gain can be programmed to prevent excessive adaptation. It is also possible to set a fixed gain for test purposes. Also the gain of an active loop can be frozen for measuring or testing.

The time constant of the AGC loop can be programmed differently for the situation when there is horizontal lock (usually a fast time constant required) or when there is no horizontal lock (usually slower time constant to prevent pumping). For this purpose, the horizontal lock of the sync circuit is used. For monitoring, an interrupt can be programmed to signal when the programmed gain limits are exceeded.

Table 2: Bit Description - AGC Gain Control - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
094	9.0	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi	Gain value when forcegain_pi = 1	1CD	R/W
	10	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrlagc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_forcegain_pi	0 Gain controlled by AGC loop. 1 Fixed gain, determined by gainvalue_pi	0	R/W
	11	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_holdgain_pi	0 Normal AGC loop operation1 Freezes the momentary gain of the loop	0	R/W
	18..16	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_tau_catch_pi	AGC loop time constant when there is no H-lock 000 Fast AGC time constant. 111 Slow AGC time constant	1	R/W
	22..20	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_tau_inlock_pi	AGC loop time constant when there is H-lock000 Fast AGC time constant111 Slow AGC time constant	6	R/W
	23	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_pw_ext_pi	Enables the "external" (= outside AGC block) peak white limiter of the multi-standard color decoder to influence the AGC loop. 0 External pk wh lim not enabled 1 External pk wh lim enabled	1	R/W
	24	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_pw_int_pi	Enables the internal peak white limiter of the AGC block to influence the AGC loop0 Internal pk wh lim not enabled1 Internal pk wh lim enabled	1	R/W
	25	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_sync_int_pi	Enables the sync AGC loop to apply the same multiplication to the CVBS / YYC amplifier as needed to bring the sync amplitude to nominal level 0 Control by sync AGC loop not enabled1 Control by sync AGC loop enabled	1	R/W
	26	agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi	Corrects the nominal sync amplitude to 80% for macrovision signals. Must be used when macrovision is detected (dmsd_copro = 1) 0 Normal operation1 Use reduced sync amplitude(80%)	0	R/W
0A0	19..10	agc_cvbs_yyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi	Sets lowest possible gain for the AGC loop	142	R/W
0A4	19..10	agc_cvbs_yyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi	Sets maximum possible gain for the AGC loop	39A	R/W
08	19..10	agc_cvbs_yc_monitor_hwgain	Readout of the momentary gain value of the AGC loop		R
FE0	13	ics_agc_cvbs_yc_gain_limit	Interrupt flag set to 1 when upper or lower gain limit is exceeded. See Section 4.4.8 for details		R

agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi / _forcegain_pi

When **agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_forcegain_pi** is set to 1, the gain of the AGC stage is determined by the setting of register **agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi**. The 10 bits of this register determine the amplification of the pre-amplifier, discussed in AGC Gain Stages bit **agc_xxx_divider.**

The gain can be set from 0 to 1023.

The total amplification from input (13 bits) to output (9 bits) can be calculated using the formula, given in the description of the agc_xxx_divider bit:

gain = pre-amp gain (dec) * ((div(2)*0.25 + div(1)*0.125 + div(0)*0.0625) / 1023) * fixed gain. Taking into account that the fixed gain in the sync path is 1:

gain = gainvalue_pi (dec) * ((div(2)*0.25 + div(1)*0.125 + div(0)*0.0625) / 1023) * 1.

div(w) = agc_xxx_divider(w) where w is the bit number.

To scale the gain from 13 bit to the 10 bits wide output of the I^2D receiver (or input of the sample rate converter), the found gain value has to be multiplied by 8.

agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_holdgain_pi

Implemented for test purposes to freeze the momentary gain.

agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_ctrl_tau_catch_pi / _inlock_pi

While catching signals, the AGC time constant has to be fast to adapt quickly to varying signals conditions during e.g. search tuning. When in lock, the AGC time constant can better be chosen larger to prevent unstable behavior like pumping on video content. Because it is possible to program different time constants when not in lock (fast) and when in lock (less fast) the loop values do not need reprogramming depending on the signal condition. The values for these registers after a reset should perform ok.

agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_pw_int_pi / _pw_ext_pi / sync_int_pi

These bits enable the different control loops.

When the amplitude of the total signal is attenuated proportionally but the relative amplitude ratios are kept correct, the sync amplitude is the most ideal signal part to determine the needed amplification to bring the signal back to nominal level.

Only for compressed sync, the amplification would become too large. The external peak white limiter (present in the color decoder / Y processing part) can be used to reduce the gain below peak white level. Also the internal peak white limiter in the AGC can perform this task, but this peak white limiter clips immediately signals when coming above peak white level, while the external peak white limiter is more sophisticated in behaviour. It is advised to enable all three control circuits for the best performance. This is also the status after a reset.

agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi

When macrovision is present in the signal, the sync amplitude is reduced to 80% of the nominal sync level. Writing this bit to '1' adapts the sync target value to prevent that the CVBS signal is amplified too much (to 125% in stead of 100%) in case of signals containing macrovision on sync. The sync processing contains a bit, dmsd_copro, which becomes 1 when macrovision in sync is detected.

This bit has to be monitored on a regular basis and **agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi** has to follow the value as indicated by dmsd_copro for correct behaviour.

agc_cvbs_yyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi / _up_gain_lim_pi

Limits the minimum and maximum gain of the AGC loop to prevent strange behavior under abnormal signal conditions. Fair reset values have been implemented and we do not expect that these values have to be adapted after a reset.

agc_cvbs_yc_monitor_hwgain

Reads out the momentary gain when the control loop is active. For test purposes.

ics_agc_cvbs_yyc_limit / _enab / _clr / _set

It is possible to enable an interrupt when the programmed lowest gain or upper gain is reached. See Section 8.10 for interrupt programming and handling.

Programming

All registers have a proper value after reset and need no programming except for the following one.

agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi

Software has to monitor regularly (or can enable an interrupt to be signalled) the bit dmsd_copro, which indicates whether macrovision is detected in the sync. The value of **agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi** has to follow the value of **dmsd_copro**.

4.3.3.2 AGC Control Circuit for Yyuv / Cyc Path

The basic control mechanisms for this path are identical as for the CVBS / Yyc path. Only here we have to adapt the settings depending on the type of signal:

- Yyuv with sync on Y
- Yyuv, converted from RGB without sync
- Cyc

The needed settings are discussed in more detail after the survey of the control bits.

Table 3: Bit Description - AGC Control Circuit for Yyuv / Cyc Path - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
098	9..0	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi	Gain value when forcegain_pi =1	0E8/[3-1]	R/W
	10	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi	0 Gain controlled by AGC loop 1 Fixed gain, determined by gainvalue_pi	0	R/W
	11	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_holdgain_pi	0 Normal AGC loop operation 1 Freezes the momentary gain of the loop	0	R/W
	18..16	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_catch_pi	AGC loop time constant when there is no H-lock 000 Fast AGC time constant 111 Slow AGC time constant	1	R/W
	22..20	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_inlock_pi	AGC loop time constant when there is H-lock 000 Fast AGC time constant 111 Slow AGC time constant	6	R/W
	24	agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_pw_int_pi	Enables the internal peak white limiter of the AGC block to influence the AGC loop 0 Internal peak white limiter not enabled 1 Internal peak white limiter enabled	1	R/W
	25	agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_sync_int_pi	Enables the sync AGC loop to apply the same multiplication to the CVBS /YYC amplifier as needed to bring the sync amplitude to nominal level 0 Control by sync AGC loop not enabled 1 Control by sync AGC loop enabled	1	R/W
09C	8..0	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi	Sets the peak level the AGC loop uses for gain control	1FF/13B	
	24..16	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi	Sets the top sync level the AGC loop uses for gain ctrl	100/[3-2]	R/W
0A0	29..20	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi	Sets lowest possible gain for the AGC loop	11F/0F5	R/W
0A4	29..20	Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi	Sets maximum possible gain for the AGC loop	332/2BA	R/W
008	29..20	Agc_y_cyc_monitor_hwgain	Readout of the momentary gain value of the AGC loop		R/W
0E0	14	Ics_agc_y_cyc_gain_limit	Interrupt flag set to 1 when upper or lower gain limit is exceeded		R
0E4	14	int_ena_agc_y_cyc_gain_limit	Disables/enables the interrupt generation 0 Disabled 1 Enabled	0	R/W
0E8	14	int_clr_agc_y_cyc_gain_limit	Writing "1" to this position clears the interrupt flag Interrupt flag must be cleared by software after acknowledge of the interrupt.		W
0EC	14	int_set_agc_y_cyc_gain_limit	Writing "1" to this position forces the interrupt flag to 1. For test purposes.		W

[3-1] 15D (YPrPb), 100 (Y/C)

[3-2] 100 or 118 when Macrovision present

Most of the bits are identical to the ones, discussed with the CVBS / Yyc path and will not be discussed here again.

Remark: When YUV processing is selected, the gain of the AGC amplifiers in the UV path is slaved to the amplification of the Yyuv AGC stage.

Differences with the CVBS / Yyc path:

Missing control option

There is no option to use an external peak white limiter, because the Yyuv is not routed through the color decoder part. So for peak white control, only the internal peak white clipper can be used.

Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi / _top_sync_target_pi

Because the Yyuv / Cyc path can handle a variety of signals, the peak white level and the top sync level can be programmed. These values are used when the **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_pw_int_pi / _sync_int_pi** enable AGC control by the (internal) peak white limiter or sync amplitude.

When the gain of the Yyuv / Cyc stage is forced to manual (**agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi** = 1) and the setting of the gain value (**agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi**) is set too high (3FF), fold over may occur. Because this is not a practical situation and it is advised to use automatic settings, this is not a problem in practice.

Settings for different signal streams

The subsequent paragraphs describe the control register settings for the three possible input signals:

- YPrPb
- RGB with sync on CVBS
- Cyc

To start with the first two, the levels are given of a Y signal before and after the AGC stage.

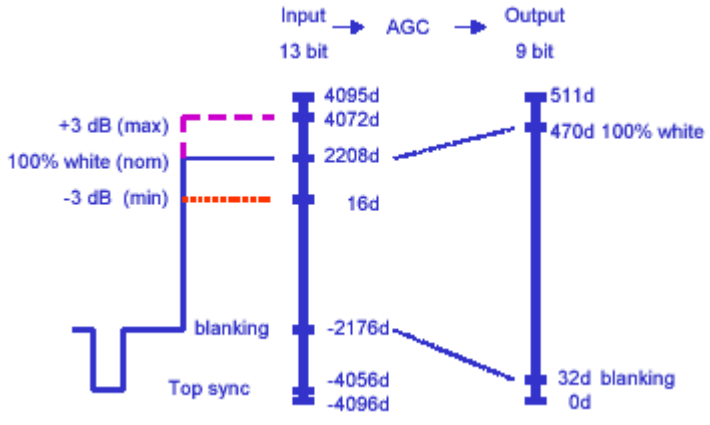


Figure 9: Levels Before and After the AGC in the Yyuv Path

These levels are needed to calculate amplification factors.

YPrPb

The setting for YPrPb are comparable with the settings for CVBS/Yyc. The signal contains a nominal sync which can be used for gain control and the peak white limiter can be enabled to limit the gain for compressed sync. The top sync target should be set for a nominal sync, which is –256d (100 hex two's complement)

(These levels are explained in the next chapter about the sync AGC path.) The peak target can be set for the maximum level at the 9 bits output, which is 511d (1FF hex).

Table 4: AGC Yyuv / Cyc for YPrPb Signals

Name	Setting for YPrPb	Reset/Default
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi	15D	0E8/[4-1]
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi	0	0
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_holdgain_pi	0	0
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_catch_pi	1	1
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_inlock_pi	6	6
agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_pw_int_pi	1	1
agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_sync_int_pi	1	1
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi	13B	1FF/13B
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi	100/118	100/[4-2]
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi	0F5	11F/0F5
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi	2BA	332/2BA
Agc_y_cyc_divider	3	4

[4-1] 15D (YPrPb), 100 (Y/C)

[4-2] 100 or 118 when Macrovision present

As can be seen, the reset values are not correct for a number of control bits for processing of YPrPb signals. This is related to an adaptation of the AGC block design without adapting the reset values. The bits, needing another default value, are:

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi = 13B (Reset: 1FF)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi = 100 / 118 (See Macrovision in Sync of YPrPb Signals)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi = 0F5 (Reset: 11F)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi = 2BA (Reset: 332)

The value of the bits below are different for YPrPb / RGB processing and Cyc processing. For YPrPb / RGB the value becomes:

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi = 15D (Reset: 0E8)

agc_y_cyc_divider = 3 (Reset: 4)

Macrovision in Sync of YPrPb Signals

Also YPrPb signals can contain macrovision in the sync. The presence of macrovision in sync can be read out by the detection bit **dmsd_copro** for 1Fh signals and **copro_2fh** for 2Fh signals, just like with CVBS / Yyc, provided that for the sync processing the Yyuv signal path is selected by setting **dmsd-sync_sel_y** to 1.

Only the Yyuv / Cyc control block does not contain a special bit like in the CVBS / Yyc control block (**agc_cvbs_yc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi**) which compensates for the 80% sync levels.

However, we can use the **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** to adapt the target level to compensate for the 80% sync levels with macrovision. For calculation of the value, see Figure 10.

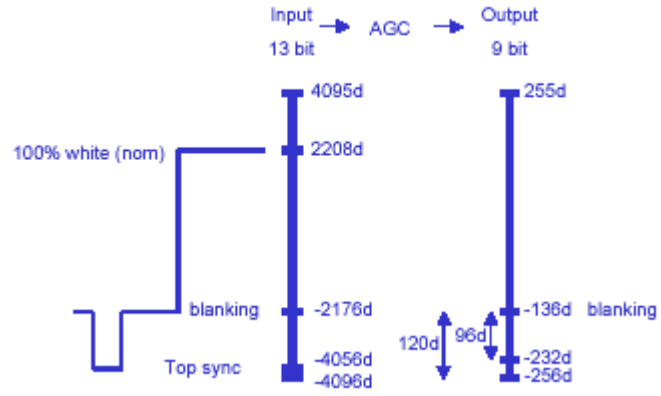


Figure 10: Levels Before and After the AGC in the Sync Path

A nominal sync at the AGC output has an amplitude of 120d, while the blanking level is at –136d. The value for **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** is the level of the sync bottom. So for a nominal sync this is –256 (100 hex two's complement) For 80% sync level, the amplitude becomes 0.8 * 120 = 96. Taking the blanking level as reference, the sync bottom becomes –232d, which is 118 in hex two's complement. So also for the Yyuv path it is important to check for macrovision and adapt the setting of **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** accordingly.

Programming

Ensure that the following registers are programmed with another value after reset:

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi = 13B (Reset: 1FF)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi = 100 / 118 (See Macrovision in Sync of YPrPb Signals)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi = 0F5 (Reset: 11F)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi = 2BA (Reset: 332)

For YPrPb processing, program:

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi = 15D (Reset: 0E8)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi has to be adapted according the status of

dmsd_copro (for 1Fh) or **copro_2fh** (for 2Fh), indicating macrovision on sync:

dmsd_copro / **copro_2fh** = 0 -> **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** = 100 hex

dmsd_copro / **copro_2fh** = 1 -> **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** = 118 hex

RGB with sync on CVBS

The signal levels for RGB input signals are the same as for Yyuv, because the RGB signals are converted to YUV format in the PNX3000 before further processing. Only the RGB signals do not contain sync, which excludes the possibility to use the sync for AGC control.

The proposal is to optimize the performance for nominal signals. By setting the maximum gain (**agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain**) such, that nominal signals are remaining just below the peak white target, nominal signals will be linear processed. Too small signals will lead to smaller levels at the RGB outputs, but for most scenes this will be compensated by the beam current limiter. For too large signals, the peak white limiter is enabled to reduce the gain when needed. The minimum gain can be set to accommodate signals up to +3 dB.

Describing the gain stages, for the bits **agc_xxx_divider** a formula is given which can be used to calculate the gain in the Yyuv stage:

gain = pre-amp gain (dec) * ((**div(2)***0.25 + **div(1)***0.125 + **div(0)***0.0625) / 1023)*fixed gain

For the Yyuv /Cyc stage in Yyuv mode, **div(1)** and **div(0)** are programmed and the fixed gain is 1.5625, so the formula becomes:

gain Yyuv / Cyc = pre-amp gain (dec) * ((0.125 + 0.0625) / 1023) * 1.5625

For nominal signal, the gain is (see Figure 10) the black to white pk-pk level at the output divided by the black to white pk-pk level at the input.

Gain = (470 – 32) / (2208 + 2176) = 0.1 -> The pre-amp gain becomes 349.

So the setting of **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain** becomes 349 dec (15D hex).

The setting for **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain** must be 3dB lower, 247 dec (F7 hex). This last value is almost identical to the default value (not the reset value!!!) of **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain** (F5 hex) and needs no change.

The table with all settings for RGB with sync on CVBS is given below:

Table 5: AGC Yyuv / Cyc for RGB Signals with Sync on CVBS

Name	Setting for YPrPb	Reset/Default
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi	15D	0E8/*
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi	0	0
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_holdgain_pi	0	0
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_catch_pi	1	1

Table 5: AGC Yyuv / Cyc for RGB Signals with Sync on CVBS *...Continued*

Name	Setting for YPrPb	Reset/Default
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_inlock_pi	6	6
agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_pw_int_pi	1	1
agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_sync_int_pi	0	1
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi	13B	1FF/13B
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi	100	100/1)
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi	0F5	11F/0F5
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi	15D	332/2BA
Agc_y_cyc_divider	3	4

Programming

The **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_sync_int_pi** has to be switched off and the **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain** has to be programmed to another value.

Remark: Also the setting for **agc_y_cyc_divider** has to be set different from the reset value.

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_sync_int_pi = 0

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain = 15D hex

agc_y_cyc_divider = 3

Remaining registers, to be programmed different from reset value after reset:

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi = 13B (Reset: 1FF)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi = 100 / 118 (When Macrovision present)

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi = 0F5 (Reset: 11F)

Cyc

Processing of Cyc is different from the other discussed signals. The color decoder has its own AGC to adapt the gain of the color carrier, using the burst as reference. So for the Cyc signal, we can set a fixed gain. The gain should be chosen such that for nominal Cyc levels the input at the color decoder is the same as when nominal CVBS signals are fed to the color decoder. Taking into account the whole path from PNX3000 to input of AGC, we need an attenuation from input to output of the AGC block from 0.0625 (1/16). Using the formula for the gain of the Yyuv / Cyc stage we can calculate the required pre-amp gain value:

gain = pre-amp gain (dec) * ((**div(2)***0.25 + **div(1)***0.125 + **div(0)***0.0625) / 1023)*fixed gain

For the Yyuv / Cyc stage in Cyc mode, only **div(2)** must be programmed 1. In Cyc mode, the fixed gain is also 1. The formula becomes:

gain Yyuv / Cyc = pre-amp gain (dec) * 0.25 / 1023.

So: pre-amp gain = 0.0625 * 1023 / 0.25 = 256d

The pre-amp gain has to be set to 256 dec (100 hex).

The table with settings for Cyc becomes:

Table 6: AGC Yyuv / Cyc for Cyc Signals

Name	Setting for YPrPb	Reset/Default
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi	100	0E8/*
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi	1	0
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_holdgain_pi	0	0
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_catch_pi	1	1
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_tau_inlock_pi	6	6
agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_pw_int_pi	1	1
agc_y_cyc_ctrl_enable_sync_int_pi	1	1
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_peak_target_pi	13B	1FF/13B
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi	100	100/1)
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi	0F5	11F/0F5
Agc_y_cyc_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi	2BA	332/2BA
Agc_y_cyc_divider	4	4

By forcing the gain (programming **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi** and forcing fixed gain setting with **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi** all other settings can remain as the default settings for the YPrPb and RGB mode. In fact, they are ‘don't cares’ in this mode.

Programming

Only registers to be set different from default value for YPrPb and RGB:

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_gainvalue_pi = 100 hex

agc_y_cyc_ctrl_forcegain_pi = 1

agc_y_cyc_divider = 4

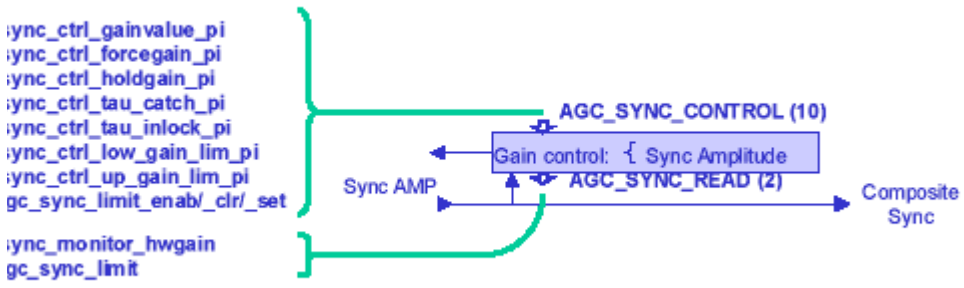


Figure 11: AGC Control Circuit Sync

4.3.3.3 AGC Control Circuit for the Sync Path

The AGC for the sync amplifies the sync portion of the CVBS / Yyc or Yyuv signal to a level, suitable for the sync slicer of the synchronization block. Because the amplitude is less critical (as long as it is large enough, the sync circuit will work ok), the control options are limited.

Table 7: Bit Description - AGC Control Circuit for the Sync Path - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
090	9..0	agc_sync_ctrl_gainvalue_pi	Gain value when forcegain_pi = 1	0E8	R/W
	10	agc_sync_ctrl_forcegain_pi	0 Gain controlled by AGC loop 1 Fixed gain, determined by gainvalue_pi	0	R/W
	11	agc_sync_ctrl_holdgain_pi	0 Normal AGC loop operation 1 Freezes the momentary gain of the loop	0	R/W
	18..16	agc_sync_ctrl_tau_catch_pi	AGC loop time constant when there is no H-lock 000 Fast AGC time constant 111 Slow AGC time constant	1	R/W
	22..20	agc_sync_ctrl_tau_inlock_pi	AGC loop time constant when there is no H-lock 000 Fast AGC time constant 111 Slow AGC time constant	6	R/W
0A0	9..0	agc_sync_ctrl_low_gain_lim_pi	Sets lowest possible gain for the AGC loop	AB	R/W
0A4	9..0	agc_sync_ctrl_up_gain_lim_pi	Sets maximum possible gain for the AGC loop	2DB	R/W
008	9..0	agc_sync_monitor_hwgain	Readout of the momentary gain value of the AGC loop		R
0E0	12	ics_agc_sync_gain_limit	Interrupt flag set to 1 when upper or lower gain limit is exceeded		R

The working of all bits has been explained already in the CVBS / Yyc path, and will not be described again here. The sync AGC loop is always put in automatic mode, there is no need to change the settings for different input signals. The reset values are correct and do not need to be changed.

For understanding and to enable calculation of the top sync target value in the Yyuv / Cyc path, below the levels are given before and after the sync AGC.

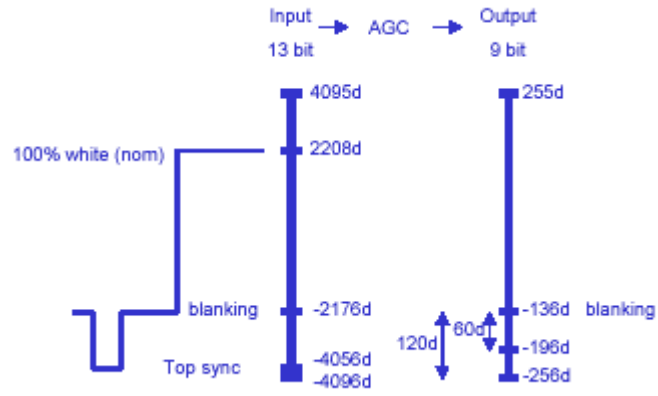


Figure 12: Levels Before and After Sync AGC

For the sync AGC, the part below blanking level of CVBS / Yc or Yyuv is used.

At the input, the blanking level is –2176 dec, at the output the level is –136 dec. (see also Section 4.3.2).

A nominal sync at the input has a pk-pk amplitude of 120d. The sync input has its own gain stage and can handle levels from 60d to 120d. The settings in the AGC block are chosen such, that for each sync input including compressed sync these pk-pk levels are reached.

When in the Yyuv / Cyc AGC stage the value **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** is programmed, the value should be set between –256d (100 hex two's complement) to –196d (13C hex two's complement).to guarantee a pk-pk sync amplitude between 60d and 120d. For calculations, the knowledge that a nominal sync has just a pk-pk amplitude of 120d can be used.

Programming

As indicated, The sync AGC loop is always put in automatic mode, there is no need to change the settings for different input signals. The reset values are correct and need not to be changed.

4.4 Digital Multi Standard Decoder (DMSD)

The CVBS or Yyc signal first enters an adjustable line delay stage. This stage compensates for the line delay when the combfilter is used. Next, the color information is removed from the CVBS signal by subtracting the remodulated color carrier from the U,V demodulation. The Y delay compensates for time differences of the Y signal and the demodulated U and V signals.

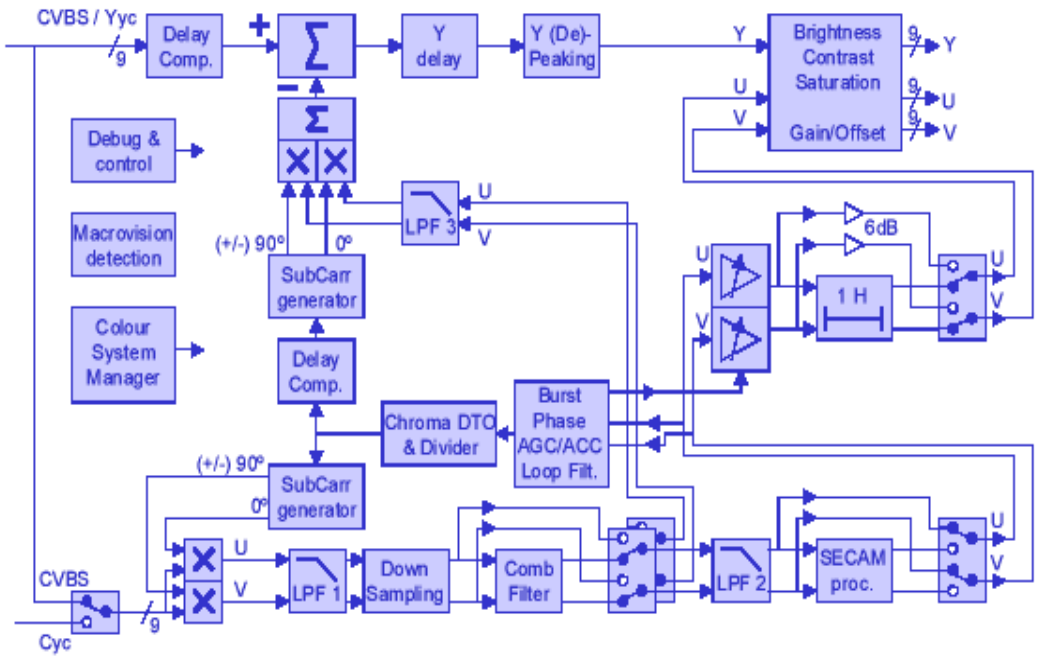


Figure 13: Block Diagram Digital Multi Standard Decoder (DMSD)

The (de)peaking circuit not only controls the (de)peaking of the Y signal but also contains some traps for filtering unwanted residual components from Y. The color decoder input can select either the CVBS signal or the C signal as input. The color carrier is demodulated and the U, V signals are low pass filtered and down sampled to match the U, V needed bandwidth.

For better luminance and chrominance separation a 2D combfilter can be used for PAL (4 lines) and NTSC (2 lines). It can also be bypassed. After the combfilter selection switch the U and V signals split. One branch passes the programmable Low Pass Filter 3. After the filter the U and V signals are remodulated on the regenerated color carrier. This color carrier is then subtracted from the CVBS signal to obtain the luminance information (Y).

The other branch passes another programmable Low Pass Filter. In case of SECAM, the signals pass a SECAM decoder block. The U and V signals split again. One stream goes to the control block, which contains the color phase detector, the loop filter and auxiliary functions like Hue, Automatic Gain control (Color AGC) and Automatic Color Control (ACC). The loop filter output controls the Chroma Discrete Time Oscillator (DTO) which controls two Sub carrier generators, one for demodulation of the incoming color carrier, one (including a delay compensation for exact matching) for the remodulation of U and V to remove the color carrier information from the CVBS.

The other stream passes an adjustable gain amplifier, which is controlled by the AGC and ACC from the above described control block. A delay line section, needed for PAL and SECAM completes the U, V processing. The delay line can be bypassed, in which case 6 dB gain is added to the U,V to match the output levels of the delay line section.

The processed Y, U and V then enter the control stage in which brightness, contrast and saturation can be adjusted. For the PNX2000, these controls have a fixed setting, because these items are controlled in other processing blocks. Further some compensation in gain and offset can be made to compensate for errors in the processing. These need not to be used in PNX2000.

A color system manager block, Macrovision detection block and a Debug and control block complete the DMSD.

4.4.1 Y processing

The CVBS / Yyc signal first passes a line delay compensation (**dmsd_ldel**). This compensates for the two (PAL) or one (NTSC) line delay in U and V when the comb filter is used for chrominance and luminance. An identical delay compensation is used for the Sub carrier generator. The color information is removed from the CVBS by subtracting the remodulated U and V from the decoder from the CVBS. The Y signal at the output passes a delay section, which can be used when the transitions in Y and U / V are not coinciding. The (de)peaking section not only adapts the peaking in the Y channel but also controls a number of traps to remove unwanted residual components.

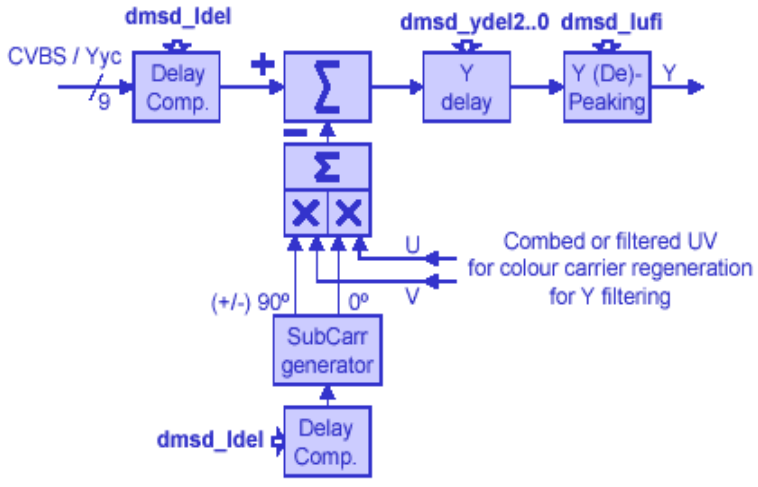


Figure 14: Y Processing

Table 8: Bit Description - Y Processing - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
190	14	dmsd_ldel	Extra number of lines delay after vertical sync in NON-combfilter mode 0 No lines delay (recommended) 1 SECAM: No lines delay, NTSC: 1 line delay, PAL: 2 lines delay	0/[8-1]	R/W
	13..11	dmsd_ydel	Luminance delay with respect to chroma	0	R/W
	10..7	dmsd_lufi	Luminance peaking 0000 Flat (recommended) 0001 Peaking 8.0 dB at 4.1 MHz 0010 Peaking 6.8 dB at 4.1 MHz 0011 Peaking 5.1 dB at 4.1 MHz 0100 Peaking 4.1 dB at 4.1 MHz 0101 Peaking 3.0 dB at 4.1 MHz 0110 Peaking 2.3 dB at 4.1 MHz 0111 Peaking 1.6 dB at 4.1 MHz 1000 LPF -2 dB at 4.1 MHz 1001 LPF -3 dB at 4.1 MHz 1010 LPF -3 dB at 3.3 MHz, -4 dB at 4.1 MHz 1011 LPF -3 dB at 2.6 MHz, -8 dB at 4.1 MHz 1100 LPF -3 dB at 2.4 MHz, -14 dB at 4.1 MHz 1101 LPF -3 dB at 2.2 MHz, notch at 3.4 MHz 1110 LPF -3 dB at 1.9 MHz, notch at 3.0 MHz 1101 LPF -3 dB at 1.7 MHz, notch at 2.5 MHz	0	

[8-1] For value see text

dmsd_ldel

The bit controls the number of lines delay when the combfilter is switched off.

In combfilter mode, the signals of PAL are 2 lines delayed and the signals for NTSC 1 line. To have the same delay when combfilter is switched on or off, for PAL and NTSC this bit should be set to 1. For SECAM it is required that this bit is set to 0.

Remark: For SECAM no comb filtering is possible. So advised setting is:

- Set 1 when PAL or NTSC color system is detected
- Set 0 when SECAM is detected (for SECAM this bit has to be 0, it is not allowed to be 1)

dmsd_ydel

Controls the delay of Y with respect to chroma (U and V). When transitions of luminance (Y) and Chrominance (U and V) are not at the same horizontal position, this register can delay the Y until the transitions fit. Depending on the color system and the combfilter setting, the delay has to be adapted.

dmsd_lufi

Because peaking is done in another block, no peaking should be applied here. However, the peaking is also used to compensate for the Y trap when no combfilter is used. Therefore peaking has to be applied when no combfilter is used. The advised settings are pending on the combfilter setting and the color system:

- 3 when the combfilter is switched off and PAL is detected0 when the combfilter is active (Only possible for PAL and NTSC)
- 6 when the combfilter is switched off and NTSC is detected.
- 11 when SECAM is detected. (No combfilter possible and no Y/C available for SECAM)

Programming

dmsd_ldel needs to be set according to the found colour system:

- 1 when PAL or NTSC is detected
- 0 when SECAM is detected

dmsd_ydel has to be set according to the found colour system or is fixed.

dmsd_lufi has to be set according to the activation of the combfilter and the colour system

- 0 when the combfilter is active (only possible for PAL and NTSC)
- 3 when the combfilter is switched off and PAL is detected
- 6 when the combfilter is switched off and NTSC is detected.
- 11 when SECAM is detected.

4.4.2 Demodulator, Filtering (Combfilter) and SECAM Decoder

A switch selects between the incoming CVBS signal or Cyc signal (**chr_inp_del**). The selected signal is then demodulated. The sub carrier generator for demodulation is controlled by the colour PLL, which will be discussed in another chapter.chr_inp_del

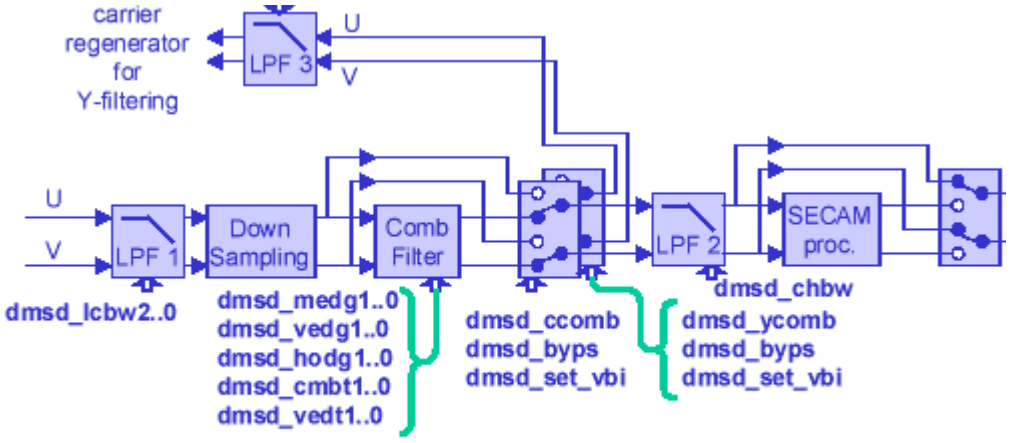


Figure 15: Demodulator and Filtering

4.4.2.1 Demodulator

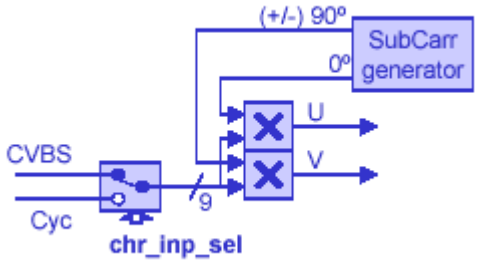


Figure 16: Demodulator

Table 9: Bit Description - Demodulator - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
040	3	chr_inp_del	Selects CVBS or C input for the colour decoder 0 CVBS 1 Cyc	0/x	R/W

Programming

CVBS/YC detection

Detection whether a CVBS signal or Y/C signal is connected, when the CVBS path and Y/C path are shared, can be done in three ways:

1. Use two menu items for the combined CVBS/YC connector, one configured for CVBS and one configured for YC. The customer can decide himself by watching whether the picture has colour or is Black and White which is the right selection.

2. Use a mechanical switch to indicate whether a cable is connected to the CVBS input or Y/C input (only possible when connectors are cinch for CVBS and 4-pin mini-din for Y/C). Software can readout the pin status via an I/O port and configure the correct settings.
3. Automatic detection via software. An algorithm is described in Section 4.4.9.1

Though reliable detection is possible in this way, the time needed to guarantee a reliable detection can run up to 2 seconds after selecting the input.

4.4.2.2 Filtering

The demodulated U and V pass through a programmable Low Pass Filter 1. The selected bandwidth of this filter determines the bandwidth of the U and V signals. A high U,V bandwidth will result after remodulation and subtraction of the chroma from the CVBS signal in a lower Luminance bandwidth. The U,V signals are then down sampled to bring the sampling rate in line with the U,V bandwidth.

The down sampled U and V signals can go through a combfilter section or bypass the combfilter. The 2D combfilter contains a number of registers to control the performance. After the combfilter a switch section selects whether the non- combed or combed U and V signals are used for further processing. Note that for Luma processing and Chroma processing the selection can be made independently. In practice the selection should be synchronised for Chroma and Luma of course.

For Y/C signals it is possible to bypass the filtering completely. The U,V signals after the combfilter selection switch for the Chroma path pass the programmable Low Pass Filter 2. The selected bandwidth determines the final U,V bandwidth for further processing.

The U,V signals after the combfilter selection switch for the Luma path are fed to the programmable Low Pass Filter 3. The selected bandwidth determines the resulting notch width in the Luma path after the remodulation and subtraction of the Colour information from the CVBS.

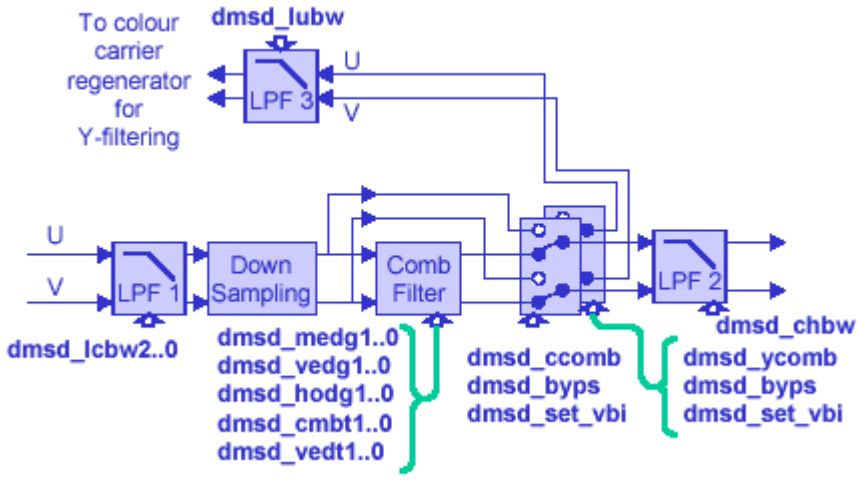


Figure 17: Filters

Table 10: Bit Description - Filters - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
190	2..0	dmsd_lcbw	Luminance bandwidth versus Chroma bandwidth 000 Highest Luma bandw / Lowest Chroma bandw 111 Lowest Luma bandw / Highest Chroma bandw	6/x	R/W
	17..16	dmsd_medg	Comb median filter gain 00 Highest Luma bandwidth at high colour saturation 10 **Recommended setting** 11 Lowest Luma bandwidth at high colour saturation	2/x	R/W
	19..18	dmsd_vedg	Comb vertical difference gain 00 Highest Luma bandwidth at vertical transients 10 **Recommended setting** 11 Lowest Luma bandwidth at vertical transients	2/x	R/W
	21..20	dmsd_hodg	Comb horizontal difference gain 00 Highest Luma bandwidth at horizontal transients 10 **Recommended setting** 11 Lowest Luma bandwidth at horizontal transients	2/x	R/W
	23..22	dmsd_cmbt	Comb amplitude threshold to adjust the comb strength for signals with small chroma content 00 Lowest comb strength (High threshold) 01 **Recommended setting** 11 Highest comb strength (Low threshold)	1/x	R/W
	25..24	dmsd_vedt	Comb vertical difference threshold to adjust the comb strength for signals with large vertical chroma difference 00 Highest strength (High threshold) 01 **Recommended setting** 11 Lowest strength (Low threshold)	1/x	R/W
	6	dmsd_ccomb	Disable / Enable combfilter in Chroma path 0 Disable combfilter in Chroma path 1 Enable combfilter in Chroma path	1/x	R/W
	5	dmsd_ycomb	Disable / Enable combfilter in Luma path 0 Disable combfilter in Luma path 1 Enable combfilter in Luma path	1/x	R/W
	15	dmsd_byps	Bypass chroma trap / YComb 0 Chroma trap / YComb active 1 Chroma trap / YComb bypassed (for Y/C mode)	0/[10-1]	R/W

Table 10: Bit Description - Filters - Address 0X7FF9xxx *...Continued*

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
198	20	dmsd_set_vbi	Bypass Luma and Chroma filtering during Vertical Blanking Interval (VBI). Only intended for test purposes 0 No bypass during VBI (recommended) 1 Bypass during VBI	0	R/W
190	3	dmsd_chbw	Select Chroma bandwidth 0 Small, related to setting of dmsd_lcbw 1 Wide, related to setting of dmsd_lcbw	0/x	R/W
	4	dmsd_lubw	Select Luminance bandwidth 0 Narrow Chroma notch -> Maximum Luma bandw 1 Wide Chroma notch -> Less Luma bandw	0/x	R/W

[10-1] Should be set to 1 for Y/C mode, set to 0 for all other modes.

dmsd_lcbw

Determines the balance between Luma and Chroma bandwidth. A high U, V (Chroma) bandwidth will result in a lower Luma bandwidth after subtraction of the remodulated colour carrier of the CVBS signal. Recommended setting is 6, which is also the reset value.

2D combfilter settings

The reset value of the combfilter settings is equal to the most optimal settings from design point of view. Depending on the customer preference, it is possible to select another balance, improving one parameter at the cost of another. The bits to control the performance are:

dmsd_medg, dmsd_vedg, dmsd_hodg, dmsd_cmbt, dmsd_vedt

Table 10 gives a short description as to which parameter the bits control.

dmsd_ccomb, dmsd_ycomb

Enables the combfilter function in the Chroma and/or Luma path. Though the combfilter function can be selected independently for the Chroma and Luma path, in practice both selections must be synchronised for correct result.

dmsd_byps

Bypasses the combfilter and normal filters in both Chroma and Luma path. Must be set to 1 when an Y/C input signal is selected and no filtering in Chroma or Luma path is needed.

dmsd_set_vbi

Only intended for test purposes. Leave at default value.

dmsd_chbw

Selects the bandwidth in the Chroma path by selecting the bandwidth of Low Pass Filter 2. Leave at default value.

dmsd_lubw

Selects the bandwidth of U and V for filtering in the Luma path by selecting the bandwidth of Low Pass Filter 3. A high bandwidth of U and V means a wide trap in the Luma path after remodulation of U and V and subtraction from CVBS and vice versa. Leave at default value.

Programming

In principle, only the registers **dmsd_ccomb**, **dmsd_ycomb** and **dmsd_byps** have to be set according to the selection for combfilter on/off and Y/C signal processing.

The value for **dmsd_lcbw**, **dmsd_chbw** and **dmsd_lubw** are OK and can be left at their default value which equals the reset value. No changes for these register settings are expected.

The design and the register settings for the 2D combfilter are new. Though from design the most optimal values are selected for the reset values, it is possible that in practice or due to different taste from the customer other values are needed. We do not expect these values to be dynamic.

4.4.2.3 SECAM decoder

The SECAM decoder only has a few control settings (**dmsd_sthr** and **dmsd_fctc**), which are discussed in the Color PLL section below. When SECAM is detected, the combfilter is automatically switched off

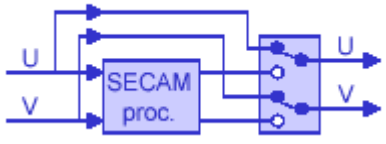


Figure 18: SECAM Detector

4.4.3 Color PLL and Delay Line

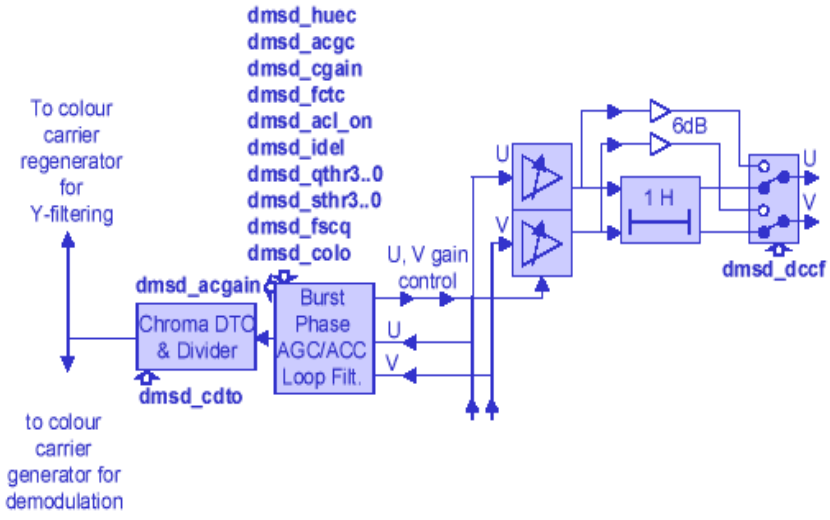


Figure 19: Color PLL and Delay Line

4.4.3.1 Color PLL

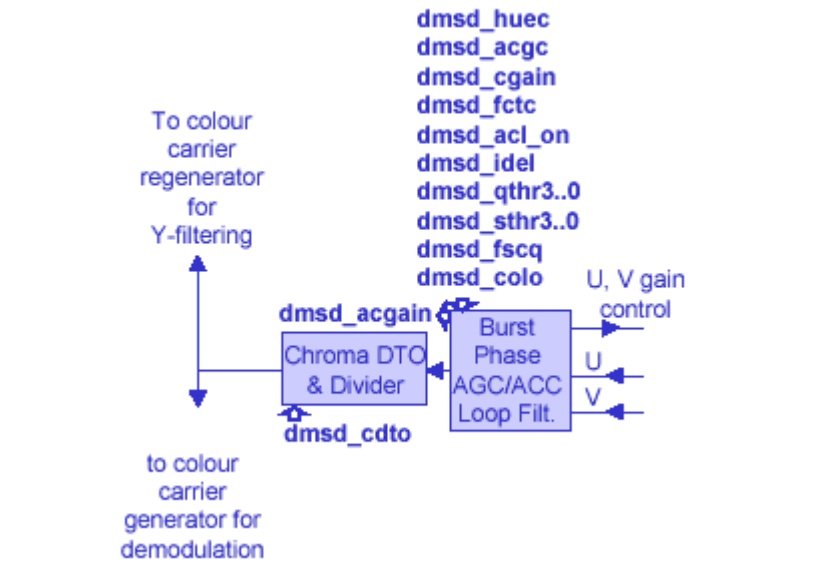


Figure 20: Color PLL

The filtered U and V signals enter the phase detector of the Color PLL. In this block, the following functions are implemented:

- Adjustable demodulation phase to be used as HUE for NTSC (**dmsd_huec**)
- AGC which adapts the gain for the incoming color carrier to bring the burst amplitude to nominal level. Compensates for overall amplitude variation at the Color Carrier frequency. For test purposes the AGC can be switched off (**dmsd_acgc**), in which case the gain is set by **dmsd_cgain**. The momentary value of the amplifier in the AGC path can be read from register **dmsd_acgain**. This works regardless the AGC is enabled or not.
- Selectable fast color PLL time constant for special signal conditions (**dmsd_fctc**).
- ACL, Automatic Color Limiting. Prevents over saturation when the ratio between chroma and burst is disturbed and due to a too small burst the saturation would increase too much. Can be switched on or off using **dmds_acl_on**.
- Horizontal Incremental delay setting to match the phase detector output signal with the timing of the incoming CVBS / C samples. Is controlled by **dmsd_idel**. Value is determined by design and fixed.
- Color killing. The killer levels can be adapted for special signal conditions using **dmsd_qthr** for PAL and NTSC and **dmsd_sthr** for SECAM. Note that changing these registers from the reset value (= default value) increases the chance of misidentification.
- Selectable fast PAL/SECAM flip flop phase correction (**dmsd_fscq**).
- Option to switch off the color killer. (**dmsd_colo**).

The output of the phase detector is fed into a Discrete Time Oscillator (DTO) which controls the color sub carrier generators, one for demodulation of the incoming color signals (from CVBS or C), one for remodulation of the demodulated U, V signals for subtraction of CVBS to obtain the Y (Luma) signal. To ensure the correct phase of the DTO, the bit **dmsd_cdto** has to be toggled (from 0 ->1 and back from 1 > 0) each time after regaining horizontal sync lock after loss of sync and when another setting is selected for **dmsd_auto**, **dmsd_auto_short** or **dmsd_cstd**. This ensures a reset of the DTO and correct behaviour.

Table 11: DMSD_COL_DEC Control/Status - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
18C	0	dmsd_cdto	Clear Chrominance DTO (for remodulation and ‘cleaning’ luma from chroma components) 0 disabled, normal operation mode in automatic mode 1 clear DTO when automatic off and color standard changed	0	R/W
	8..1	dmsd_huec	Hue control (NTSC only) Range 0...+359 degrees (linear)	0	R/W
	9	dmsd_dccf	0 enabled, normal operation 1 disable PAL delay line control	0	R/W
	10	dmsd_acgc	Chroma AGC 0 enabled, recommended 1 disabled, see dmsd_acgain	0	R/W

Table 11: DMSD_COL_DEC Control/Status - Address 0X7FF9xxx *...Continued*

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
	17.. 11	dmsd_cgain	Chroma Gain Value range 0.5...7.5 Not required if dmsd_acgc=0	0	R/W
	18	dmsd_fctc	Fast Chroma PLL Time Constant 0 normal mode, recommended 1 fast phase error correction (lower damping factor)	0	R/W
	19	dmsd_acl_on	Automatic Color Limiter 0 no limiting 1 limiting enabled, recommended to prevent over-saturation	1	R/W
	23..20	dmsd_idel	Horizontal Incremental Delay 0111 Value determined by design	0111	R/W

dmsd_heuc

Controls the HUE for NTSC. The range is 0 degrees (0x0) to 359 degrees (0xFF). The range is too large for practical use. We propose to use the range:

Table 12: Range - dmsd_heuc

Range (Hex)	Range (Dec)	Range (degrees)
0E-FF	224-255	-44 to -1
00-1F	00-31	0 to 44

Remark: Note that the HUE control also works for PAL. This means the HUE control should be set to 0 when a PAL color system is detected. At the same time, the HUE setting for NTSC should be remembered in case later a NTSC color system is (re)selected.

dmsd_acgc

Disables the Chroma AGC. The chroma AGC should always be left on. This is also the reset value.

dmsd_cgain

Not used in PNX2000. Leave at reset value.

dmsd_fctc

The reset value, which selects the normal time constant for the color PLL, is correct. The fast filter time constant could be a solution for special signal conditions (e.g. VCR trick modes), but should never be selected as alternative setting for normal use.

dmsd_acl_on

The Automatic Color Limiting prevents over saturation (too large amplitude of U and V signals) when the burst is too small in relation to the color carrier during the active video.

It is recommended that the ACL is always left on (which is also the reset value), it also prevents clipping of U and V signals under these conditions.

dmsd_idel

Adjusts the phase of the phase detector output (and the color carrier generator) with respect to the incoming CVBS / C samples. Value determined by design and fixed. Fixed value is equal to the reset value.

dmsd_qthr, dmsd_sthr

These bits control the threshold level of the color killer for PAL/NTSC (**dmsd_qthr**) and SECAM (**dmsd_sthr**). Several tests have lead to an optimal value which balances color sensitivity and reliable system recognition. This value (9) is also the register value after reset. For special signal conditions, it is possible to change the threshold value. Be very careful doing this, because it has a negative influence on the overall detection performance.

Lowering the threshold value of one of the color killers increases the chance to get under very weak signal conditions a colored picture from the color systems, belonging to that threshold. However, the possibility for wrong color system detection increases. At the same time the sensitivity of the color system with the unchanged killer level decreases. This leads to an unbalance in system recognition performance. Lowering both thresholds increases the chance of misidentification. Increasing both threshold levels just decreases the color sensitivity

dmsd_fscq

Determines the speed of correction of the PAL / SECAM Flip-Flop when a wrong phase is detected. It is recommend to correct the Flip_Flop once per field, which setting (1) is also the register content after reset. A fast correction can be useful for VCR trick modes, where at Fast Forward or Fast Reverse after each noise bar part of another field is displayed with different PAL / SECAM phase. To react on this trick mode is possible in TV/VCR combi's, where you know the mode it the VCR is in, but is it is hardly possible to detect this in a reliable way from a connected VCR.

dmsd_colo

Disables the color killers. For test purposes.

dmsd_cdto

This bit resets the Color DTO and ensures the correct phase relations between all signals. It is advisable to use **dmsd_cdto** as follows (see also Section 4.4.4).

First, the sequence for a Multi-System set is given:

- After start-up, put the set in automatic mode (**dmsd_auto** = 2, is reset value)
- Select at preference the short auto loop (**dmsd_auto_short**)
- Select the preferred system to start the search (**dmsd_cstd**)
- Toggle **dmsd_cdto** from 0 -> 1 and back from 1-> 0.

Each time after regaining horizontal sync lock after sync loss and after changing the setting of **dmsd_auto dmsd_auto_short** and/or the color standard selection (**dmsd_cstd**), **dmsd** should be set to 1 and back to 0. When a color system has to be forced the procedure is:

- Put the automatic mode off (**dmsd_auto** = 0)
- Force the required color system using **dmsd_cstd**
- Set **dmsd_cdto** to 1 and back to 0.

Also in this condition, each time after regaining horizontal sync lock after sync loss, **dmsd_cdto** had to be set to 1 and back to 0. When going back to automatic mode, the first sequence can be used again. When a set is built for markets with one color system only, the procedure to force a color system should be used.

dmsd_acgain

Returns the value of the momentary gain of the color AGC amplifier. This can be used for an automatic software Y/C detection (see Section 4.4.9.1) The **dmsd_acgain** register only returns a valid value when the color system is PAL or NTSC **and** the color system manager has recognized the system. For SECAM the value always reads maximum (8F hex or 143 dec) Also when no color carrier is present, the value reeds maximum. Because first the color system has to be detected, a reliable CVBS/YC detection algorithm may take up to 2 seconds.

Programming

dmsd_huec should be limited in range and set to 0 for other systems than NTSC.

dmsd_cdto has to be set to 1 and back to 0 after regaining horizontal sync lock after sync loss and after each change of registers **dmsd_auto**, **dmsd-auto_short** and **dmsd_cstd**

dmsd_acgain can be used in an algorithm for automatic CVBS/YC detection.

The bits **dmsd_fctc**, **dmsd_qthr**, **dmsd_sthr** and **dmsd_fscq** could be needed under bad signal conditions.

The bits **dmsd_acgc**, **dmsd_cgain**, **dmsd_idel** and **dmsd_colo** can be left at their reset value.

Delay Line

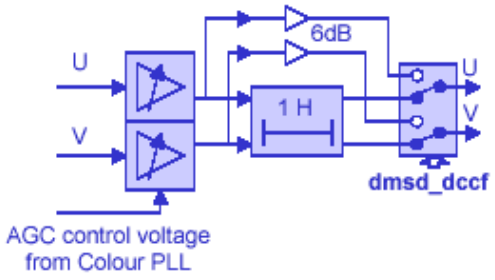


Figure 21: Delay Line

The amplitude of U and V is controlled by the Color AGC and ACL circuits

The delay line is used for PAL and SECAM color systems.

For NTSC, the delay line can be bypassed. The 6 dB amplification in the U,V path due to the addition at the output of the delay line, is compensated in the bypass path.

Table 13: Bit Description - Delay Line - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
	9	dmsd_dccf	Disable PAL delay line. Is controlled automatically in auto modes. 0 Enable PAL delay line 1 Disable PAL delay line	0/x	R/W

dmsd_dccf

When the 2D combfilter is enabled, the delay line should be switched off for NTSC.

Programming

As stated, the combfilter must be enabled for PAL and NTSC color systems. For SECAM it has to be switched off when the 2D combfilter is enabled. To leave the Delay Line for NTSC as simple combfilter when the 2D combfilter is off or not present, is a matter of set maker's taste. In Auto Search mode (see **Color System Manager**) it is possible to select settings where the switching of the Delay Line is done automatically according to the found color system.

4.4.4 Color System Manager

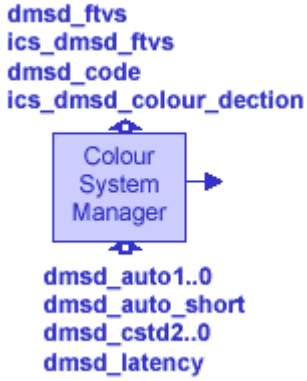


Figure 22: Color System Manager

The Color System Manager offers various possibilities to control the color search:

- **Full search**: Searches for all possible systems including Latin America systems like PAL M and PAL N. It is possible to define the preferred color system to start the search.

- **Short search**: Only searches for the most common systems (PAL 4.43, SECAM, NTSC 3.58 and NTSC 4.43). Shortens the color system recognition time. Also in this loop it is possible to define the preferred color system to start search.
- **Forced mode**: Possibility to force one color system only, suitable for market area's like USA and Philippines (NTSC 3.58)

In the automatic search mode, it is possible to define different levels of automatic setting of the filters, combfilter and traps optimized for the found color system. It is also possible to set the search time per color system. A bit indicates when a Color System is found, this can also be signalled via an interrupt. It is also possible to read the found color system (PAL, SECAM or NTSC)

In view of the amount of information, the bit description is split in two parts:

- Control bits, which control the Color System Manager
- Status bits, which can be read

Table 14: Bit Description, Color System Manager - Control Bits - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
188	1..0	dmsd_auto	Automatic TV system detection mode 00 Level 0, disabled 01 Level 3, Active, all filters adapting automatically 10 Level 2, Active, some filters adapting automatically 11 Level 1, Active, all filters to be set by software See separate table for automatic filter settings	2/x	R/W
	2	dmsd_auto_short	Selects between all color system search loop and a limited color system search loop (for faster detection) 0 All color system search loop (LATAM) 1 Limited color system search loop (Europe, ROW) for faster detection. Only searches: PAL 4.43, SECAM, NTSC M, NTSC 4.43	0/x	R/W
	5..3	dmsd_cstd	Color standard selection. When dmsd_auto = 0, forces the color system according to the following table: **Fv = 50 Hz** / **Fv = 60 Hz** 000 PAL 4.43 / NTSC M[14-1] 001 NTSC 4.43 / PAL 4.43 010 PAL N / NTSC 4.43 011 --- / PAL M 100 PAL 4.43 / NTSC J[14-1] 101 SECAM / --- Other --- / --- Note that the forced standard depends on the vertical frequency, either automatic detected, either forced When auto detection is enabled (dmsd_auto 01,10,11) then selects the first color system to start the search, in 50 Hz also the 2nd system to search for is selected Fv = 50 Hz / Fv = 60 Hz 1st / 2nd 000 PAL 4.43 / SECAM NTSC M[14-1] 100 PAL 4.43 / SECAM NTSC J[14-1] 101 SECAM PAL / 4.43 NTSC M[14-1] Other PAL 4.43 / SECAM NTSC M[14-1]	0/x	R/W
	8..6	dmsd_latency	Number of fields before stepping to the next color standard in auto mode	11	

[14-1] NTSC M mode removes the pedestal of 7 ire from the Y signal, while NTSC J mode leaves the pedestal unchanged.

Before discussing the bits in more detail, a note about NTSC M and NTSC J. Both systems refer to NTSC with a color carrier frequency of 3.58 MHz. The difference between these two color decoder modes is the processing of the pedestal. The NTSC 3.58 standard has a pedestal of 7 ire. When for the color decoding NTSC J is selected, the pedestal will not be removed from the Y signal. When NTSC M is selected, the pedestal will be removed from the Y signal. The presence or removal from the pedestal has influence on the behavior of Black Stretch. When the pedestal is removed, the Black Stretch will not react on the signal (or when black stretch is made over aggressive to have also an effect on PAL, be equal to PAL signals).

When the pedestal is present, black stretch will pull the 7 ire level to black according a non-linear transfer curve. Depending on the taste, NTSC J or NTSC M can be selected for NTSC only countries. For multi-system applications, NTSC M is probably the best choice, because then features like black stretch can be made equal for all color systems.

dmsd_auto, dmsd_cstd

Two operating modes are distinguished:

1. Disabled, force the color system (dmsd_auto = 0 0)

When disabled, the color system has to be forced using **dmsd_cstd**. The systems, which can be selected are given in the bit table. Because the forced system is also depending on the vertical frequency (50 or 60 Hz), also this setting has to be forced. This is possible in the Vertical Synchronization part. The procedure to force the field frequency is:

- Set **dmsd_aufd** = 0 (non-automatic field detection, 1 = automatic field detection)
- Select the vertical frequency using **dmsd_fsel** (0 = 50 Hz, 1 = 60 Hz).

See for details **Vertical Sync Processing 1 Fh**.

In forced mode, all settings of delay line and filters (**dmsd_dccf**, **dmsd_chbw**, **dmsd_lcbw**, **dmsd_lubw** and **dmsd_lufi**) need to be set by the software. The setting of the combfilter (**dmsd_ycomb**, **dmsd_ccomb**) and bypass mode (**dmsd_byps** for Y/C mode) have to be taken into account for the correct filter settings.

The table for **dmsd_auto** mode "3" can serve as input for the settings to be selected. After forcing the system, it is needed to set **dmsd_cdto** to 1 and back to 0. This guarantees the correct phase relationship between all samples.

Note that **dmsd_cdto** has to be toggled whenever **dmsd_auto**, **dmsd_auto_short**, or **dmsd_cstd** is changed (see also **2.3.3 Color PLL and Delay Line**).

2. Automatic (dmsd_auto = 0 1, 1 0 or 1 1)

When automatic Color System search is enabled (don't forget to toggle **dmsd_cdto** after selecting this mode) several modes can be selected. It is possible to control all settings of the delay line and filters by software, but to ease programming, a number of settings or even all settings can be done automatically, based upon the found color system and the user selection of the comb filter (**dmsd_ycomb**, **dmsd_ccomb**) and bypass mode (**dmsd_byps** for Y/C mode) The table below indicates which settings are controlled automatically and what value is set, depending on the selected automation level.

The settings, used in auto mode level 1 to 3

Table 15: Auto Mode - Settings

Standard		User Selection			Settings Controlled Automatically						
				Level1	Level 2+3				Level 3		
	Signal Path	byps	ycomb	ccomb	dccf	lcbw	lubw	ycomb	ccomb	lufi	chbw
PAL	Comb	0	1	1	0	110	0	UsSel[15-2]	UsSel[15-2]	0000	0
PAL	Notch	0	0	0	0	000		UsSel[15-2]	UsSel[15-2]	0110	0
PAL	Flat (for YC)	1	[15-1]	0	0	110	0	0	0	0000	1
NTSC	Comb	0	1	1	1	110	0	UsSel[15-2]	UsSel[15-2]	0000	0
NTSC	Notch	0	0	0	0	000	0	UsSel[15-2]	UsSel[15-2]	0110	0
NTSC	Flat (for YC)	1	[15-1]	0	1	110	0	0	0	0000	1
SECAM	Notch	0	[15-1]	[15-1]	0	000	1	0	[15-1]	1011	0
SECAM	Flat (for YC)	1	[15-1]	[15-1]	0	000	[15-1]	0	[15-1]	0000	0
Bk/White	-	1	[15-1]	[15-1]	ycomb=0	[15-1]	[15-1]	[15-1]	0	[15-1]	0000	[15-1]

[15-1] value has no influence

[15-2] UsSel - User Selection. Chosen in ycomb and ccomb, under User Selection is taken over.

Level 1 (dmsd_auto = 1 1)

Automatic Color system detection, all filters / delay line have to be programmed. One exception: when no color system is found (Black & White), ycomb is forced to 0.

Level 2 (dmsd_auto = 1 0)

Automatic Color system detection, some filters and delay line are programmed according the table. **dmsd_ccomb**, **dmsd_lufi** and **dmsd_chbw** still have to be programmed.

Level 3 (dmsd_auto = 0 1)

Search loop in Automatic Mode Automatic Colour system detection, all filters adapt automatically We advise to set in automatic mode **dmsd_auto** = 2. The automatic filter setting of **dmsd_lufi** and **dmsd_chbw** are not optimal, we advise to control these settings by software.

In automatic mode, **dmsd_cstd** determines the first (and in 50 Hz also the second) colour system that will be searched for. In the table below, the search order is given. Note that for a successful search, first the correct field frequency has to be detected (**dmsd_fidt**, 0 = 50 Hz, 1 = 60 Hz, see also **Vertical Sync Processing 1 Fh**)

Once programmed, the value of **dmsd_cstd** is valid for both 50 and 60 Hz.

Table 16: Full Search Loop

Order	50Hz (fidt=0)			60Hz (fidt=1)		
	cstd=000	cstd=100	cstd=101	cstd=000	cstd=100	cstd=101
1	PAL 4.43	PAL 4.43	SECAM	NTSC M	NTSC J	NTSC M
2	SECAM	SECAM	PAL 4.43		NTSC 4.43	
3		PAL N			PAL M	
4		NTSC 4.43			PAL 4.43	

dmsd_auto_short

The search loop can be shortened when the Latin America colour systems like PAL M and PAL N are not needed.

When **dmsd_auto_short** = 0, the full loop in the table above is executed.

When **dmsd_auto_short** = 1, the loop is shortened to the first two systems, see Table 17.

Table 17: Short Search Loop

Order	50Hz (fidt=0)			60Hz (fidt=1)		
	cstd=000	cstd=100	cstd=101	cstd=000	cstd=100	cstd=101
1	PAL 4.43	PAL 4.43	SECAM	NTSC M	NTSC J	NTSC M
2	SECAM	SECAM	PAL 4.43		NTSC 4.43	

As can be seen, the settings of **dmsd_cstd** determine in the same way the search order preference as in the full search loop.

dmsd_latency

Determines the number of fields before the Colour System manager steps to the next colour system in the loop. The standard setting is 3 (fields/colour system).

Timing before a colour system is recognised

The following items determine the time, before the colour system is found.

1. The locking of the incoming samples to the new line phase and frequency
2. The recognition of the field frequency (50 or 60 Hz) When after channel change or input change the field frequency is identical to the previous signal, the settle time is short (< 100 msec, depending on the phase difference of the vertical retrace).
3. The search loop itself, which takes 60 msec / Colour system (50 Hz, **dmsd_latency** = 3)

The most dominant one is the 50 / 60 Hz detection. The switch-over from 50 to 60 Hz or vice versa can take up to 600 msec. Due to all these variables, the time before a colour system is recognised varies quite a lot. Worst case (switching from 50 to 60

Hz source or vice versa) and changing colour standard the recognition time may run up to 800 msec. Best case (no change in vertical frequency, same colour system as previous source) the time can be as short as 30 msec.

Table 18: Bit Description - Status Bits - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
004	4	dmsd_code	Color detected 0 No color detected 1 Color system detected according dmsd_ftvs		R
FE0		ics_dmsd_code	Interrupt flag set to 1 when the status of the color detection bit dmsd_code changes See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
004	7..6	dmsd_ftvs	Found TV System, indicates the detected color standard 00 Black & White (no color system detected) 01 NTSC 10 PAL 11 SECAM		R
FE0	6	ics_dmsd_ftvs	Interrupt flag set to 1 when value of dmsd_ftvs is changed See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R

dmsd_code

Indicates whether a color system is found. Can be used as a first indication to check whether the automatic search loop has recognized a color system or when a single color system is forced whether the forced system is found. A status change of this bit can also trigger an interrupt.

dmsd_ftvs

Indicates which color system is found. Note that "Black and White" and no color system found yet give the same reading. The three color systems, which can be indicated are PAL, SECAM and NTSC. Note that no information is available about the color carrier frequency. If needed, the color carrier frequency can be derived from the FM mono sound carrier, which frequency can be determined by the sound core. This of course only works for off-air signals. It is possible to generate an interrupt when the value of **dmsd_ftvs** changes.

Warning: Latency of the read-out bits

After changing channel or signal source, it can take up to 50 msec. before the bits **dmsd_code** and **dmsd_ftvs** change status. So if one immediately after channel or input change reads out the status bits, one might conclude a color system is found while the bits indicate the status from the previous signal. We have observed when switching from PAL to PAL, the bits do not even change status! When switching to another color system, it takes 30 to 50 msec. max before the bits indicate color loss and the new color search starts. Take this behavior into account when designing the source switching and channel changing algorithms.

Programming

A short summary how to use the bits.

Forcing a color system:

- Set **dmsd_auto** to 0
- Select the wanted color system using **dmsd_cstd**
- Select the wanted settings for filter bypass and combfilter **dmsd_byps**, **dmsd_ycomb**, **dmsd_ccomb**
- Program all filters according the forced color system and selected bypass and combfilter settings. **dmsd_dccf**, **dmsd_chbw**, **dmsd_lcbw**, **dmsd_lubw** and **dmsd_lufi**
- Program **dmsd_ldel** according the forced system (See **2.3.1 Y processing**)
- Set **dmsd_cdto** to 1 and back to 0.
- Select also the correct field frequency setting **dmsd_aufd** = 0 and selecting the frequency using **dmsd_fsel**.
- After channel change or source switching, read **dmsd_code** and/or **dmsd_ftvs** to check whether the system is found. **Take the latency into account**

Automatic Color search:

- Set **dmsd_auto** to 1, 2 or 3, depending on the required level of automation
- Select whether the full loop or short loop is required, setting **dmsd_auto_ short**.
- Select the preferred search order using **dmsd_cstd**
- Set **dmsd_cdto** to 1 and back to 0
- Take care that also the field frequency selection is set to automatic (**dmsd_aufd** = 1)
- After channel change or source switching, read **dmsd_code** and **dmsd_ftvs** to check which color system is found. **Take the latency into account**
- Depending on the found system and the signal source program the filter bypass and combfilter **dmsd_byps**, **dmsd_ycomb**, **dmsd_ccomb**
- Program **dmsd_ldel** according to the found color system
- Depending on the level of automation, program the non-automatic programmed filters and the delay line bypass **dmsd_dccf**, **dmsd_chbw**, **dmsd_lcbw**, **dmsd_lubw** and **dmsd_lufi**

4.4.5 Signal controls, Macrovision and Debug

4.4.5.1 Signal Controls

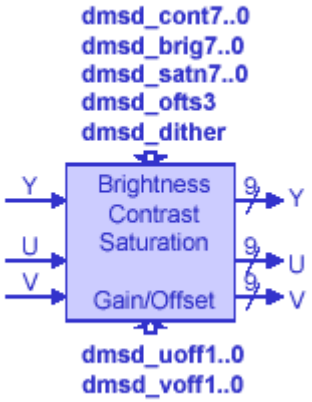


Figure 23: Color Decoder Output Control

The processed Y and demodulated U and V pass the control block before being sent to the fast YUV switch. The control block contains the video controls contrast, brightness and saturation. Because these items are controlled at another place in system (see PNX8550) these controls are set to a fixed level. A noise shaping function minimizes quantization at the output. A dither function enables to go from 10 bits to 9 bits at the output, while maintaining the 9 bits resolution for low frequency signals like ramps. This function is not used in PNX2000. Finally, a small offset alignment is possible for the U and V signals to correct small design errors.

Table 19: Bit Description - Signal Control - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
194	11..4	ddmsd_cont	Brightness control, not used in PNX2000. Set to 44 hex.	44	R/W
	19..12	dmsd_brig	Contrast control, not used in PNX2000, set to 80 hex	80	R/W
	27..20	dmsd_satn	Saturation control, not used in PNX2000, set to 40 hex	40	R/W
	28	dmsd_ofts3	Selects output formatter mode and noise shaper mode 0 Linear mode, no noise shaping 1 Noise shaping activated (recommended)	1	R/W
	29	dmsd_dither	Dithers 10 bit output to 9 bits. Not used in PNX2000 0 No dithering (Recommended value) 1 Dithering enabled	0	R/W
	1..0	dmsd_uoff	U offset to correct for rounding errors 00 No offset 01 + 1 LSB 10 + 2 LSB 11 + 3 LSB	0	R/W
	3..2	dmsd_voff	V offset to correct for rounding errors 00 No offset 01 + 1 LSB 10 + 2 LSB 11 + 3 LSB	0	R/W

dmsd_cont, dmsd_brig

Contrast and Brightness are controlled outside of the PNX2000.

Remark: If it is necessary (depending on success of removing PNX3000 peaking around 4.5 MHz) to set in the AGC block **agc_cvbs_yyc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi** to 1 to ensure sufficient headroom, the amplitude decrease should be compensated by contrast and brightness setting of the VIDDEC. The behavior of contrast (increasing both black and white centred around the middle) should be explained here. Drawing is ready.

dmsd_satn

Saturation is controlled outside of the PNX2000.

dmsd_ofts3

These bits enables dithering form internally used 11 bits to 10 bits at the decoder output. Set to 1 to minimize quantization and noise.

dmsd_dither

Dithers from 10 bits to 9 bits. This function is not used.

dmsd_uoff, dmsd_voff

Intended to correct for rounding errors in the processing. Not needed in PNX2000.

4.4.5.2 Macrovision

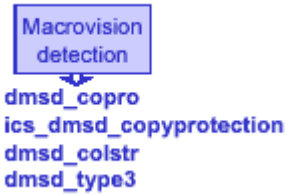


Figure 24: Macrovision Detection

The 1 Fh macrovision block can detect the macrovision in sync/white level during vertical retrace and two color stripe methods, which are defined for NTSC with DVD.

Table 20: Bit Description - Macrovision Detection - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
004	5	dmsd_copro	Detects whether the input signal is Macrovision encoded 0 No macrovision 1 Macrovision detected		R
FE0	5	ics_dmsd_copro	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_copro changes See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
000	8	dmsd_colstr	Detects Macrovision Color Stripe encoding 0 No Color Stripe 1 Color Stripe encoding detected		R
000	9	dmsd_type3	Detects Macrovision Color Stripe type 3 encoding 0 No Color Stripe type 3 1 Color Stripe type 3 encoding detected		R

dmsd_copro

Detects the macrovision during vertical retrace in sync (reduced sync amplitude and false sync pulses). Because the sync amplitude changes, the AGC settings have to be adapted when macrovision in sync is detected:

For CVBS / Yyc:

Normal — **agc_cvbs_yyc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi** = 0

Copro = 1 — **agc_cvbs_yyc_ctrl_copy_prot_pi** = 1

For YUV:

Normal — **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** = 100 hex

Copro = 1 — **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** = 118 hex

Also, see Section 4.3.3

It is possible to generate an interrupt when **dmsd_copro** changes.

dmsd_colstr, dmsd_type3

At this moment, we do not foresee any action related to the recognition of these macrovision standards for NTSC on DVD.

4.4.5.3 Debug & Control

Figure 25: Debug & Control

Most bits are intended for debugging the design. and possibilities are offered to invert the phase of some control signals.

Table 21: Bit Description - Debug and Control - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
198	1..0	dmsd_xsel	Selects clock (X-tal) frequency 00 24.576 MHz 01 32.11 MHz 10 27.00 MHz Used for PNX2000	2	R/W
	2	dmsd_cm99	Selects compatibility with 7199 decoder 0 Normal mode, recommended for PNX2000 1 Compatibility with 7199 decoder	0	R/W
	3	dmsd_set_raw	Raw data mode for debug 0 Normal mode 1 Bypass mode, bypasses Luma filtering, Comb, Brightness, Contrast, Chroma vertical filtering	0	R/W
	11..4	dmsd_rawg	Sets Luma gain for Raw Data mode	0	R/W
	19..12	dmsd_rawo	Sets Luma offset for Raw Data mode	0	R/W
040	4	uv_valid_inv	Inverts U and V signals 0 Normal mode 1 U and V swapped	0	R/W
	5	ffield_inv	Inverts polarity of the First Field info signal for the ITU656 0 Normal mode 1 Inverted (swapping first and second field) for debug	0	R/W
	6	even_inv	Inverts polarity of the even_ccir_l signal for the Data Capture Unit (DCU) 0 Normal mode 1 Inverted (swapping first and second field) for debug	0	R/W

uv_valid_inv

U and V are multiplexed in one data stream. When the phase of the U, V multiplexing /demultiplexing clock is reversed, the U and V data are swapped. With this bit it is possible to correct a wrong inversion in the chain.

ffield_inv

Inverts the readout of the odd- and even field going to the ITU656. Can correct an internal wrong inversion in the processing.

even_inv

Same as bit above, but then for the signal, going to the DCU and ITU656.

4.4.6 Sync Processing

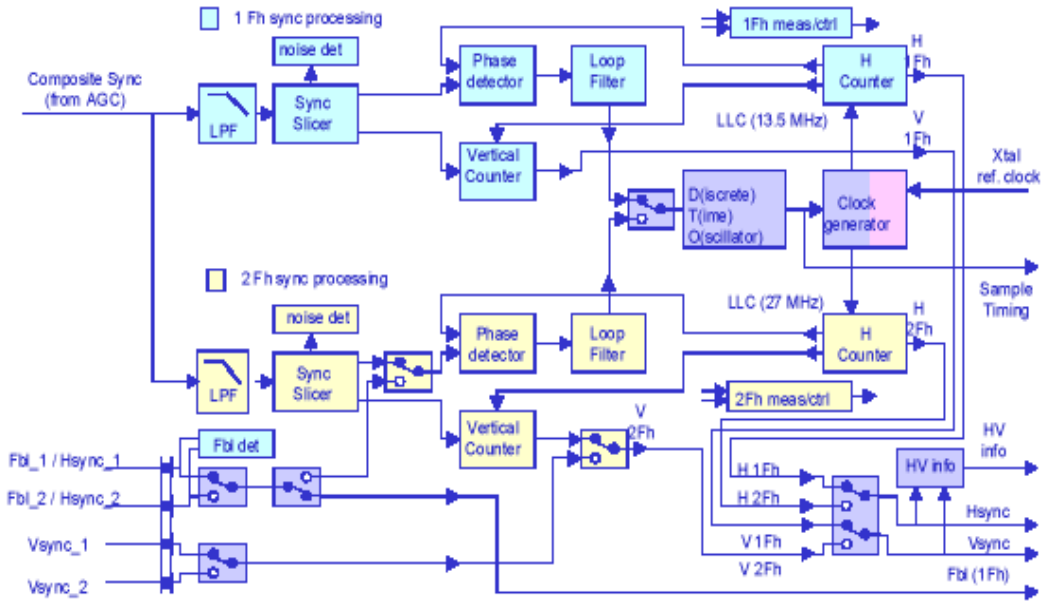


Figure 26: Sync Processing

The Sync processing block contains 4 building blocks:

- 1 Fh horizontal and vertical sync processing
- 2 Fh horizontal and vertical sync processing
- A Discrete Time oscillator (DTO) and clock generator, shared for 1Fh and 2Fh
- Fast blanking, external 2Fh sync and timing info output

The 1 Fh sync block contains for horizontal sync processing the PHI-1 loop phase detector and loop filter. It is possible to read out whether the loop is locked and to set the time constant of the lop filter. A noise readout enables to adapt the loop filter time constant for noisy conditions. The position and width of the horizontal output pulses can also be programmed.

The 1 Fh vertical sync processing uses a counter to generate the internal vertical sync. The counter can be forced to direct sync (for fast catching) or programmed for noise rejection (for normal use with off-air signals). The field frequency can be determined automatically or forced to 50 or 60 Hz. It is possible to force an odd / even field sequence at the odd / even field output, independent of the properties of the incoming signal.

The 1Fh measurement block provides information over the phase deviation from incoming line to incoming line (can be used for VCR detection). It also indicates whether the field length has a standard number of lines (525 / 625). This can be used to detect trick mode in VCR's. The 2 Fh sync block contains almost the same functionality as the 1 Fh sync block. Some provisions for non-practical situations in 2 Fh like noisy signals are omitted. The 2 Fh block can handle also ATSC signals, including tri-level sync on Y. It is also possible to use an external H and V sync in 2 Fh mode.

The DTO is used as oscillator for both 1 Fh and 2 Fh sync processing. It will be clear from this set-up that only one loop (1 Fh or 2 Fh) can be active at the same time. For 2 Fh, a number of clock frequencies for the VIDDEC have to be doubled. This is done outside the VIDDEC and controlled by programming some General Purpose I/O registers (GPIO) in the GTU. Depending on the selected clock frequency the 1 Fh loop or the 2 Fh loop is active.

There are two inputs, which serve as Fast Blanking inputs for RGB insertion in 1 Fh or as Horizontal Sync input in 2 Fh. Also two inputs for external vertical sync in 2 Fh mode are provided. H and V sync pulses are made available for the ITU656 block and the Data Capture Unit (DCU) which extracts TXT, Closed Caption, WSS and other data services from the incoming CVBS Finally, timing info is provided to the PNX3000 (HV_info) to enable correct black clamping of the locked incoming signal (CVBS, Y/C, YPrPb or RGB).

4.4.6.1 Horizontal Sync Processing 1 Fh and Measurement/Control

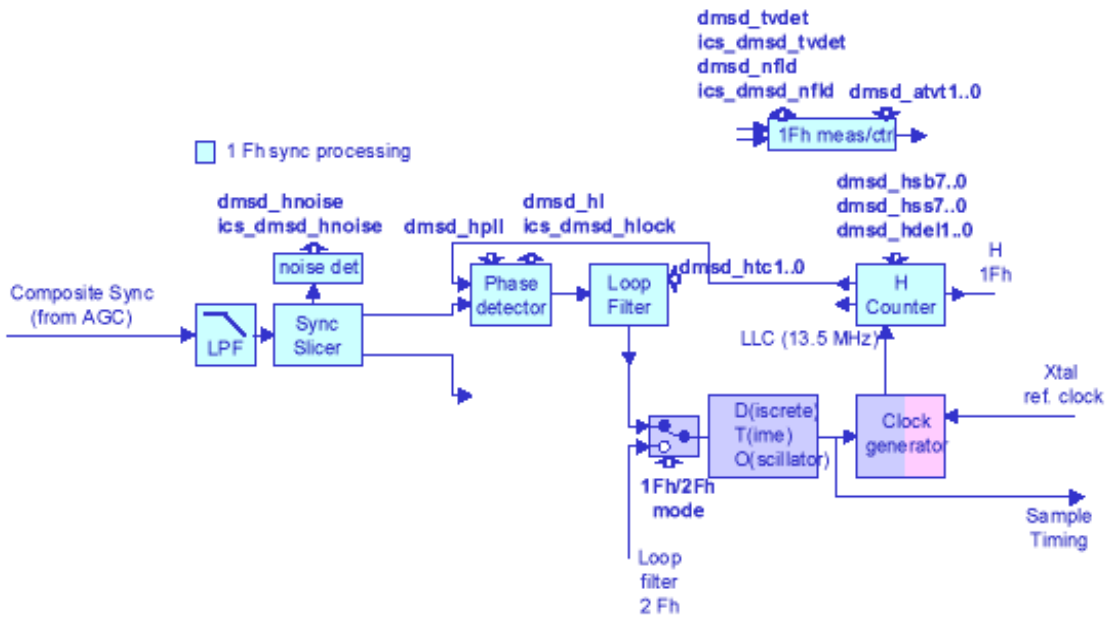


Figure 27: Horizontal Sync Processing 1 Fh

The incoming sync signal from the AGC first passes a low pass filter to remove high frequency components.

The sync slicer extracts the sync data from the signal. Also the noise is measured at sync bottom to determine the signal to noise ratio from the incoming signal. The noise info (**dmsd_hnoise**) can be used to adapt the time constant from the PHI-1 loop filter. The PHI-1 phase detector indicates whether the loop is locked to the incoming signal (**dmsd_hl**).

It is possible to generate an interrupt when the status of the h-lock readout changes. The time constant of the PHI-1 loop filter can be set to different values to optimize the behavior for various input signal conditions (**dmsd_htc**) The PHI-1 can be set in free running mode (**dmsd_hpll**). This is for test purposes and not used in PNX2000.

The Start position, the stop position and a fine shift of horizontal pulses for the following blocks can be programmed (**dmsd_hsb**, **dmsd_hss**, **dmsd_hdel**). The measurement block contains circuits to detect whether a VCR is connected. It can measure whether horizontal phase jumps are present in the incoming signal (**dmsd_tvdet**). The sensitivity for the phase jump size can be set using **dmsd_atvt**. It is possible to switch automatically the PHI-1 time constant (**dmsd_htc**), pending on the status of **tv_det** (Fast for VCR, slow for stable sources) To detect trick modes, another circuit measures whether the field length is nominal (not deviating more than +/- 1/2 line from standard)

The Discrete Time oscillator is used for both the 1 Fh PLL and the 2 Fh PLL. The selection of 1 Fh and 2 Fh is done by switching the clocks for the VIDDEC using settings in the GPIO registers of the GTU. After clock switching, all register values have to be reset and the registers, needing a value different from reset have to be reprogrammed with the correct value

Table 22: Bit Description - Horizontal Sync - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
004	8	1 Fh: dmsd_hnoise	Is set when noise level on the sync bottom is higher than ?? dB. 0 No noise on sync bottom 1 Noise on sync bottom When 1, dmsd_htc should be set to 0		R
FE0	7	1 Fh: ics_dmsd_hnoise	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_hnoise changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
180	0	1 Fh: dmsd_hpll	Sets horizontal PLL in free running (Xtal based) mode 0 Normal operation (locked to the input signal) 1 Free running on 1 Fh	0	R/W
004	0	1 Fh: dmsd_hl	Indicates that the horizontal PLL is in lock 0 No lock 1 In lock		R
FE0	0	1 Fh: ics_dmsd_hl	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_hl changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
180	2..1	1 Fh: dmsd_htc	Horizontal Time Constant of the PHI-1loop 00 Slow mode for noise conditions (preferred when dmsd_hnoise = 1) 01 Normal mode with limited correction / line, preferred for standard condition. 10 Switches automatically between fast and slow time constant, depending on detection of phase errors by read-out bit dmsd_tvdet 11 Fast mode without limitation of correction/line	1/x	R/W
180	10..3	1 Fh: dmsd_hsb	Horizontal Sync output pulse Begin position. Range is -107 to +107 in 8 pixels/step. Is fixed value for PNX2000 of FA.	FA	R/W
	18..11	1 Fh: dmsd_hss	Horizontal Sync output pulse Stop position Range is -107 to +107 in 8 pixels/step. Fixed value for PNX2000 of FB	FB	R/W
	20..19	1 Fh: dmsd_hdel	Horizontal Sync output pulse delay. Range is 0 to 3 in 2 pixels/step. Fine control of above. Fixed value for PNX2000 of 0	0	R/W
		1Fh / 2Fh mode	Signal, coming from the GPIO (General Purpose I/0) block, controlling also the clocks.		
000	10	dmsd_tvdet	Indicates horizontal phase jumps (VCR detection) 0 Non-stable input (Phase jumps detected, e.g. VCR) 1 Stable input (e.g. broadcast, DVD) Sensitivity adjustable with dmsd_atvt1..0 When dmsd_htc is set to 2, the H-pll time constant is automatically switched between fast (non-stable input) and slow (stable input) when dmsd_tvdet toggles.		R

Table 22: Bit Description - Horizontal Sync - Address 0X7FF9xxx *...Continued*

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
FE0	21	ics_dmsd_tvdet	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_tvdet changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
000	11	dmsd_nfld	Detection of nominal field length 0 Field length not nominal 1 Field length nominal Nominal is for 50 Hz from 312 to 313 lines / field Nominal is for 60 Hz from 262 to 263 lines / field		R
FE0	22	ics_dmsd_nfld	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_nfld changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
180	22..21	dmsd_atvt	Sets detection threshold for phase jump detection of read-out bit dmsd_tvdet 00 High sensitivity for phase jumps 01 Recommended value ----- 11 low sensitivity for phase jumps	1	R/W

dmsd_hnoise

Indicates the amount of noise, measured on the sync bottom. When the signal to noise gets below **-** dB, the bit is set to 1. In this condition we advise to set the time constant of the horizontal PLL (**dmsd_htc**) to slow ("0") to avoid a too high horizontal jitter under noisy conditions. See further the description of the **dmsd_htc**. The change of the **dmsd_hnoise** bit can be signalled via an interrupt.

dmsd_hl

This is the most important bit to indicate whether a valid video signal is present. **No status reading of the VIDDEC is valid when there is no H-lock.** The reason is that the total VIDDEC concept is based upon line locked samples, and only when there is H-lock, the line locked samples can be calculated on the correct position to enable decoding. The change of the status of this bit can be signalled via an interrupt. For a description of optimization of the catch time, see the part "Programming" after the bit description.

Read-out latency: Please note that after losing horizontal sync lock, it can take 50 msec. before this status is reflected in the **dmsd_hl** readout. This time has to be taken into account when switching channel or changing source to prevent that the H-lock status of the previous signal is regarded as H-lock on the new channel / source signal!! This issue is valid for all readout bits of the VIDDEC!! **Behavior dmsd_hl for 1Fh/2Fh input signals in 1Fh/2Fh mode of the VIDDEC.** The bit **dmsd_hl** can indicate false H-lock status 2Fh signals with VIDDEC in 1Fh mode and for 1Fh signals while VIDDEC is in 2Fh mode. Also the horizontal status lock bit for 2Fh can give false lock status.

(See **CVI Input Selection)**

dmsd_htc

Sets the time constant of the PHI-1 loop. There are 4 settings, each will be described below:

00 – Slow time constant. Optimal setting for noisy CVBS signals from RF. The presence of noise can be detected using the bit **dmsd_hnoise** described above. This setting should only be used for (noisy) off-air signals via the antenna.

01 – Normal mode. This mode reacts quite fast on phase changes in the input signal, but the correction per line is limited. This is a proper setting for normal use and provides a stable picture, even when losing sync.

10 – In this mode the PHI-1 time constant is automatically switched between slow mode and fast mode depending on the presence of the phase jumps, indicated by the bit **dmsd_tvdet**. This bit indicates the presence of a VCR by measuring the phase jumps in the input signal. The sensitivity for phase jumps can be set to 4 levels using **dmsd_atvt**. Can be used to switch automatically the PHI-1 time constant to fast for VCR input signals to get a proper performance under these conditions. Not used in PNX2000.

11 – Fast mode. Follows very fast phase jumps in the input signal. Has optimal catching speed but the phase jumps from line to line are not limited.

For use of dmsd_htc, see Programming after the bit description.

dmsd_hsb, dmsd_hss and dmsd_hdel.

Not used in PNX2000. Leave on reset value.

1Fh/2Fh mode

dmsd_tvdet, dmsd_atvt

(Readout only valid when dmsd_hl = 1, also note latency)

Not used in PNX2000, backup to solve problems in performance if needed.

Can be used to detect whether the signal is coming from a VCR. The detection is done by measuring the size of the horizontal phase jumps in the incoming signal. When no phase jumps are detected, the signal is regarded as being stable from broadcast or DVD. The sensitivity of the detection can be set by **dmsd_atvt** (4 settings). The higher the setting, the larger the horizontal phase jump needs to be in order to be recognized as VCR signal by **dmsd_tvdet**.

When the horizontal pll time constant **dmsd_htc** is set to 2, the PHI-1 time constant is set to fast (for VCR) or slow (for stable sources) depending on the status of **dmsd_tvdet**. Status change of **dmsd_tvdet** can be indicated by an interrupt.

dmsd_nfld (readout only valid when **dmsd_hl** = 1, also note latency) Not used in PNX2000, backup to solve problems in performance if needed. Indicates whether the input field length is nominal and can be used to identify whether a signal, coming from a VCR in trick mode is connected. The specification for nominal field length are:

- Nominal field length for 50 Hz is 312 to 313 lines.

- Nominal field length for 60 Hz is 262 to 263 lines.

All standard broadcast, DVD play mode and VCR normal play mode are considered standard length. Also non-interlaced signals as from MPEG 1 video players are considered standard. All VCR trick modes with phase jumps are deviating 1 or more lines per field and will be recognized as non-standard field length. Can be used to change settings to get better performance in VCR trick modes e.g. **dmsd_htc**, or **dmsd_fscq** of the color decoder. Can be used maybe to distinguish between 1Fh and 2Fh input sources.

Remark: To be checked if **dmsd_nfld** also works under all settings of **dmsd_vnoi**. First check with PNX2000 showed that the bit only works when **dmsd_vnoi** = 0.

Programming

A proposal to achieve a good system performance for the PHI-1 is given below.

Normal operation

The settings for the horizontal PLL become:

- dmsd_htc = 3 when dmsd_hnoise = 0
- dmsd_htc = 0 when dmsd_hnoise = 1

Remark: These settings are based upon the experience and tests done until now. Maybe it is needed to set under normal condition and no noise the **dmsd_htc** = 1 in stead of 3.

Optimizing H-lock catch time and PHI-1 settings

The most dominant factors, influencing the H-lock catch time, are:

- The **dmsd_htc** setting
- The setting of the input clamp mode in PNX3000
- The size of the input capacitor at the CVBS / Y input

For the input capacitor, we advise a maximum value of 100 nF. Higher values cause a too long settling time of the clamping circuit, leading to a longer H-lock time. Also the reaction time on DC jumps at the CVBS inputs is negatively influenced using higher input capacitor values.

The settings we advise for search tuning:

- Select correct free running mode of the MBF-PLL:

Fnom = 1 (Set PNX8550 to cater for free running mode,)

Bypass = 0

Interlace = 1 (select 1 Fh input)

Fh_sel = 0 (select 1 Fh input)

Line_sel = 0 for 60 Hz (525 lines) or 1 for 50 Hz (625 lines)

(depending on the preferred free running display mode during search)

- Set **dmsd_htc** = 3 (fast mode)

Set the clamp mode in the PNX3000 to top sync clamp (**CLP** = 0). This shortens the clamping time and as consequence the H-lock time at the cost of less performance on reduced sync. However, extreme reduced sync is not common on RF signals. Note to set always **CLP** = 1 (black clamping mode) under normal condition (non-search), else the correct black level of the input signal cannot be guaranteed.

Under these conditions, the H-pll lock time is below 80 msec. This does not mean that the minimum waiting time per frequency step has to be 80 msec. In practice it is allowed to add the waiting times of all frequency steps that the IF-PLL is locked to the picture carrier.

Example:

When stepping at 1 MHz, it is possible that you only get one step an IF-PLL lock. Then it is needed to have a stepping time of 80 msec. to guarantee H-lock. When stepping at 0,5 MHz, you can reduce the waiting time/step by a factor 2 to 40 msec. The total search performance for weak transmitters will still increase, because now it is possible you have 3 steps where the IF-PLL can lock to the picture carrier, adding up the possible lock time to 120 msec.Changing channel or input source

We think that the horizontal catching time is acceptable when changing channel or input source without changing the horizontal register settings. Take care of the readout-latency of 50 msec when reading **dmsd_hl** after changing channel or input source.

If you want to have the highest possible speed and accept limited performance for reduced sync, you can apply the algorithm below:

- Switch channel or input source
- Select top sync clamp (**CLP** = 0)
- Wait at least 50 msec. before starting to read **dmsd_hl** to account for the readout latency
- Wait for **dmsd_hl** = 1
- Set clamping back to black level clamp (**CLP** = 1).

4.4.6.2 Vertical Sync Processing 1 Fh

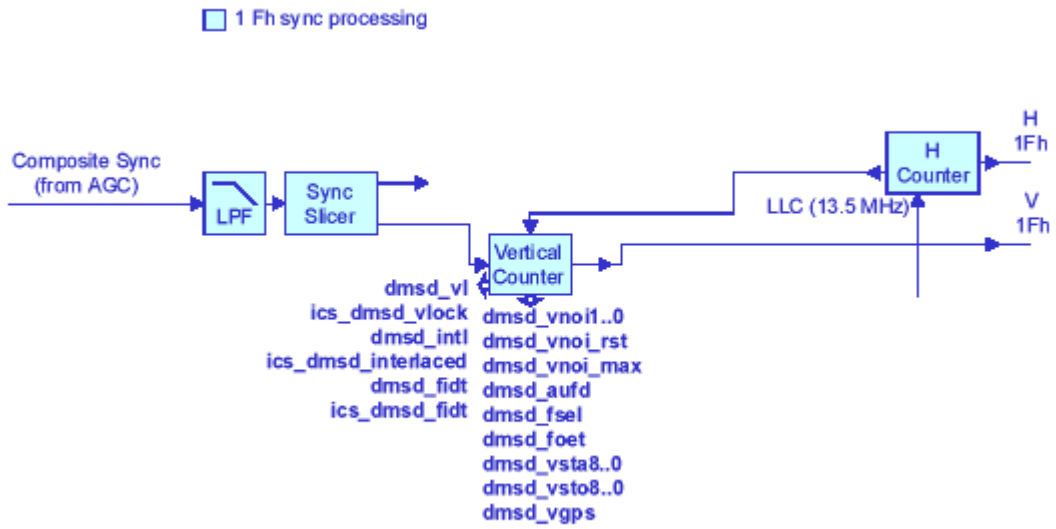


Figure 28: Vertical Sync Processing 1 Fh

The vertical sync is fed to a counter. The vertical counter indicates several properties of the incoming signal:

- Vertical lock to the incoming signal (**dmsd_vl**)

The values of the readout bits mentioned below are only reliable when there is Horizontal Lock and Vertical Lock.

- Interlace (**dmsd_intl**)
- Field frequency, 50 or 60 Hz (**dmsd_fidt**)

A status change of each of these readout bits can be signalled by an interrupt.

Many properties of the vertical counter can be programmed:

- The noise rejection level for wrong vertical sync pulses (**dmsd_vnoi**, **dmsd_vnoi_rst**, **dmsd_vnoi_max**)
- Automatic or forced vertical frequency (50 or 60 Hz), (**dmsd_aufd**, **dmsd_fsel**)
- Forced odd/even toggle or odd/even toggle according the input signal (**dmsd_foet**)
- Start and stop position of the vertical sync pulses (**dmsd_vsta**, **dmsd_vsto**)
- Extra offset insertion for the internal vertical gating pulse (**dmsd_vgps**), bit not used in PNX2000.

Table 23: Status Bit Description - Vertical Sync - Address 0X7 FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
004	1	1 Fh: dmsd_vl	Vertical lock indication 0 No vertical lock 1 Vertical lock. Can take up to 27 fields.		R
FE0	1	1 Fh: ics_dmsd_vl	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_vl changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
004	2	1 Fh: dmsd_intl	Indication input signal is interlaced 0 Not interlaced 1 Interlaced		R
FE0	2	1 Fh: ics_dmsd_intl	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_intl changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
004	3	1 Fh: dmsd_fidt	Indicates the found field length or vertical frequency 0 50 Hz 1 60 Hz		R
FE0	3	1 Fh: ics_dmsd_fidt	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dmsd_fidt changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R

Remark: All readout bits have a latency up till 50 msec. Take this latency into account when reading status bits after channel change or input source change.

dmsd_vl

The vertical lock indication can need up to 27 fields before indicating the correct status. Especially when the input signal changes from 50 to 60 Hz or vice versa, the lock time can be can be maximum. Changing from 50 Hz to 50 Hz or 60 Hz to 60 Hz, the lock time becomes much shorter. The status of **dmsd_vl** can be used to select the setting of the vertical noise suppression mode. It is possible to generate an interrupt when the status of **dmsd_vl** changes.

Important:

The reading of **dmsd_vl** is only reliable when **dmsd_hl** is 1, indicating horizontal lock. The reading of all other vertical status bits is only reliable when both **dmsd_hl** = 1 and **dmsd_vl** = 1

dmsd_intl

The interlace bit indicates whether there is a half line shift with respect to the vertical retrace between two fields. All standard CVBS, Y/C and YPrPb signals are interlaced. The only exceptions are CVBS, Y/C and YPrPb from MPEG1 decoded video discs and the famous test pattern of a X-hatch. See also **dmsd_foet** and programming at the end of this chapter.

dmsd_fidt

The field length indicates whether the vertical frequency is 50 or 60 Hz. It is important to wait for **dmsd_vl** = 1 before reading this bit. The bit status also is needed to program the position of the vertical reference pulse (see **bit description control bits** below)

When changing from 50 to 60 Hz input signal or vice versa, the time before **dmsd_fidt** is valid may take 27 fields.

Table 24: Control Bit Description - Vertical Sync - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
184	1..0	1 Fh: dmsd_vnoi1..0	Vertical noise suppression mode 00 Normal mode, suppression of vertical sync pulses outside vertical window 01 Fast mode. Not used for PNX2000 10 Free running mode on 50/60 Hz (pending on dmsd_fsel). Not used for PNX2000 11 Debug mode	0/x	R/W
	2	1 Fh: dmsd_vnoi_rst	Vertical noise reduction reset 0 Normal mode 1 Reset to largest window. Should be used to enable fast vertical lock when changing source or channel	0/x	R/W
	3	1 Fh: dmsd_vnoi_max	Selects maximum vertical noise suppression 0 Normal mode (recommended) 1 Extreme high vertical noise suppression. Not useful in PNX2000 system.	0	R/W
	4	1 Fh: dmsd_aufd	Automatic field length detection (50/60 Hz) 0 Off, forced selection by dmsd_fsel (see below) 1 Active (Recommended for PNX2000 except NAFTA)	1/x [1)]	R/W
	5	1 Fh: dmsd_fsel	Forced field length (only effective when dmsd_aufd = 0) 0 50 Hz (nominal 625 lines) 1 60 Hz (nominal 525 lines)	0/x [1)]	R/W
	6	1 Fh: dmsd_foet	Force odd / even toggle of First Field signal. 0 Only toggling when signal is interlaced 1 Interlaced signal: toggling each field, in phase Non-interlaced: toggling each field, phase random	1	R/W
	15..7	1 Fh: dmsd_vsta	Start position of vertical pulse VGATE_L Value pending on field length: 50 Hz: 2 60 Hz: 3	002/x	R/W
	24..16	1 Fh: dmsd_vsto	Stop position of vertical pulse VGATE_L Value pending on field length: 50 Hz: 12F hex 60 Hz: FE hex	12F/x	R/W
	25	1 Fh: dmsd_vgps	Influences the field offset for the start of the negative VGATE_L pulse. Recommended position: 0	0	R/W

[24-1] 1) For North America and Philippines, where only 60 Hz signals are received, it is best to set aufd = 0 and fsel = 1

dmsd_vnoi

Determines the vertical noise suppression mode. Should be set to 0 for normal operation. For fast vertical catching just after channel/input change or sync loss, it is possible to set to 1. and set back to 0 after vertical sync lock has been found (**dmsd_hl** and **dmsd_vl** = 1) Also for signals with varying vertical retrace position field by field (e.g. some VCR trick modes), position 1 could be used.

dmsd_vnoi_rst

When set to 1, the catch window is set to maximum value. This should be used to speed up vertical catching after changing channel/input signal or loss of sync. For fastest catching, should be combined by setting **dmsd_vnoi** = 1. Both **dmsd_vnoi_rst** and **dmsd_vnoi** should be set back to 0 when vertical sync lock has been found (**dmsd_hl** and **dmsd_vl** = 1).

dmsd_vnoi_max

Not applicable for TV use. Leave on default value 0.

dmsd_aufd, dmsd_fsel

Selects between automatic field length detection or forced field length. For all multi system countries, should be set to automatic (1 = reset value) Only when forcing colour systems and for one colour system only countries like USA, Canada, Mexico and Philippines the field frequency should be forced by setting **dmsd_aufd** to 0.

Remark: When forcing a colour system, the forced field frequency is key to determine which colour system is forced by **dmsd_cstd** (see also **2.3.4 Colour system manager**) The field frequency in forced mode is selected by **dmsd_fsel**. When **dmsd_aufd** is in automatic mode, **dmsd_fsel** is don't care.

dmsd_foet

This bit is set to a 1 for PNX2000. In this way, always an odd/even toggle is generated, also when the input is a non-interlaced signal. For interlaced signals, the phase of the odd/even signal will follow the input signal. For non-interlaced signals, the odd/even toggle changes in a random phase.

dmsd_vsta, dmsd_vsto

The setting of these registers for the internal vertical gating pulse is depending on the vertical frequency. This frequency can be read from **dmsd_fidt**. Note that this reading is only valid when **dmsd_hl** and **dmsd_vl** are 1.

dmsd_vgps

Not used in PNX2000.

Programming

The bits of the vertical counter require quite some use and adaptations, depending on the readouts. **Take into account the latency of the readout bits after channel/ input change of 50 msec!**

dmsd_vl – indicates that vertical lock is found, provided **dmsd_hl** = 1. All other vertical readout bits are only valid when both **dmsd_hl** and **dmsd_vl** are 1.

dmsd_intl – indicates whether the input signal is interlaced or not.

dmsd_fidt – indicates the field length, 0 = 50 Hz, 1 = 60 Hz. Values of **dmsd_vsta** and **dmsd_vsto –** should be adapted according to the found field frequency.

dmsd_vnoi and **dmsd_vnoi_rst –** should be set to 0 for normal operation.

After a channel / input change, to ensure fast catching, the best programming is:

Set **dmsd_vnoi** and **dmsd_vnoi_rst** = 1

When **dmsd_hl** and **dmsd_vl** are both 1, set **dmsd_vnoi** and **dmsd_vnoi_rst** back to 0.

dmsd_aufd is set to automatic (1) for multi-system destinations.

To force a colour system:

- Set dmsd_aufd = 0
- Select the wanted field frequency with dmsd_fsel, 0 = 50 Hz, 1 = 60 Hz.
- Set dmsd_auto = 0
- Select the colour standard using dmsd_cstd
- When dmsd_hl is 1 (note latency after channel / input change), set dmsd_cdto to 1 and back to 0.

For countries like USA, Canada and Mexico (NAFTA) and the Philippines, the TV can be forced to NTSC-M or NTSC-J only using the above procedure.

dmsd_foet

Should be programmed 1 always, is also the reset value.

dmsd_vsta, **dmsd_vsto**

To be programmed according to the found field frequency (**dmsd_fidt**, only valid when **dmsd_hl** and **dmsd_vl** are 1).

Field Freq.	dmsd_fidt	dmsd_vsta	dmsd_vsto
50Hz	0	2	12F
60Hz	1	3	FE

4.4.6.3 Horizontal Sync Processing 2 Fh

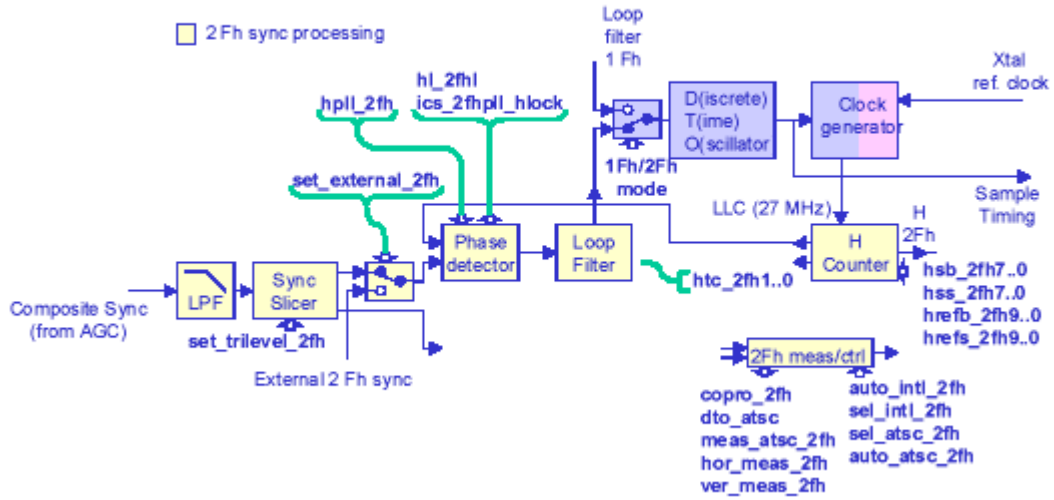


Figure 29: Horizontal Sync Processing 2 Fh

The horizontal sync part for 2 Fh is for a large part identical to the 1 Fh part. The signals supported are 576p, 480p, ATSC 1080i, 1080i50Hz and 1152i50Hz either in Y Pr Pb format with in- or external sync or in RGB format with SOG (Sync On Green) or external sync.

The sync from the AGC passes a low pass filter to remove high frequent disturbances. The sync slicer does not have a noise detector, because it is not likely that 2 Fh input signals from DVD, PC or digital reception contain noise like 1 Fh terrestrial analogue reception.

To accommodate ATSC, it is possible to set the sync slicer for tri-level sync on Y using **set_3l_2fh**. The 2Fh sync part also supports external sync input, selectable by **sel_ext_2fh**. Like for 1Fh, the PLL can be set in free running mode (**hpll_2fh**) and the lock status can be read (**hl_2fh**) The loop filter time constant can be set using **htc_2fh**. In these settings, the automatic time constant switching for VCR is omitted.

The settings **hsb_2fh** and **hss_2fh** for timing of internal sync pulses can be left on their reset value and need no change for all input signals. The value of **hrefb_2fh** and **hrefs_2fh** for the internal horizontal reference pulse must be adapted according the input signal.

The properties of the input signal can be read from the control/measurement block:

- Macrovision in sync (**copro_2fh**)
- Input signal is ATSC (**dto_atsc**, **meas_atsc_2fh**)
- The properties of the remaining two readout bits (**hor_meas_2fh** and **ver_meas_2fh**) are not defined.

Also it is possible to program the behaviour:

- Automatic or forced interlace (**auto_intl-2fh**, **sel_intl_2fh**)
- Automatic or forced setting for ATSC (**auto_atsc_2fh**, **sel_atsc_2fh**)
- Set 2fh Interlaced standard (**atsc_mode_2fh**)

Table 25: Bit Description - Horiz. Sync - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
140	10	2 Fh: set_3l_2fh	Selects tri-level mode for sync module 0 Normal mode 1 Tri-level mode, to be selected for ATSC	0/x	R/W
	11	2 Fh: sel_ext_2fh	Selects between internal sync (on Y) or external H and V sync inputs 0 Internal sync on Y 1 External sync on H and V sync inputs	0/x	R/W
144	21	2 Fh: hpll_2fh	Sets horizontal PLL in free running (X-tal based) mode 0 Normal operation (locked to the input signal) 1 Free running on 2 Fh	0	R/W
004	9	2 Fh: hl_2fh	Indicates that the horizontal PLL is in lock 0 No lock 1 In lock		R
FE0	8	2 Fh: ics_2fhpll_hlock	Interrupt flag set to 1 when hl_2fh changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R/W
144	20..19	2 Fh: htc_2fh	Horizontal Time Constant of the 2Fh PHI-1 loop 00 Slow mode for noise conditions 01 Normal mode with limited correction / line Preferred for standard condition 10 Reserved mode, do not use 11 Fast mode without limitation of correction/line	0/1	R/W
		1Fh / 2Fh mode	Signal, coming from the GPIO (General Purpose I/0) block, controlling also the clocks.		R/W
144	15..8	2 Fh: hsb_2fh	Horizontal Sync output pulse Begin position. Range is -107 to +107 in 8 pixels/step. Is fixed value for PNX2000 of FA.	FA	R/W
	7..0	2 Fh: hss_2fh	Horizontal Sync output pulse Stop position Range is -107 to +107 in 8 pixels/step. Fixed value for PNX2000 of FB	FB	R/W
14C		2 Fh: hrefb_2fh9..0	Begin position of horizontal reference pulse Value pending signal:		R/W
		2 Fh: hrefs_2fh9..0	Stop position of horizontal reference pulse Value pending signal:		R/W

set_3l_2fh

Y Pr Pb signals in ATSC format use a tri-level sync on Y. So when ATSC is detected, using the readout bits of the 2Fh measurement/control block, tri-level sync should be selected. For all other signals this bit should be set to 0.

sel_ext_2fh

Selects between sync on Y / G or external H and V sync.

hpll_2fh

Sets the 2Fh horizontal PLL in free running mode. For test purposes. Not used for PNX2000.

hl_2fh

Indicates whether the horizontal 2Fh PLL is in lock. For the 2Fh circuit, the same applies as for the 1Fh. **Only when hpll_2fh indicates lock (= 1), other status bit readouts are reliable.**

Without horizontal lock, the VIDDEC is in an undefined state and readings cannot be trusted. **Also the behaviour regarding latency of status bits is comparable with the 1Fh circuit.** A status change of **hl_2fh** can be signalled by an interrupt. **Behaviour hl_2fh for 1Fh/2Fh input signals in 2Fh mode of the VIDDEC.** The bit **hl_2fh** can indicate false H-lock status for 1Fh signals while VIDDEC is in 2Fh mode. See **CVI input selection**

htc_2fh

Sets the time constant for the 2Fh horizontal PLL.

Below, the differences with the 1Fh PLL time constant settings will be discussed.

00

Slow setting for signals with noise. In 2Fh mode, these signals (analogue off air reception) are not present. Therefore also the noise measurement module has been omitted in the 2Fh PLL part.

01

Normal mode with limited phase correction / line. Preferred mode when horizontal lock time is acceptable. Guarantees also stable behaviour for no input signal conditions and disturbances on the input.

10

Not defined. Do not use. (For 1 Fh this setting provided the automatic switching between position 3 (VCR) and 0 (broadcast, stable source) depending on readout of **dmsd_tvdet**)

11

Fast mode, no gating or limitation for phase correction per line. Could be used when the horizontal lock time in mode 01 is too long.

1Fh/2Fh mode

hsb_2fh, **hss_2fh**

Timing of internal horizontal sync pulse. Not used in PNX2000. Leave on reset value.

hrefb_2fh, **hrefs_2fh**

Horizontal reference pulse. These settings should be programmed according to the found input format. The input format can be deducted from the status bit readings discussed later in this chapter.

Signal	Input Format	hrefb 2fh	hrefs 2fh	hsb_2fh	hss_2fh
YPrPb	480p	3A7	31	7	4
	576p	3A1	31	7	4
	1080i (ATSC)	3BE	28	7	4
	1080i/50Hz	3BE	3CC	7	4
	1152i/50HZ	39F	28	5	0
RGB Ext. pos Sync	480p	37D	7	7	4
	576p	375	5	7	4
	1080i (ATSC)	393	3FD	7	4
	1080i/50Hz	393	39D	7	4
	1152i/50HZ	371	1	5	0
RGB Ext. neg sync	480p	3B9	3B	7	4
	576p	3B5	45	7	4
	1080i (ATSC)	3B3	1D	7	4
	1080i/50Hz	3B1	3B9	7	4
	1152i/50HZ	3AF	3F	5	0

Programming

Sel_trilevel_2fh

Should be set when ATSC standard is detected (see bit description measurement / control below) and there is no external sync.

Sel_ext_2fh

Should be according to the source for sync signals to be checked. Also in the 2Fh circuit, the bit **hl_2fh** is key. Without horizontal lock no other status bits are reliable. Take care of the latency of 50 msec. after loss of sync when changing channel / input.

htc_2fh

When horizontal lock-in time is acceptable, set to 01, else use 11.

Set **hrefb_2fh** and **hrefs_2fh** according to the table, depending on the format of the input signal. All other bits can be left in reset state.

Table 26: Bit Description - Measurement /Control - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
140	17	2 Fh: auto_intl_2fh	Sets sync loop automatic for interlaced mode when interlace is detected by intl_2fh (meas?) 0 Interlace / non-interlace set by sel_intl 1 Interlace set by status of intl_2fh	0	R/W
	18	2 Fh: sel_intl_2fh	Sets interlaced / non-interlaced mode when auto_intl_2fh = 0 0 Non-interlaced 1 Interlaced	0	R/W
	19	2 Fh: sel_atsc_2fh	Sets H counter / V window according ATSC norm 0 Normal mode 1 ATSC mode Not active when auto_atsc_2fh = 1, see below	0	R/W
	20	2 Fh: auto_atsc_2fh	Sets automatic normal / atsc mode, pending on dto_atsc (meas_atsc_2fh?) Only controls H counter / V window, not tri-level sync!! 0 use mode, set by sel_atsc_2fh 1 Use value of dto_atsc (meas_atsc_2fh?)	0	R/W
004	12	2 Fh: copro_2fh	Is set to 1 when macrovision is detected on the sync.		R
FE0	11	2 Fh: ics_2fhpll_copro	Interrupt flag set to 1 when copro_2fh changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		
004	13	2 Fh: dto_atsc	Detection of ATSC signal		R
	20	2 Fh: meas_atsc_2fh	Alternative detection of ATSC signal, validation to prove which is the most reliable		R
140	22..21	2 Fh: atsc_mode_2fh	00 US1 01 US2 10 Australia 11 China	0	R/W
FE0	18	2 Fh: ics_dto_atsc	Interrupt flag set to 1 when dto_atsc changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
004	22..21	2 Fh: hor_meas_2fh	Not defined yet		R
	25..23	2 Fh: ver_meas_2fh	Not defined yet		R

auto_intl_2fh

Should be set to 0 to force the interlace status. The automatic mode can cause instabilities while catching the signal.

sel_intl_2fh

Must be set according to the properties of the input signal. The status bits used for determining the interlace of the input signal are **intl_2fh**, **dto_atsc** and **meas_atsc_2fh**. These bits will be discussed below. For further information, see Programming.

auto_atsc_2fh, sel_atsc_2fh

We advise to set the automatic selection for ATSC to forced mode (**ato_atsc_2fh** = 0). During testing, the automatic recognition was not reliable enough. To determine whether the input signal is ATSC, the status bits **dto_atsc**, **meas_atsc_2fh** and **intl_2fh** can be used.

copro_2fh

Indicates when macrovision is detected in the sync. Also the 2Fh signals can contain macrovision in the Y signal, as well as on the sync (80% sync amplitude and false sync pulses during vertical retrace) as false AGC pulses during the vertical retrace When **copro_2fh** = 1, indicating macrovision, the setting of the **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** should be adapted, identical to the 1Fh case (**dmsd_copro**).

For YUV:

Normal **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** = 100 hex

Copro_2fh = 1 **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** = 118 hex

For RGB signals, no macrovision is known. A status change of **copro_2fh** can be signalled by an interrupt.

dto_atsc, meas_atsc_2fh

Two measurement circuits are built-in to detect whether the input signal is ATSC. For this moment, we advise to have both indicating ATSC and to ensure that **intl_2fh** also indicates an interlaced signal before deciding to set **sel_atsc_2fh** in ATSC mode.

Note that **intl_2fh** only is reliable when **vl_2fh** indicates vertical lock, see **2.4.4 Vertical sync processing 2 Fh**. A status change of **dto_atsc** can be signalled by an interrupt.

hor_meas_2fh, ver_meas_2fh

These bits are reserved but have not been defined in the design. Do not use in PNX2000.

Programming

sel_atsc_2fh, **sel_intl_2fh**, **auto_atsc_2fh** and **auto_intl_2fh** will be discussed in the "**programming**" part of the next chapter, because all needed status bits have been described yet.

Set both **auto_atsc_2fh** and **auto_intl_2fh** in forced mode (0)

copro_2fh detects when there is macrovision in the sync part. When macrovision is detected (**copro_2fh** = 1), adapt the AGC setting for the Y channel:

For YUV:

Normal **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** = 100 hex

Copro_2fh = 1 **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_pi** = 118 hex

4.4.6.4 Vertical Sync Processing 2 Fh

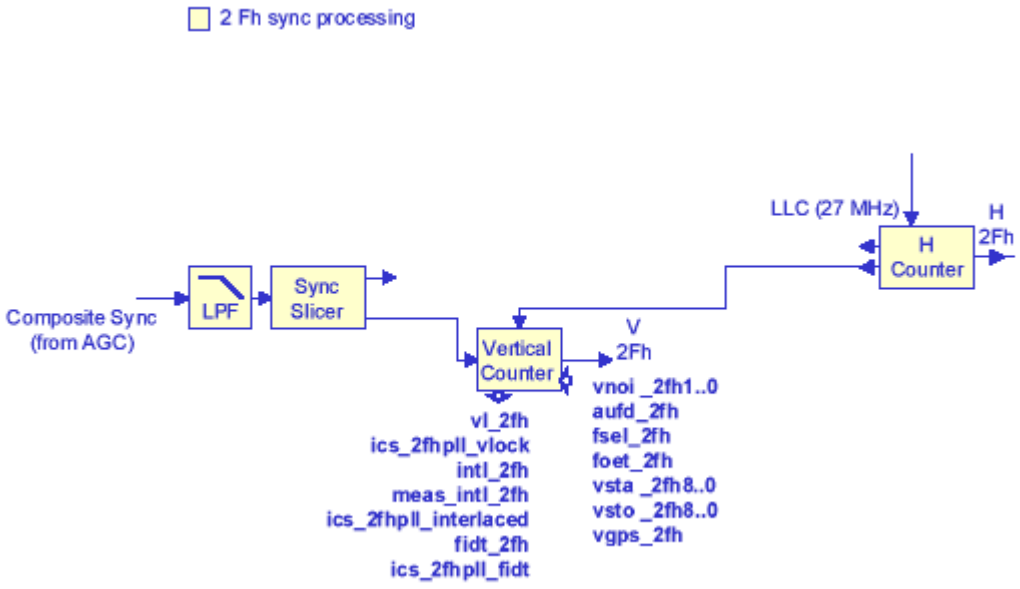


Figure 30: Vertical Sync Processing 2Fh

The vertical sync processing for 2Fh is almost identical to the one for 1Fh.

The following status bits are available:

- Vertical lock (**vl_2fh**). Both vertical lock and horizontal lock have to be true (**vl_2fh** and **hl_2fh** both 1) to guarantee that the other vertical status bits are reliable.
- Interlace (**intl_2fh** and **meas_intl_2fh**).
- 50 or 60 Hz field frequency (**fidt_2fh**).

It is possible to generate an interrupt when one of the status bit changes.

In the properties, which can be programmed, the option to reset the vertical search window to maximum and to select a very high vertical noise level suppression have been removed for 2Fh. In view of the signal properties of 2Fh sources, they were not relevant. The programmable items are:

- Noise suppression (**vnoi_2fh**)
- Automatic or forced field frequency (**aufd_2fh**, **fsel_2fh**)
- Automatic or forced odd/even toggle (**foet_2fh**)
- Position vertical reference pulse (**vsta_2fh**, **vsto_2fh**)
- Extra offset insertion for the internal vertical gating pulse (**vgps_2fh**), bit not used in PNX2000.

The vertical blanking for 2Fh signals is not according the specification of the 576p, 480p and 1080i standard.

Table 27: Status Bit Description - Vert.Sync. 2Fh – Address OX7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
004	10	2 Fh: vl_2fh	Vertical lock indication 0 No vertical lock 1 Vertical lock		R
FE0	9	2 Fh: ics_2fhpll_vlock	Interrupt flag set to 1 when vl_2fh changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
004	11	2 Fh: intl_2fh	Indication input signal is interlaced 0 Not interlaced 1 Interlaced		R
004	19	2 Fh: meas_intl_2fh	Alternative indication input signal is interlaced 0 Not interlaced 1 Interlaced Practice should prove which indication is most reliable		R
FE0	10	2 Fh: ics_2fhpll_interlaced	Interrupt flag set to 1 when intl_2fh changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R
004	16	2 Fh: fidt_2fh	Indicates the found field length or vertical frequency 0 50 Hz 1 60 Hz		R
FE0	17	2 Fh: ics_2fhpll_fidt	Interrupt flag set to 1 when fidt_2fh changes. See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		R

vl_2fh

The vertical lock status bit indicates that the vertical counter is synchronised with the incoming signal. The reading of **vl_2fh** is only reliable when also **hl_2fh = 1. Both hl_2fh and vl_2fh have to be 1 before the other vertical status bits are reliable.** The vertical lock-in time is comparable with 1Fh, it can take up to 27 fields. (more than 500 msec). The longest times will occur when the VIDDEC starts in 50 Hz after switching to 2Fh and a reset of all registers and the input signal is 60 Hz or vice versa.

When the incoming frequency is known before and the system is forced to that frequency (see **aufd_2fh**, **fsel_2fh**) the lock time will be shorter. **We expect the same latency of 50 msec** (keeping the last reading) as for 1Fh when switching input source, but this is less relevant for 2Fh input. A status change can be signalled by an interrupt.

intl_2fh, meas_intl_2fh

Two measurement circuits have been built-in to check whether the input signal is interlaced or not. Validation has to prove whether which status bit is the most reliable. For the moment, we advise to use both bits together to determine the interlace status. A status change of one of the interlace status bits, **intl_2fh**, can be signalled by an interrupt.

fidt_2fh

The field length (50 or 60 Hz) is important to program the correct settings for the position of the vertical reference pulse (**vsta_2fh, vsto_2fh**), see below. The bit is also used in the recognition of ATSC. A status change can be signalled by an interrupt.

Table 28: Control Bit Description - Vert.Sync. 2Fh - Address OX7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
144	23..22	2 Fh: vnoi_2fh1..0	Vertical noise suppression mode 00 Normal mode, suppression of vertical sync pulses outside vertical window 01 Fast mode. Can speed vertical catching 10 Free running mode on 50/60 Hz (pending on fsel_2fh). Not allowed for PNX2000 11 Debug mode, not allowed for normal operation	0	R/W
	16	2 Fh: aufd_2fh	Automatic field length detection (50/60 Hz) 0 Off, forced selection by fsel_2fh (see below) 1 Active (Recommended for PNX2000 except NAFTA)	1/x [1)]	R/W
	17	2 Fh: fsel_2fh	Forced field length (only effective when aufd_2fh = 0) 0 50 Hz (576 progressive) 1 60 Hz (480 progressive)	0/x	R/W
	18	2 Fh: foet_2fh	Force odd / even toggle of First Field signal. 0 Only toggling when signal is interlaced 1 Interlaced signal: toggling each field, in phase Non-interlaced: toggling each field, phase random	0	R/W
148	9..0	2 Fh: vsta_2fh9..0	Start position of vertical pulse VGATE_L Value pending on signal:	4	R/W
	19..10	2 Fh: vsto_2fh9..0	Stop position of vertical pulse VGATE_L Value pending on signal:	209	R/W
140	12	2 Fh: vgps_2fh	Influences the field offset for the start of the negative VGATE_L pulse. Recommended position: 0	0	R/W

vnoi_2fh

The setting must be 0 for normal use. For fast vertical catching, it is possible to set **vnoi_2fh** to 1 after selecting 2Fh mode for the VIDDEC till there is **vl_2fh** (note that also **hl_2fh** has to be 1)

Remark: settings 2 and 3 are not allowed to ensure stable behaviour.

For 2Fh, some settings for vertical noise suppression have been omitted. The option to reset the search window to maximum size for fast catching after input change, is not available. Because it is not likely there are two 2Fh inputs, this is in practice no problem. Also a setting for maximum noise rejection is omitted, but this setting was not useful for TV application.

aufd_2fh, fsel_2fh

The vertical frequency can follow the input signal or can be forced to 50 or 60 Hz only. For most countries, the automatic setting is optimal. For countries with only one TV system like USA, Canada, Mexico and Philippines, the vertical frequency can be forced to 60 Hz only. Forcing to one frequency can speed up the vertical catching time. The use is identical to the 1Fh bits. For automatic, set **aufd_2fh** to 1. For forced, set **aufd** to 0 and set **fsel_2fh** = 0 for 50 Hz and to 1 for 60 Hz.

foet_2fh

For 2Fh signals, the bit **foet_2fh** has to follow the interlace status of the incoming signal. The setting becomes:

- 0 for 576p, 50 Hz
- 0 for 480p, 60 Hz
- 1 for ATSC, 1080i, 60 Hz

vsta_2fh, vsto_2fh

The position of the vertical reference pulse has to be programmed according to the format of the input signal:

Signal	Mode	vsto_2fh	vsta_2fh
YPrPb	480p	209	4
	576p	26D	3
	1080i (ATSC)	22F	4
	1080i/50Hz	22F	4
	1152i/50HZ	22F	4
RGB Ext. pos Sync	480p	209	4
	576p	26D	3
	1080i (ATSC)	22F	4
	1080i/50Hz	22F	4
	1152i/50HZ	22F	4
RGB Ext. neg sync	480p	209	4
	576p	26D	3
	1080i (ATSC)	22F	4
	1080i/50Hz	22F	4
	1152i/50HZ	22F	4

vgps_2fh

Not used in PNX2000.

Programming

Both **hl_2fh** and **vl_2fh** have to be 1 to guarantee that the other vertical status bits are reliable.

The lock time of **vl_2fh** can run up to 27 fields.

Forcing the vertical frequency (for one TV system countries like USA, Canada, Mexico and Philippines) can shorten the vertical lock-in time. **vnoi_2fh** should be set to 0 for normal operation. For fast vertical catching, it is possible to set **vnoi_2fh** = 1 when there is no horizontal sync lock and put it back to 0 when there is both **hl_2fh** and **vl_2fh**.

- Set **aufd_2fh** = 0For most countries, the vertical field frequency is set to automatic (**aufd_2fh** = 1). For one TV system countries (USA, Canada, Mexico and Philippines) it is possible to force the vertical frequency:
- Select the desired vertical frequency setting **fsel_2fh** = 0 for 50 Hz or 1 for 60 Hz.

In this part, also the control bits **auto_atsc_2fh**, **sel_atsc_2fh**, **auto_intl_2fh**, and **sel_intl_2fh** and the status bits **dto_atsc** and **measatsc_2fh** of the 2Fh measurement/control block will be discussed. As indicated in the previous chapter, set the selection mode for ATSC and interlace to forced.

auto_atsc_2fh = 0

auto_intl_2fh = 0

For the setting of the other bits, depending on the format of the input signal and the readout of the status bits, see the table below.

Table 29: Setting of Bits

Input	hl 2fh	vl 2fh	fidt 2fh	intl 2fh	meas intl 2fh	dto atsc	meas atsc 2fh	foet 2fh	sel atsc 2fh	sel trilevel 2fh	sel intl 2fh	vsta 2fh	vsto 2fh
R R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
576P	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	26D
480P	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	4	209
1080i ATSC	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	22F
1080i/ 50Hz	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	4	22F
1152i/ 50Hz	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	4	22F

4.4.6.5 Fast Blanking / External 2 Fh Sync / Clamp Info

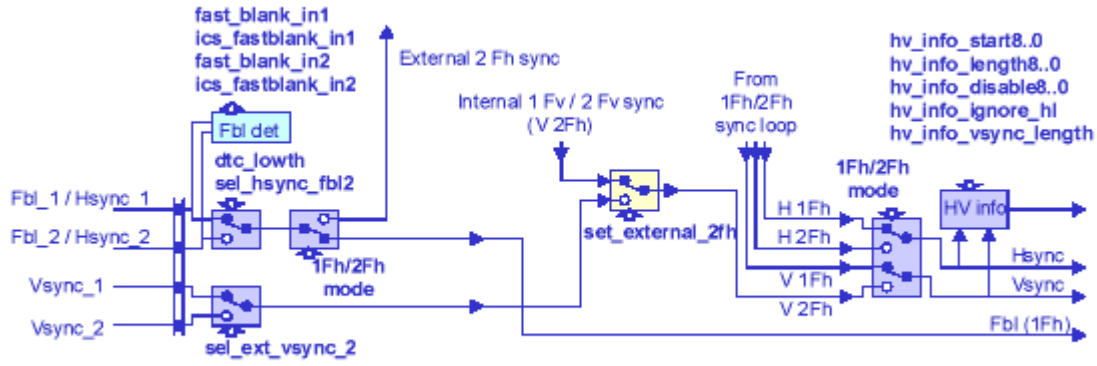


Figure 31: Fast blanking, External 2 Fh Composite Sync Input and Clamp Info

The circuit combines three functions:

- The fast blanking input for 1Fh mode
- The external H and V inputs for 2Fh mode
- Timing information for the clamping in the PNX3000 (hvinfo)

The Fast blanking input for 1Fh shares the pins with the inputs for Horizontal Sync in 2Fh mode.

Fast Blanking

In 1Fh mode, the Fast Blanking input controls in VIDDEC the switch between the output of the colour decoder (decoded CVBS or Y/C) and CVI input direct from PNX3000. It is possible to select one of the two Fast Blanking inputs with **sel_hsync_fbl2**. The slicing level of the input can be set on 1.65 Volt or 0.65 Volt. To fulfil the Fast Blanking spec for SCART (insertion for > 0.9 Volt), 0.65 volt slicing level must be selected. The status of both Fast Blanking inputs can be read (**fast_blank_in1/2**). A change in status can be signalled by an interrupt.

2Fh H and V input

In 2 Fh mode, the two Fast Blanking Inputs are configured as inputs for external Horizontal Sync. Also for these signals, the desired input can be selected with **sel_hsync_fbl2**. The slicing level is also set to 1.65 or 0.65 Volt, pending on **dtc_lowth**.

There are also two vertical inputs. Selection between the inputs is made by **sel_ext_vsync_2**. Selection in 2Fh mode between internal sync on Y and external sync is controlled by **sel_ext_2fh** for both horizontal and vertical sync.

HVinfo

The HVinfo block delivers the timing for correct clamping in the PNX3000 for the incoming CVBS, Y/C and CVI signals. The registers have to be programmed according to the signal property (1Fh, 2Fh, ATSC, vertical frequency)

Table 30: Bit Description - Fast Blanking - Address OX7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
004	17	fast_blank_in1	Reflects level of Fbl_1 input during vertical retrace Can be used to determine full RGB insertion on SCART		R
FE0	19	ics_fastblank_in1	Interrupt flag set to 1 when fast_blank_in1 changes See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		
004	18	fast_blank_in2	Reflects level of Fbl_2 input during vertical retrace Can be used to determine full RGB insertion on SCART		R
FE0	20	ics_fastblank_in2	Interrupt flag set to 1 when fast_blank_in2 changes See AGC part for explanation of the related interrupt control bits _enab, _clr and _set		
040	8	dtc_lowth	Selects the slicing level on the Fast Blanking/2Fh_Hsync inputs 0 Slicing level 1.65 Volt 1 Slicing level 0.65 Volt	1	R/W
0C0	4	sel_hsync_fbl2	Selects between the two Fbl / Hsync inputs: 0 Selects Fbl_1 / Hsync_1 1 Selects Fbl_2 / Hsync_2	0	R/W
040	7	sel_ext_vsync_2	Selects between the two Vsync inputs 0 Selects Vsync_1 1 Selects Vsync_2	0	R/W
		1Fh / 2Fh mode	Signal, coming from the GPIO (General Purpose I/0) block, controlling also the clocks Selects also the function from the Fbl / Hsync pins: 1 Fh: Fbl input 2 Fh: Hsync input.		
140	11	2 Fh: sel_ext_2fh	Selects between internal sync (on Y) or external H and V sync inputs 0 Internal sync on Y 1 External sync on H and V sync inputs	0/x	R/W
100	8..0	hv_info_start8..0	Feedback signal to MPIF for black level clamping Start position. Value pending on signal: All 1 Fh: 060 576p 2B 480p 2C ATSC 4B 1080i 50Hz 4 1152i 50Hz 2A	060/x	R/W

Table 30: Bit Description - Fast Blanking - Address OX7FF9xxx *...Continued*

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
104	8..0	hv_infolength8..0	width horizontal timing pulse. Value pending on signal: All 1 Fh: 048 576p 024 480p 024 ATSC 4B 1080i 50Hz 14 1152i 50Hz 24	048/x	R/W
108	8..0	hv_info_disable8..0	width during lines with clamp disabled. Value pending on signal : All 1 Fh: 080 576p 040 480p 040 ATSC 2C 1080i 50Hz 2C 1152i 50Hz 2C	80	R/W
	24	hv_info_ignore_hl	Must be set to 1 for all modes	1	R/W

fast_blank_in1/2

Reflects the status of the fast blanking input. When the input is above the slicing level set by **dtc_lowth** during vertical retrace, the bit is set to 1.

Fast Blanking is part of the SCART spec.

- A "low" level (< 0.3 Volt) on the Fast Blanking pin of the SCART connector connects the decoded CVBS to the display.
- A "high" level on the Fast Blanking pin (> 0.9 Volt) of the SCART connector must connect the RGB signals on the SCART connector to the display.

In both modes, the sync is always derived from the CVBS signal, CVBS and RGB must coincide.

The Fast Blanking input on the SCART is used for:

- Insertion of RGB for OSD (e.g. menus for control of external connected set top boxes) Fast Blanking only pulled high during insertion of the OSD itself.
- Insertion of RGB full screen for high quality pictures (e.g. DVD players in Europe) Fast Blanking pulled high continuously.

To distinguish between Full Insertion and OSD insertion, the level on the Fast Blanking pins is only checked during vertical retrace, which indicates full insertion.

Remark: Both inputs can be monitored independent of the selected Fast Blanking input. A change in status of both bits can be signalled by a separate interrupt. Only valid in 1Fh mode.

dtc_lowth

Works in both 1Fh and 2Fh mode. Selects the slicing level of the Fast Blanking / External Horizontal Sync inputs. The available levels are 1.65 Volt (**dtc_lowth** = 0) and 0.65 Volt (**dtc_lowth** = 1). To fulfil SCART norm (see above) in 1Fh, the slicing level must be below 0.9 Volt, so **dtc_lowth** must be set to 1 For External Horizontal Sync input in 2Fh mode, selection depends on the input signals. Usually the "low" level of an external sync must be below 0.5 Volt, so the slicing level can remain on 0.65 Volt.

sel_hsync_fbl2

Selects between the two Fast Blanking (1Fh) / External Horizontal Sync (2Fh) inputs.

sel_ext_vsync_2

Selects between the two External Vsync (2Fh) input pins. Is independent from the selection for the Horizontal Sync inputs.

1Fh/2Fh mode

See Section 4.4.7

sel_ext_2fh

Selects in 2Fh mode between horizontal and vertical sync, derived from the sync on Y and external H and V sync.

HV info block

For proper Analogue to Digital conversion, it is needed that the input signals in PNX3000 are clamped on black level. The HV info block provides the timing signals derived from the horizontal PLL and vertical counter to set the correct clamping timing in the PNX3000 for the CVBS, Y/C and CVI signals. The timing is coded in an analogue serial protocol, the properties are:

- Start of the clamping pulse for horizontal clamping
- Length of the horizontal clamping pulse
- No valid clamping info available (no horizontal lock)
- Vertical retrace, no proper black level clamping possible.

The information for disabling clamping and vertical retrace is coded in the length of the pulse after start of the clamping pulse. The HV_info signals can be measured at the appropriate pins of the PNX2000 and PNX3000.

The bit **hv_info_ignore_hl** is for test purposes and should be set to 1.The way, the different signals can be detected is discussed extensively in the previous chapter.

Programming

1Fh mode

For full SCART input, the fast YUV switch in the VIDDEC should be enabled to follow the signal on Fast Blanking input. (**fbl_switch_ctrl**, see next paragraph). For details of the set-up and programming see full SCART input.

CVBS + RGB insert via SCART.

The correct Fast Blanking input is selected using **sel_hsync_fbl2**(0= input 1, 1 = input 2). The slicing level must be set to 0.65 volt, **dtc_lowth** = 1 (= reset value) The reading of the Fast Blanking inputs (**Fast_Blank_in1/2**) can be used to check when full RGB insertion is performed, to adapt the settings in the processing chain for a good quality high bandwidth noise free input signal.

2Fh mode

Select for internal sync on Y or external H and V sync using **sel_ext_2fh** (0 = internal, 1 = external) In case of external H and V sync, select the correct H and V inputs using **sel_hsync_fbl2** (0 = input 1, 1 = input 2) and **sel_ext_vsync_2** (0 = input1, 1 = input 2).

HV_info

The bits **hv_info_start**, **hv_info_length**, **hv_info_disable** and **hv_info_vsync_length** Should be set according to the properties of the found input signal. (see table in bit description) For all 1Fh signals, there is one setting. For 2 Fh signals, different settings are needed for 576p, 480p and 2Fh Interfaced Modes. The bit **hv_info_ignore_hl** should be kept 1 (= reset value).

4.4.6.6 YUV Switch + Formatter

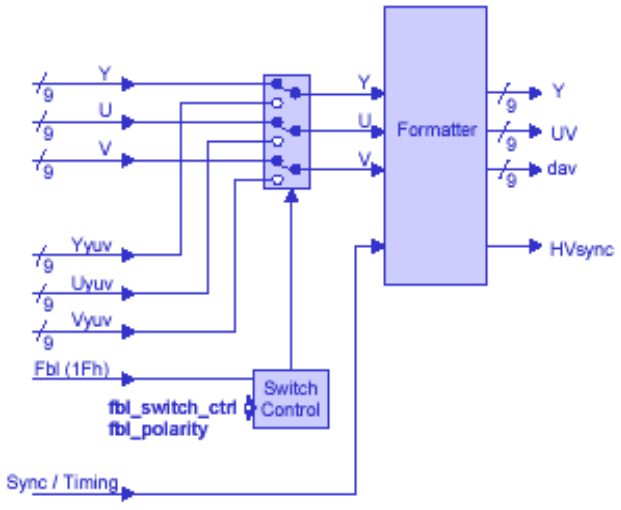


Figure 32: YUV Switch and Formatter

The YUV switch is a fast switch, which can switch on pixel base between the internal YUV from the colour decoder and the external YUV from the CVI inputs in the PNX3000.

The switch can be controlled by an external signal on the Fast Blanking input or forced by software to display YUV from the colour decoder or the external YUV from the CVI inputs from PNX3000 (**fbl_switch_ctrl**) The polarity of the Fast Blanking signal can be set using **fbl_polarity**.

Table 31: Bit Description - YUV Switch - Address 0X7FF9xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
0C0	11..10	fbl_switch_ctrl	Fast Blanking switch control 00 Fast blanking input controls the switch 01 Switch forced to YUV output of colour decoder 10 Switch forced to external YUV input signal 11 Fast blanking input controls the switch	0/x	R/W
	12	fbl_polarity	Determines the polarity of the Fast Blanking input 0 Fast Blank input low switches to external YUV 1 Fast Blank input high switches to external YUV	1	R/W

fbl_switch_ctrl

Different settings are needed for different input signals conditions.

00

The switch is controlled by the Fast Blanking signal, connected to the selected Fast Blanking input. This mode should only be enabled when a full SCART socket is selected with RGB insertion capability. The Fast Blanking input should be selected where the Fast Insertion pin of the SCART connector is connected to. The selected CVBS input should be connected to the CVBS input pin of the same SCART connector, providing the sync for full RGB insertion or the picture with via RGB inserted OSD. When the SCART input is no longer selected, the **fbl_switch_control** should not be kept 00, because in that case the Fast Blanking signal on that SCART still controls the YUV switch. Because there are two Fast Blanking inputs, it is possible to have two Full Scart configurations with their own Fast Blanking input. Note that in this case no input is left over for an external 2Fh horizontal sync

01

Normal setting when CVBS or Y/C signal is connected. Forces the switch to display the decoded YUV from the colour decoder.

10

Forces the switch to display the YUV signals coming from the CVI inputs of the PNX3000. Setting for YPrPb input signals without a Fast Blanking signal to control the switch. Also the setting for all 2Fh CVI input signals (YPrPb and RGB with internal or external sync).

11

Same as 00, do not use.

fbl_polarity

For flexibility. When working according to SCART norm, should be kept 0.

Programming

Program **fbl_switch_ctrl** according to the selected input. For details of full SCART use, see **CVBS + RGB insert via SCART**. Only for deviating designs, it might be helpful that the polarity of the Fast Blanking input can be reversed using **fbl_polarity**.

4.4.7 Switching VIDDEC between 1Fh and 2Fh

The VIDDEC can be switched in 1Fh and 2Fh mode.

In 1 Fh mode, the functionality available is:

- CVBS
- Y/C
- CVBS + RGB insert
- YPrPb, sync on Y

In 2Fh mode, the functionality available is:

- YPrPb with sync on Y or external H/V sync (576p, 480p, 2Fh Interfaced Modes)
- RGB with Sync On Green (SOG) or external H/V sync (576p, 480p)

To switch the VIDDEC from 1Fh to 2Fh or vice versa, a clock frequency outside the VIDDEC has to be doubled (or halved) and all registers of the VIDDEC have to be reset. The reset is needed to ensure a reliable working of the VIDDEC after clock switching. This means that after switching 1Fh/2Fh mode, all registers with a value, different from the reset value, have to be initialised by software.

The control registers for switching and resetting the VIDDEC are located in the GPR (General Purpose Registers) block of the PNX2000.

Table 32: 1Fh/2Fh Switching - Address OX7FF7xxx

add xxx	Bits	Name	Function	R/D	R/W
010	All	gp_vidclksel	Selects clock frequency for the blocks BEF, primary and secondary VIDDEC		R/W
	1	gp_dtofreqsel_vid	Selects 1Fh or 2Fh mode for primary VIDDEC 0. 1 Fh mode (clock = 27 MHz) 1. 2 Fh mode (clock = 54 MHz)	0	R/W
064	All	gp_vid_resets	Controls reset of all Video Core blocks R/W		
	12	gp_vid_reset_vd1_n	Resets the primary VIDDEC block (Active low) 0. Reset 1. Normal mode		

Hints to switch 1Fh/2Fh mode

Because the switching of mode resets all registers, first all registers which contain User Control settings which cannot be derived from the planned signal source or signal properties have to be saved.

The only practical value for 1Fh will be the customer HUE setting (**dmsd_huec**). For 2Fh, we do not expect that customer preferences have to be saved for VIDDEC. Because the control bits are only 1 of the 32 bits of the register, first the register has to be read to ensure that all other bits are not changed.

To switch the clock:

- First force the VIDDEC in reset by setting **gp_vid_reset_vd1_n** = 0
- Switch clock by setting **gp_dtofreqsel_vid1** (0 for 1Fh, 1 for 2Fh)
- End the reset by writing **gp_vid_reset_vd1_n** = 1

After releasing the reset all registers needing a value, different from the reset value, have to be programmed by software.

Only a few registers need programming, because their default value is different from the reset value. The value for most registers is determined by the properties of the selected channel or by the properties of the detected input signal. Finally, some registers have to be programmed according to the diversity settings. Depending on the use of interrupts, the interrupt section has to be cleared and enabled, else these registers can maintain their reset value and need no programming.

System aspects

Besides the VIDDEC, the whole video path in PNX2000 and PNX3000 have to be set in 2Fh mode. The most important items are:

- **PNX3000,** Selection of the **mode** bit (0 = 1Fh mode, 1 = 2Fh mode)
- **I2D receiver,** Selection of the receiver mode, **demux_mode2..0** (0 / 1 = 1Fh mode 0a / 0b 2 = 2Fh mode)
- **PNX8550**

Though this list is certainly not complete, it helps to get at least the path in such mode, you can see a picture on the screen. For more info about selecting 1Fh and 2Fh sources, see also **CVI input selection**

4.4.8 Use of interrupt bits

Most status bits are coupled to interrupt bits. When enabled, these interrupt bits can generate an interrupt each time the status bit changes. To control the interrupt behaviour, for each interrupt one bit in 4 registers is available.

Table 33: Interrupt Bits

Name	Function	R/W
ics_xxxx (xxxx = register name	Indicates that the status of the corresponding status register is changed, or from 0 ->1 or from 1->0. 0. No change 1. Changed	R

Table 33: Interrupt Bits ...Continued

Name	Function	R/W
ics_xxxx_enab	Enables the interrupt from the corresponding status register	R/W
ics_xxxx_clr	Sets the corresponding interrupt bit to 0	
ics_xxxx_set	Forces the corresponding interrupt bit to 1 Meant for testing. Can be used to check whether the software reacts correct upon generating an interrupt.	R/W

The software can use the interrupt bits in two ways:

Interrupt driven structure

The interrupts of the relevant status bits are enabled using **ics_xxx_enab**. When an interrupt is received, the interrupt registers are read to find which status bit generated the interrupt (**ics_xxx**) When the interrupt source is found, software can execute the needed activities.

Remark: The interrupt bit must be cleared by software using the corresponding **ics_xxx_clr** bit, it is not cleared by reading. After clearing and serving the interrupt the software can continue its main loop.

Polled structure

Also when the interrupts are not used, the interrupt bits still can fulfil a useful function. When polling the status bits every XX msec, it is possible that a short glitch is not detected. By reading the corresponding interrupt bit (**ics_xxx**), the interrupt bit will tell whether the status has changed of the corresponding status bit after the last clearance. In this way, the interrupt bit can fulfil a latch function.

4.4.9 Automatic selection of different input signal formats

In this section we will discuss methods to distinguish automatically between different input signal formats. We distinguish 3 different use cases, which can be combined when appropriate.

- CVBS

Y/C input

- CVBS

RGB input

- CVI (Component Video Input signals) like

YPrPb 1 Fh

YPrPb 2 Fh

RGB + external H/V sync 2 Fh.

ATSC with tri-level sync on Y

Each case will be worked out in the chapters on the next pages. The last use case (CVI) still needs to be updated after measurements with Avip to optimise the correct recognition of 1Fh and 2Fh input signals.

4.4.9.1 CVBS or Y/C Input Selection

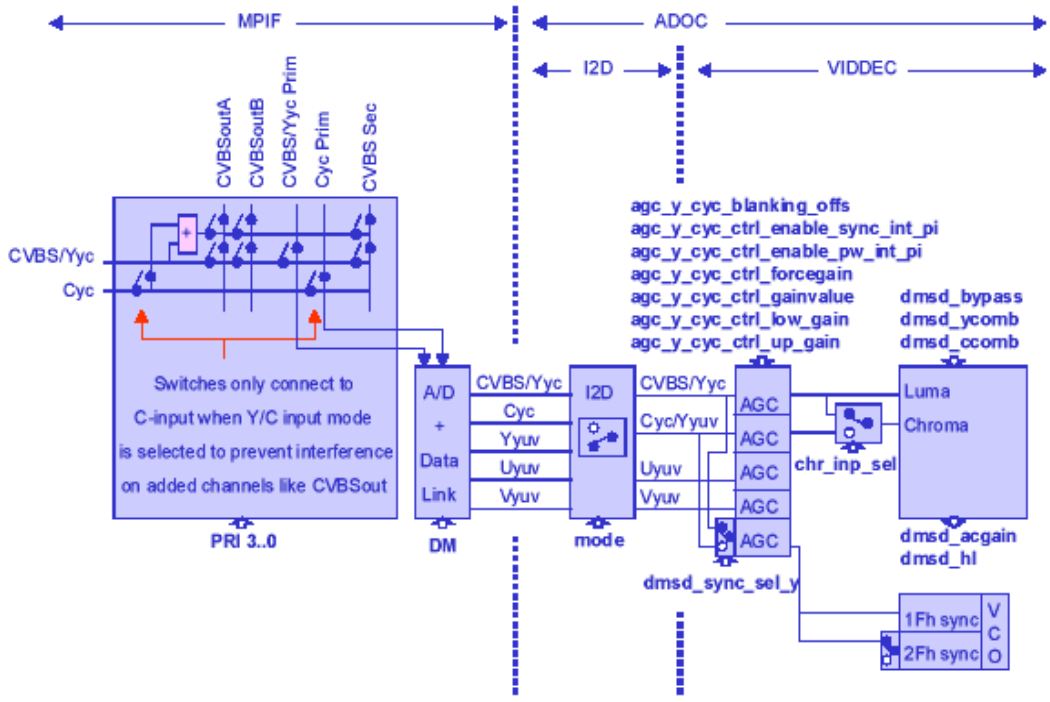


Figure 33: Block Diagram CVBS / YC Selection

The algorithm to distinguish between these two inputs is quite straight forward.

We use the register **dmsd_acgain**. With this register we can read out the amplification of the colour AGC. This measurement can be done for the CVBS/Y channel and for the C channel. The channel with the **lowest** value in **dmsd_acgain** has the largest chroma amplitude and will therefore be the channel carrying the colour information.

The proposed algorithm works fine, but the detection time for a reliable automatic detection may run up to 2 seconds. The long detection time is related to the long time needed to ensure reliable colour system recognition, especially when switching from a 50Hz source to a 60 Hz source or vice versa. The value of **dmsd_acgain** is not reliable unless the colour system is recognised. If automatic detection of 2 seconds is considered too long, possible alternatives are:

- Use two menu items for the combined CVBS/YC connector, one configured for CVBS and one configured for YC. The customer can decide himself by watching whether the picture has colour or is Black and White which is the right selection.

- Use a mechanical switch to indicate whether a cable is connected to the CVBS input or Y/C input (only possible when connectors are cinch for CVBS and 4-pin mini-din for Y/C). Software can readout the pin status via an I/O port and configure the correct settings.

Algorithm example

An algorithm could look like this:

- PNX3000: Select for the Primary Channel an input with Y/C capacity (YC3 or YC4) (**PRI3..0** = 1 0 1 1 for YC3 or 1 1 0 0 for YC4). You have to select the input YC mode and not CVBS mode for the inputs, because only in the YC mode the C input is connected to the Primary C channel. The CVBS/Y channel of the Primary Channel will carry CVBS or Y, regardless CVBS mode or YC mode has been selected.
- PNX3000: Ensure that the correct Data Mode is chosen (1Fh) by setting **DM** = 0.
- I2D: Select in the I2D decoder mode 0a, **I2D_mode** = 0 0. In this mode, the I2D receiver selects the C channel for the (combined) C/Yyuv channel. Both CVBS/Y and C channel are now available at the VIDDEC inputs.
- VIDDEC: Select Y/C mode by setting the AGC settings for the C/Yyuv channel in Y/C mode (see chapter XXX) and setting chr_inp_del = 1. This connects the C/Yyuv channel to the colour decoder input.
- VIDDEC: Wait first 50 msec. to avoid problems with latency. Check whether there is horizontal lock (dmsd_hl = 1) to guarantee proper timing and gating.
- VIDDEC Wait until a colour system is found. If found, continue to next step, else wait maximum 1 second to proceed to the next step.
- VIDDEC: Read out dmsd_acgain and store the value. This reflects the chroma content on the C input.
- VIDDEC: Switch over to CVBS mode by connecting the CVBS/Y channel to the colour decoder input, setting chr_inp_del = 0.
- VIDDEC Wait first 50 msec. to avoid latency problems. Wait until a colour system is found. If found, continue to next step, else wait maximum 1 second to proceed to the next step. If the found colour system is SECAM, select CVBS mode with Yyuv, U, V available. SECAM leads to maximum reading of dmsd_acgain and no SECAM Y/C exists.
- VIDDEC: Read out dmsd_acgain and compare the value with the stored value for the C input. The **lowest** value indicates the channel having the highest burst amplitude and will therefore carry the colour information. If both read out maximum, the signal is Black and White (or SECAM) and CVBS mode with Yyuv u, V must be selected.
- I2D, PNX3000: If this is the CVBS/Y channel, it is CVBS. Switch back the I2D receiver to 1Fh default mode 0b (mode = 0 1) to have both CVBS and Yyuv, U and V available at the VIDDEC inputs and set the PNX3000 input selector back

to CVBS input (PRI3..0 = 0 0 1 1 for CVBS3 or 0 1 0 0 for CVBS4) to prevent that interference on the C channel is added to the CVBS/Y channel for CVBSout A or B.

- VIDDEC: If this is the C/Yyuv channel, it is Y/C. Then it is needed to set chr_inp_del = 1 and set dmsd_byps = 1, dmsd_ycomb = 0 and dmsd_ccomb = 0 for a flat response.

General/Specific use of the algorithm in software

For different blocks, the possible use of the algorithm is:

- **PNX3000** Common

Selection of 1 Fh mode for data link should be "standard".

- **PNX3000** (Source select): Specific

Of course, Y/C mode can only be selected when the input supports this mode. For PNX3000, these are only the inputs CVBS/Y3 + C3 and CVBS/Y4 + C4. The separate YC input for 3D combfilter is always in YC mode but there is no objection to also use the algorithm for this input.

- **I2D receiver**: Specific

Each time the CVBS/YC source is changed, the algorithm can be applied, but in view of the long detection time it is best to limit the algorithm to only those sources that need it.

- **VIDDEC**: Specific

Each time the CVBS/YC source is changed, the algorithm can be applied, but in view of the long detection time it is best to limit the algorithm to only those sources that need it.

4.4.9.2 CVBS + RGB Insert via SCART

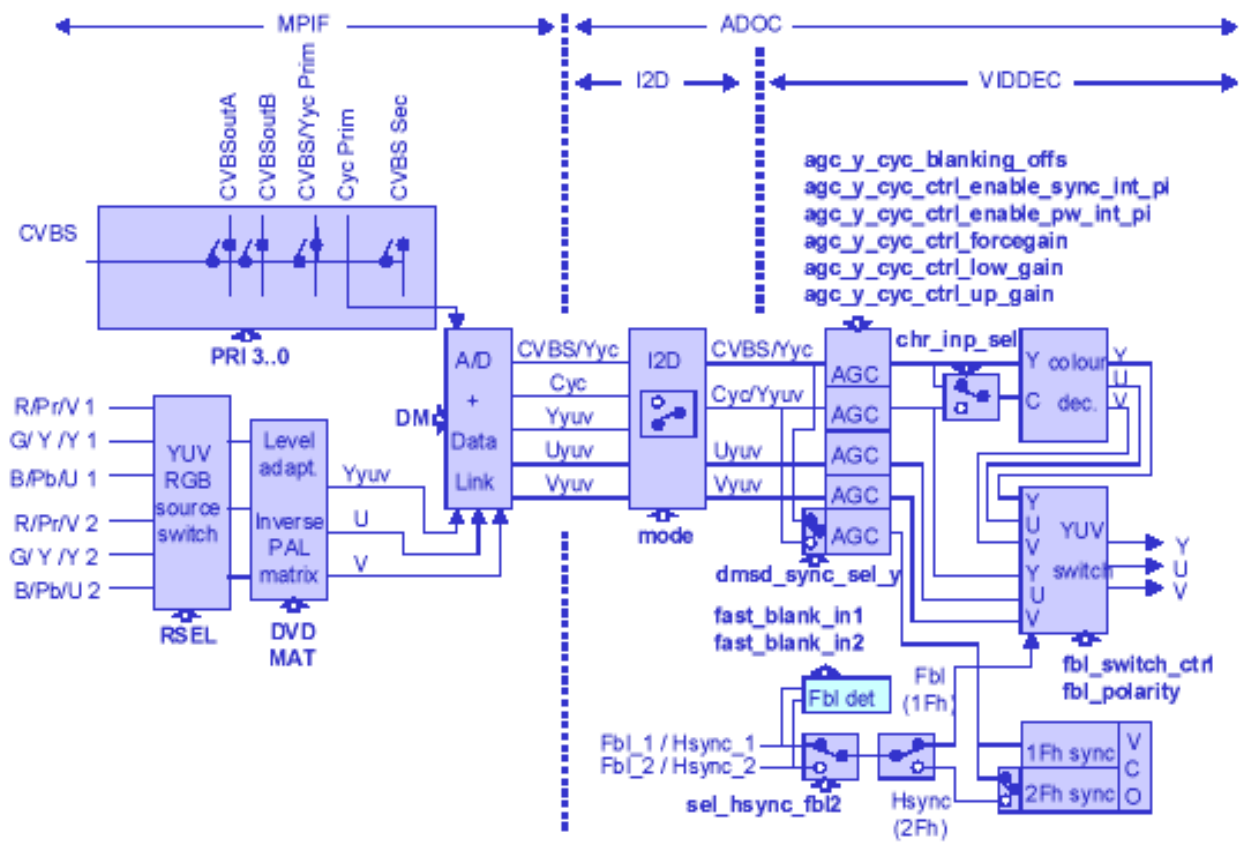


Figure 34: Block diagram full SCART input (CVBS + RGB + Fast Blanking)

This condition is meant for "full" SCART inputs according to the official "Peritel" norm. These SCART connectors provide a CVBS input and a RGB input. To switch automaticly to the RGB signals, a Fast Blanking signal is provided on pin 16 of the SCART connector. When this signal is "high" (> 0.3 Volt) then RGB input must be selected. The Fast Blanking signal bandwidth is high enough to enable CVBS with an overlay of inserted OSD via the RGB input. Some descramblers use this option, mainly Channel plus decoders in France.

Nowadays also European DVD players provide an RGB output for better signal quality, but then the Fast Insertion is made continuously high. In both cases (OSD insertion or full picture insertion) the synchronisation is taken from the (accompanying) CVBS input. To handle such input, both CVBS and the to YUV converted RGB signals must be routed to the VIDDEC. The Fast Blanking input, connected to pin 16 of the selected SCART must be enabled

Remark: The CVBS and CVI inputs are located on the PNX3000, while the Fast Blanking Inputs are part of the VIDDEC in the PNX2000.

Algorithm example

An example for such input:

- Check (via e.g. a properties list) that the selected input is a "full" SCART with RGB insertion possibility. Needed info:
- Connector has RGB insertion possibility
- To which FBL input is the Fast Blanking pin connected (1 or 2).
- PNX3000: Select with **PRI_3..0** for the Primary Channel the correct CVBS input (for "Full" SCART Y/C is not possible)
- PNX3000: Select the CVI input where the RGB signals are connected (**RSEL**) Select as format RGB input (**MAT, DVD** = 1 0)
- PNX3000: Ensure that the correct Data Mode is chosen (1Fh) by setting **DM** = 0.
- I2D: Select mode 0b, **I2D_mode** = 0 1. In this mode Yyuv channel is selected for the combined C/Yyuv channel. Now CVBS, Yyuv, Uyuv and Vyuv are available at the input of the VIDDEC.
- VIDDEC: Set the AGC settings of the C/Yyuv channel for Yyuv signal in RGB mode. Because there is no sync on RGB, a combination of peak white limiting and AGC range limitation is used. The range is limited by setting the appropriate values for upper and lower gain of the AGC in the C/Yyuv channel.
- VIDDEC: Ensure that the sync from CVBS is selected for synchronisation setting **dmsd_sync_sel_y** = 0 (not needed if this is default mode)
- VIDDEC: Ensure that CVBS mode is selected for the colour decoder by setting **chr_inp_del** = 0 (not needed if this is the 'default" mode)
- VIDDEC: Select the Fast Blanking input where the Fast Blanking signal of that SCART is connected (**sel_hsync_fbl2**)
- VIDDEC: Enable the Fast Blanking input by setting **fbl_switch_ctrl** = 0 0.
- VIDDEC: Optionaly read back the status of **fast_blank_in1** or **fast_blank_in2** (depending on the selected Fast Blanking Input pin) to check whether full RGB insertion is applied (to know the displayed signal has RGB quality to optimise settings)

General/Specific use of the algorithm in software

For different blocks, the possible use of the algorithm is:

- **PNX3000** (Source select): Specific set-up of CVBS input together with the RGB input is only needed when a full specified SCART connector is selected. So only apply when the connector property indicates full SCART.
- **I2D**: Common Selection of mode 0b should be the "standard" setting for the I2D receiver
- **VIDDEC**: Common Selection of sync on CVBS should be "standard" Selection of CVBS mode for the colour decoder should be "standard"

- **VIDDEC**: Specific All items below are related to the selection of a "full" scart input:
  - AGC for Yyuv channel in RGB mode
  - Selection of Fast Blanking input
  - Enabling of Fast Blanking input
  - Read-back of RGB insertion status

4.4.9.3 CVI Input Selection

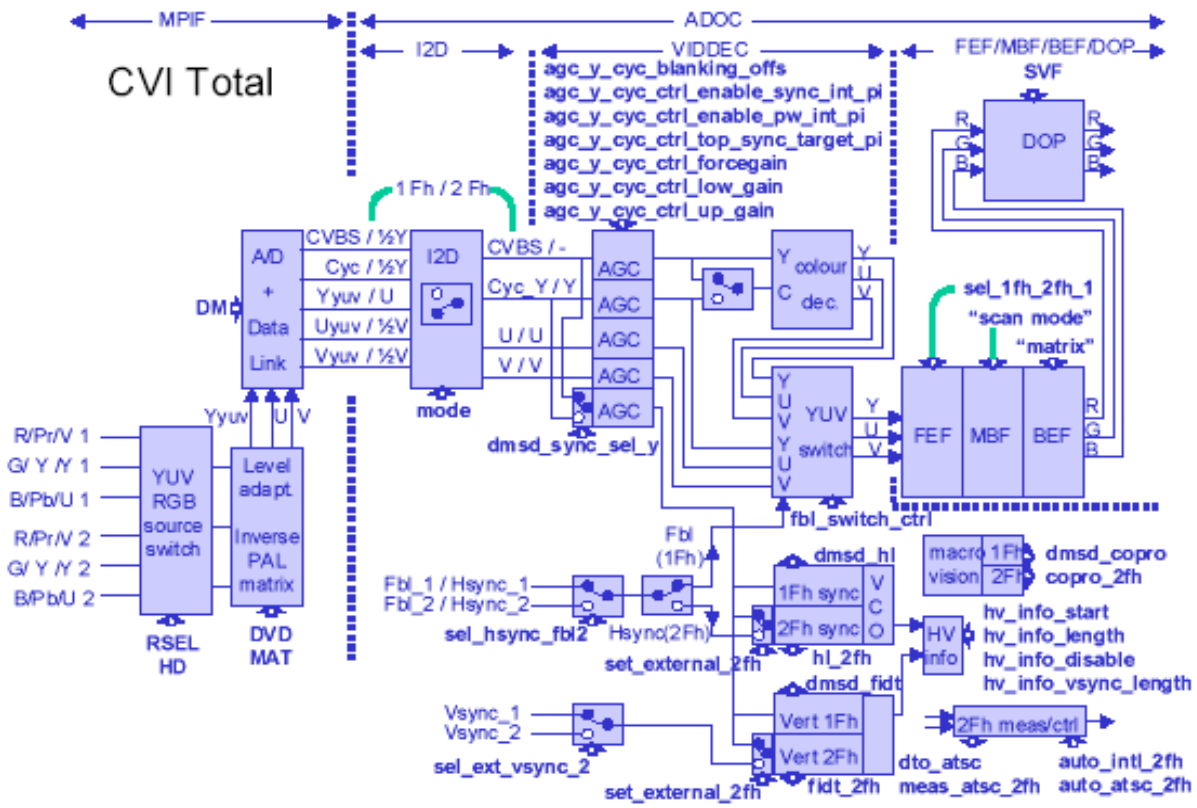


Figure 35: Block diagram CVI input selection

The detection between 1Fh and 2Fh signals is more complex than described in this part. The reason is that the 1Fh Hlock and 2Fh Hlock both can indicate incorrect lock. The 1 Fh lock, **dmsd_hl**, also can indicate false lock for 2Fh signals with VIDDEC in 1Fh mode and also for 1Fh signals with VIDDEC in 2Fh mode. The 2Fh lock can indicate false lock for 1Fh signals with VIDDEC in 2Fh mode.

Measurements with the final device will have to show whether we can find a reliable workaround by using other status bits to determine a unique difference between 1Fh and 2Fh input signals. Checking only whether **dmsd_hl** finds lock in 1Fh or **hl_2fh** finds lock in 2Fh to decide whether a 1Fh or 2Fh signal is present is not reliable. The rest of the procedure will stay identical.

The following CVI (Component Video Input) signals are supported by the system:

List 1: Supported formats

1 Fh:

- RGB with sync on CVBS and Fast Blanking (SCART norm, see previous chapter)
- RGB with Sync On Green (SOG)
- YPrPb with sync on Y

2 Fh:

- YPrPb 576p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 480p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 576p, progressive, Sync On Green, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 480p, progressive, Sync On Green, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 576p, progressive, Ext. H / V Sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 480p, progressive, Ext. H / V Sync, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 576p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 480p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- ATSC 1080i, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 33750 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- ATSC 1080i, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, , Fhor. = 33750 Hz (2Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1080i, 50Hz, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 28125 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1080i, 50Hz, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 28125 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1152i, 50Hz, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31250 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1152i, 50Hz, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)

Not all these formats are used in practice by video equipment. We already excluded the proprietary Philips YUV format, because it is not used by any external video equipment To establish an auto search algorithm for CVI inputs, we should limit the

formats to the ones, used in practice. For auto detection, we should realise we cannot distinguish between an RGB format and a YPrPb format, provided both have "internal" sync (on G for RGB or Y for YPrPb) or External sync.

So the following signals are the same for the system and cannot be uniquely identified:

List 2: Formats, which cannot be uniquely identified

1 Fh:

- RGB with Sync On Green (SOG)
- YPrPb with sync on Y

2 Fh:

- YPrPb 576p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 576p, progressive, Sync On Green, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 480p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 480p, progressive, Sync On Green, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 576p, progressive, Ext. H / V Sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 576p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 480p, progressive, Ext. H / V Sync, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 480p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)

From each of the pairs mentioned, one should be selected for the search loop. Best is to exclude those signals, which are not commonly used in practice. I propose therefore to omit the following formats:

- All YPrPb formats with External H and V sync.
- All RGB formats with Sync On Green

Further it is practical to leave out RGB with Sync on CVBS and Fast Blanking (SCART norm), this is a special case when a "full SCART" input is selected. The procedure for such input is described in the previous chapter **2.7.2 CVBS + RGB insert via SCART**. This leaves the list below for an automatic CVI search algorithm:

List 3: Proposed formats for an automatic search loop for CVI signals

1 Fh:

- YPrPb with sync on Y

2 Fh:

- YPrPb 576p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 480p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 576p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 480p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- ATSC 1080i, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 33750 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- ATSC 1080i, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, , Fhor. = 33750 Hz (2Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1080i, 50Hz, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 28125 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1080i, 50Hz, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 28125 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1152i, 50Hz, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31250 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- 1152i, 50Hz, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)

Now each signal has at least one unique parameter, which enables to identify the correct format.

Remark: The formats, not included in the automatic search loop can still be manual selected if required. It is possible to make another automatic search list, provided form each of the pairs mentioned in **List 2** only one is chosen.

The distinguishing parameters for detection are:

- 1 Fh or 2 Fh

and further in case it is 2 Fh:

- Internal sync (sync on Y) or External sync
- 50 Hz or 60 Hz
- ATSC or non-ATSC

Algorithm example

An example for an auto detection algorithm is given below. The search order in this algorithm is:

1 Fh:

- YPrPb with sync on Y

2Fh:

- ATSC 1080i, interlaced, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 33750 Hz ("2Fh"), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 576p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- YPrPb 480p, progressive, Sync on Y, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- ATSC 1080i, interlaced, Ext. H / V sync, , Fhor. = 33750 Hz (2Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 576p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31250 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 50 Hz (1 Fv)
- RGB 480p, progressive, Ext. H / V sync, Fhor. = 31500 Hz (2 Fh), Fvert. = 60 Hz (1 Fv)

General

- Check (e.g. via a property list) what formats the selected CVI input supports. Non-supported input formats do not have to be checked. Further, in case of support of External Sync input, check which H and V inputs are used.
- PNX3000 Select using **RSEL** the appropriate CVI input on the PNX3000
- VIDDEC Select the external YUV path by setting **fbl_switch_ctrl** = 1 0
- It is assumed that VIDDEC is in 1Fh mode. Because 2Fh is only possible on the CVI inputs and external 2Fh signals are not so common, 1 Fh should be the 'default" setting for VIDDEC. This implies that the VIDDEC should always be in 1 Fh mode before switching to another input.

1 Fh detection

- PNX3000 Set **MAT,DVD** to 0 1 to select YPrPb format
- PNX3000 Ensure that the correct Data Format is chosen (1 Fh) by setting **DM** = 0
- I2D: Select mode 0b, **I2D_mode** = 0 1. In this mode Yyuv channel is selected for the combined C/Yyuv channel. Now Yyuv, Uyuv and Vyuv are available at the input of the VIDDEC
- VIDDEC : Set the AGC settings of the C/Yyuv channel for standard Yyuv signal in YprPb mode without macrovision. (see Table 3 1Fh YPrPb 50/60Hz)

- VIDDEC Select to take the sync from the Yyuv channel by setting **dmsd_sync_sel_y** = 1.
- VIDDEC: **To be updated. More bits needed to detect unique 1Fh!!** Check for horizontal lock by checking for **dmsd_hl** = 1 for 40 msec. If horizontal lock is found, VIDDEC Check for 50 or 60 Hz, reading **dmsd_fidt**.
- If 0, signal is 50 Hz
- VIDDEC Set **dmsd_vsta** and **dmsd_vsto** (see Table 24 1Fh YPrPb 50 Hz

If 1, signal is 60 Hz.

- VIDDEC Set **dmsd_vsta** and **dmsd_vsto** (see Table 24 1Fh YPrPb 60 Hz

VIDDEC Check for macrovision reading **dmsd_copro.** If **dmsd_copro** = 1, (macrovision detected), adapt the value of the sync AGC register **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** to 118 (in stead of 100 for normal operation)

Exit the auto detection algorithm. If no horizontal lock is found, continue.

2 Fh detection

Switch to 2Fh mode

- PNX3000 Select 2 Fh YUV throughput by setting **DM** = 1
- I2D Select 2 Fh YUV throughput by selecting mode 2 setting **mode** = 1 0
- VIDDEC Switch VIDDEC0 to 2 Fh mode. See separate procedure.
- PNX3000 Set **MAT,DVD** to 0 1 to select YPrPb format
- VIDDEC : Set the AGC settings of the C/Yyuv channel for Yyuv signal in 2Fh YprPb 50/60 Hz mode.
- VIDDEC Select to take the sync from the Yyuv channel by setting **dmsd_sync_sel_y** = 1
- VIDDEC Ensure that automatic adaptation for interlace is selected (**auto_intl_2fh** = 1) and automatic adaptation of the H and V counter for ATSC is enabled (**auto_atsc_2fh** = 1). Both values are set correct after a reset.
- VIDDEC **To be updated. More bits needed to detect unique 2Fh!!** Check for horizontal lock by checking for **hl_2fh** = 1 for 40 msec.

When horizontal lock is found:

- VIDDEC Check for ATSC by reading **dto_atsc** or **meas_atsc_2fh**.= 1 If 1, the source is identified as ATSC 1080i input with tri-level sync on Y.
- PNX3000 Select ATSC clamping mode by setting **HD** = 1
- VIDDEC Select tri-level sync by setting **set_3l_2fh** = 1
- VIDDEC Set interlaced mode by setting **foet_2fh** = 1

- VIDDEC Set **hv-info_start/length/disable/vsync_length** and **vsto_2fh** / **vsta_2fh**, **hrefs_2fh / hrefs_2fh** according table XX for ATSC format

Exit the auto detection algorithm. If 0, source is not ATSC, continue.

- Check that **intl_2fh** or **meas_intl_2fh** = 0 to indicate a progressive input. If progressive input, signal is identified as YPrPb 576p or 480p with sync on Y.
- VIDDEC Set progressive mode by setting **foet_2fh** = 1
- VIDDEC Check for the vertical frequency by reading **fidt_2fh** If **fidt_2fh** = 0, signal is YPrPb 576p, sync on Y, 50 Hz.
- VIDDEC Set **hv_info_start/length/disable/vsync_length** and **vsto_2fh** / **vsta_2fh**, **hrefs_2fh / hrefs_2fh** according table XX 2Fh YPrPb 576p.
- VIDDEC Set **hv_info_start/length/disable/vsync_length** and **vsto_2fh** / **vsta_2fh**, **hrefs_2fh / hrefs_2fh** according table XX 2Fh YPrPb 480p
- VIDDEC Check for macrovision reading **copro_2fh**. If **copro_2fh** = 1, (macrovision detected), adapt the value of the sync AGC register **agc_y_cyc_ctrl_top_sync_target_pi** to 118 (in stead of 100 for normal operation)

Exit the auto detection algorithm. If interlaced but non-ATSC, signal format is not supported. Exit and display an error message. When no lock is found, continue.

- VIDDEC Select external sync input. Set **sel_hsync_fbl2** and **sel_ext_vsync2** to select the correct external H and V input Select external sync by setting **sel_ext_2fh** = 1
- VIDDEC Check for horizontal lock by checking for **hl_2fh** = 1 for 40 msec.
- When horizontal lock is found:
- VIDDEC Check for ATSC by reading **dto_atsc** or **meas_atsc_2fh**.= 1 If 1, the source is identified as ATSC 1080i input with external H and V sync..
- PNX3000 Select ATSC clamping mode by setting **HD** = 1
- VIDDEC Select forced odd/even toggle (interlace) by setting **foet_2fh** = 1
- VIDDEC Set **hv-info_start/length/disable/vsync_length** and **vsto_2fh** / **vsta_2fh**, **hrefs_2fh / herefs_2fh** according table XX for ATSC format

Exit auto detection algorithm. If 0, source is not ATSC, continue.

- Check that **intl_2fh** or **meas_intl_2fh** = 0 to indicate a progressive input. If progressive input, signal is identified as RGB 576p or 480p with external H and V sync.
- PNX3000 Select RGB input by setting **MAT,DVD** = 1 0
- VIDDEC : Set the AGC settings of the C/Yyuv channel for Yyuv signal in RGB mode according table XX 2Fh RGB 576p/480p
- VIDDEC Select progressive mode by setting **foet_2fh** = 1

- VIDDEC Check for the vertical frequency by reading **fidt_2fh** If **fidt_2fh** = 0, signal is RGB 576p, external H and V sync, 50 Hz
- VIDDEC Set **hv_info_start/length/disable/vsync_length** and **vsto_2fh** / **vsta_2fh**, **hrefs_2fh / herefs_2fh** according table XX 2Fh RGB 576p
- VIDDEC Set **hv_info_start/length/disable/vsync_length** and **vsto_2fh** / **vsta_2fh**, **hrefs_2fh / herefs_2fh** according table XX 2Fh RGB 480p
- Exit the auto detection algorithm. If interlaced, signal format is not supported. Exit and display an error message. When no lock is found, continue.
- No 2Fh source found. Switch back to 1Fh mode and restore default settings.
- PNX3000 Select 1 Fh YUV throughput by setting **DM** = 0
- I2D Select 1 Fh YUV throughput by selecting mode 0b setting **mode** = 0 1
- VIDDEC Switch VIDDEC to 1 Fh mode. See separate procedure..

The total procedure can be repeated 10 times from 1 Fh detection till here. If not successful, it is best to stop in 1 Fh mode (YPrPb, sync on Y) and display a message. When switching to another input, the VIDDEC should be set in 1 Fh mode and the settings of the affected bits must be restored.

Remark: To speed up the detection once a signal format is found, the found format can be stored. When the CVI input is again selected, the loop might start at the format, found the previous time. The check on macrovision (**dmsd_copro** and **copro_2fh**) must be done on regular intervals, because the customer can change the disk/tape without changing the input.

Chapter 5: Data Capture Unit

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

5.1 Summary of Functions

The purpose of the Data Capture Unit (DCU) is to acquire digital data (containing Teletext, Closed Captions, etc.) from a CVBS video input source or the Y component, perform processing on the received data and stream it out to the ITU formatter unit.

The CVBS signal or Y component from the I^2D receiver are supplied to the DCU in digitized form, and are processed by the data slicer section (MULVIP) to extract the serial data and its associated clock. The serial data is assembled into bytes by the SERPAR section, and subsequently the bytes into packets which are then fed out to the ITU 656 formatter. Received packets of certain data types can be optionally processed to perform error checking and decoding functions.

Control of the DCU is via programmable registers, which are accessible through a PI-Bus Slave port. This also produces two configurable interrupts, one at field rate and one to signal that a data packet has been received.

Remark: $2f_H$ video signals are not supported by the DCU.

5.2 Block Diagram

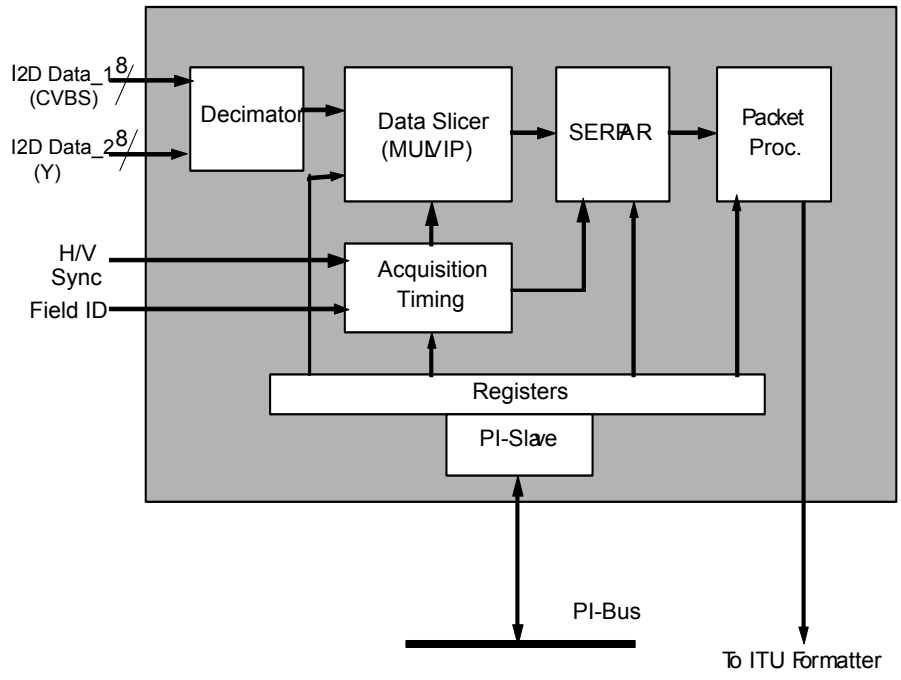


Figure 1: Block Diagram of the Data Capture Unit

5.2.1 Block Description

- Decimator: Reduces sample rate (from 27MHz to 13.5MHz) of incoming Digitized CVBS or Y data stream from I^2D Receiver
- Data Slicer: Reconstructs the transmitted bit stream and associated clock from the video input
- Serpar: Serial to Parallel converter - converts serial data into bytes
- Acquisition Timing: Locks onto sync signals, and provides timing information to other sections of data capture circuitry
- Packet Formatter: Performs data decoding and some error correction; assembles received bytes into a packet structure and streams out data to ITU 656 Formatter
- PI-Slave: Interfaces control and status registers to the PI Bus

5.3 Design Specification

The fundamental principle of the DCU is that of specifying a data type to be captured for each line and field of the incoming video signal. The data types supported are listed in Table 18 ‘Data Types’.

VBI mode text may be transmitted multiplexed on a 525 or 625 line composite video transmission; the video lines available for text and related services are specified in the table below. Full field text uses all available TV lines to transmit teletext data, giving a maximum of 305 packets per field.

Table 1: VBI Mode Text - Line Numbers

Data Type	525 Line	625 line
Teletext	10 to 21,273 to 284	6 to 22, 318 to 335
VPS	Not Available	16
WSS	20 and 283	23
Line 21 Data (CC)	21 and 284	22 and 335

5.4 Data Packet Formats

This section describes the contents of the data packets of the various data types supported by the DCU.

Table 2: Data Packet Structure

	Data Packet Byte Number								
Data Type	0 - 1	2 - 3	4	5 - 10	11-15	16-27	28 - 35	36	37 - 43
Euro WST	S[2-1]	Mag/Pkt[2-2](2)	Teletext Data (40)						
US WST	S	Mag/Pkt (2)	Teletext Data (32)						
NABTS	S	Teletext Data (34)							
WSS625	S	WSS625 Data (14)							
WSS525	S	WSS525 Data (3)							
VPS	S	VPS Data (26)							
CC	S	CC Data (2)							
Moji	S	Prefix (14 bits)	Information Data (22 bytes) + Parity Check (82 bits)						
VITC	S	VITC Data (9)							

[2-1] Status Bytes

[2-2] Magazine and packet numbers, as WST spec.

The structure of the Open data type packets follows the same pattern; all packets start with 2 status bytes, followed by the appropriate number of captured data bytes. See Table 18 ‘Data Types’ for a complete list of supported data types.

5.4.1 Status Bytes

The first two bytes of each packet form the Status Bytes, which contain information about the data in the rest of that packet.

Table 3: Status Bytes

	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Byte 0	OP	field_id	LN8	LN7	LN6	LN5	LN4	LN3
Byte 0	OP	LN2	LN1	LN0	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0

Table 4: Status Bytes Bit Definitions

Bits	Bit Description
OP	Odd Parity of bits 6 to 0.
field_id	field_id = 0 -> field1; field_id = 1 -> field2.
LN8..0	Line Number in current field (1..313).
DT3..0	Data Type according to Table 18.

5.4.2 Euro WST, US WST and NABTS Data

Stored in transmission order; first received bit becomes LSB of byte in packet.

5.4.3 WSS625 Data

Table 5: Assembly of WSS625 Data into Data Packet

WSS Bit No.	Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 2	Bit 3	. . .	Bit 11	Bit 12	Bit 13
Bit No. in Packet	7 0	7 0	7 0	7 0	. . .	7 0	7 0	7 0
Data in Packet	xxdddddd	xxdddddd	xxdddddd	xxdddddd	. . .	xxdddddd	xxdddddd	xxdddddd
Byte No.in Packet	2	3	4	5	. . .	13	14	15

In Table 5, xx is undefined by the WSS625 transmission and is set to zero by the hardware. Each dddddd are a group of 6 bits representing a single symbol (a WSS625 bit) bi-phase coded and then oversampled at 3 times the baud rate.

To decode the individual bits, it is usual to take a majority decision on each group of 3 bits (majority of 0s or 1s), then compare the first and second three-bit groups to do bi-phase decoding. This is illustrated in the table below.

Remark: This decoding is not actually performed by the Data Capture hardware.

Table 6: WSS625 Biphase Decoding

Stored bits b5..b0	1st bit	2nd bit	Biphase Decoded	Biphase Error
111 000	1	0	1	No
000 111	0	1	0	No
101 010	1	0	1	No
101 011	1	1		Yes
000 011	0	1	0	No
010 000	0	0		Yes

5.4.4 WSS525 Data

The received data contains 20 bits including 6 bits of CRC code; all 20 bits are packed into 3 bytes and written to the packet with the first received bit becoming LSB of byte 4. CRC checking is performed on the received data, and a flag to indicate the result is stored in the last data byte - see Table 7.

Table 7: WSS525 Data in Data Capture Memory

WSS525 Word[7-1]	2		1				0		CRCC		2						-				CRCC			
WSS525 Bit No.	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	C[7-2]	-[7-3]	-	-	20	19	18	17
Bit No. in Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Byte No. in Packet	2								3								4							

[7-1] WSS525 Word and bit numbers as defined in Reference [2]

[7-2] Result of CRC check – '0' if no errors, '1' otherwise.

[7-3] Unused bits written as '0' by hardware.

5.4.5 VPS Data

Table 8: Assembly of VPS Data into Data Packet

VPS Word	Word 3								Word 4								…	Word 14								Word 15							
Bit Number	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	…	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4
Data in Packet	ddccbbaa				ddccbbaa				ddccbbaa				ddccbbaa				. . .	ddccbbaa				ddccbbaa				ddccbbaa				ddccbbaa			
Bit Number in	7			0	7			0	7			0	7			0	. . .	7			0	7			0	7			0	7			0
Byte No. in Packet	2				3				4				5				. . .	24				25				26				27			

Each pair of bits dd, cc, bb or aa is a single symbol, biphase coded. 01 represents a 1 symbol, 10 represents a 0 symbol. 00 and 11 are biphase errors.

The data can be decoded in minimum processor time by using a look-up table (256 bytes) using the received data as index, which gives the correct decoded biphase data in the ls 4 bits of each byte and 4 corresponding error flags in the ms bits; e.g.: a stored byte with hex value 0x1B (binary 00.01.10.11) would be decoded as 1001.0100 (i.e.: the middle two pairs 01 and 10 decode correctly to 1 and 0, but the outer two pairs 00 and 11 are errors).

Table 9: VPS Biphase Decoding

Stored bit pair msb lsb	Biphase Decoded	Biphase Error
0 0	-	Yes
0 1	1	No
1 0	0	No
1 1	-	Yes

5.4.6 Closed Caption

Stored in transmission order - first received bit becomes LSB of byte 2.

5.4.7 Moji (Japanese Text)

The Moji Data Line contains 272 bits, made up of a 14-bit prefix, 22 Information Data bytes (176 bits) and an 82-bit Parity Check. The captured bits are constructed into bytes, LSB first, in transmission order, but the first byte of the packet (after the Status Bytes) contains only 6 bits of transmitted data in bits 2-7. Bit 2 corresponds to the first transmitted bit; bits 1 and 0 are filled with zeros.

This is done in order to align the Information Data bytes to byte boundaries in the constructed data packet. It also means that the last data byte in the packet contains only 2 transmitted bits (in positions 0 - 1) - the remaining 6 bits are undefined and should be ignored.

5.4.8 VITC Data

The VITC data line in both 625- and 525-line video formats contains 90 bits, which can be divided into nine 10-bit groups. The first two bits of each group are defined as Synchronizing Bits, and consist of a fixed ‘1’ followed by a fixed ‘0’. These Synchronizing Bits are excluded from the data packet constructed by the Data Capture unit, leaving exactly nine 8-bit bytes of useful data. The bytes are presented in transmission order, with the LSB of each corresponding to the first transmitted bit - the structure is shown in the table below.

Table 10: VITC Data Packet Contents

VITC Bit No.	0	1	2 - - - 9	10	11	12 - - - 19	- - -	80	81	82 - - - 89
Byte No. in Packet			2			3	- - -			10
Bit No. in Packet			0 - - - 7			0 - - - 7	- - -			0 - - - 7

Remark: This behavior is believed to be different from a previous version of the Data Slicer that supported the VITC data types.

5.4.9 Open Data Types

The Open data types are provided primarily to allow capture of low bit-rate data types that are not specifically supported by the Data Capture Unit, by oversampling the transmitted data and leaving software to extract the individual bytes.

Acquisition starts when a match is found for the programmable framing code (taking into account the FCE control bit); bytes are then captured, LSB first, in transmission order at the specified bit- rate. The search window for the framing code is open between approximately 8 and 16s into the line, referenced to the falling edge of the H-Sync pulse. The number of bytes captured in the open data types depends on when in this period the framing code match is found: the numbers shown in Table 18, ‘Data Types’, are the maximum assuming earliest possible detection of the framing code.

If the framing code is detected any later, fewer bytes may be captured; also, data capture may extend into the line- reset region of the following line, in which case the last few data bytes in the packet will be meaningless. It is left up to the software to process the appropriate amount of data from the packet, as defined by the application for which the open data type is being used.

5.5 Packet Processing Capabilities

A number of hardware-supported packet processing options are available. These are primarily intended to assist with WST data capture and processing. Hardware data processing may be enabled or disabled by software.

Acquired packets may optionally be decoded. The data processing operations available are: 8/4 hamming decoding of the magazine and packet number (bytes 2 and 3 of every WST teletext packet); and page header decoding for bytes 4 to 11 of WST packets X/0.

5.5.1 Magazine and Packet Number Decoding

When magazine and packet number decoding is enabled, bytes 2 and 3 of WST teletext packets are decoded by hardware during the acquisition process. The decoded result is written back in the place of the original data.

Magazine and packet number decoding is only possible for data types EuroWST (data type 0), USWST (data type 4), and Teletext (data type 8).

5.5.1.1 Input Data Format

	d7							d0
Byte 2[10-1]	Packet Number Bit 1	Protection	Magazine Number Bit 3[10-2]	Protection	Magazine Number Bit 2	Protection	Magazine Number Bit 1	Protection
Byte 3	Packet Number Bit 5	Protection	Packet Number Bit 4	Protection	Packet Number Bit 3	Protection	Packet Number Bit 2	Protection

[10-1] Transmitted byte layout as specified Reference [3]. These bytes are 8/4 Hamming, encoded as defined in the reference.

[10-2] Magazine number bit 3 is used as the ‘tabulation’ bit for USWST as defined in Reference [4].

5.5.1.2 Output Data Format

	d7							d0
Byte 2	Error Flag 1[10-1]	0[10-2]	0	0	0	Magazine Number Bit 3	Magazine Number Bit 2	Magazine Number Bit 1
Byte 3	Error Flag 2[10-3]	0	0	Packet Number Bit 5	Packet Number Bit 4	Packet Number Bit 3	Packet Number Bit 2	Packet Number Bit 1[10-4]

[10-1] when set high, Error Flag 1 indicates uncorrectable errors in incoming byte 2 of Teletext packet.

[10-2] other bits set to zero.

[10-3] when set to high, Error Flag 2 indicates uncorrectable errors in incoming byte 3 of Teletext packet.

[10-4] during decoding, packet number bit1 is read from byte 2, written back in byte 3.

5.5.2 Page Header Decoding

Page header decoding provides automatic processing for the 8/4 hamming encoded page control bytes of WST teletext packets X/0.

Page header decoding is only possible for data types EuroWST (data type 0), USWST (data type 4), and Teletext (data type 8).

Magazine and packet number decoding must be enabled for page headers to be identified and decoded.

Table 11: Page Header Byte Sequence

Byte Number	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Byte Function	Page Number Units	Page Number Tens	Subcode S1	Subcode S2	Subcode S3	Subcode S4	Control Bits C7-C10	Control Bits C11-C14

Bytes 4-11 of the WST packet X/0 are all 8/4 hamming encoded as defined in Reference [3]. When page header decoding is enabled, the decoded bytes are written back in the place of the encoded bytes, overwriting the original data.

Hamming 8/4 Data Format

	d7							d0
Encoded Byte	D4	P4	D3	P3	D2	P2	D1	P1
Decoded Byte	Error Flag	0	0	0	D4	D3	D2	D1

5.5.3 WSS525 CRC Checking

CRC checking is performed on every WSS525 packet received, and the result of the CRC check is written into the packet along with the captured data as shown in Table 7 ‘WSS525 Data’. Software may examine the CRC check bit as an indication of data integrity, and reject packets that fail.

5.5.4 Packet Validity Checking

Error checking can be performed on packets of certain data types to determine the validity of the packets. Although all captured data packets are sent to the output regardless of any errors, certain features of the DCU are affected by the result of these checks. These include:

- Generation of the pktrx (packet-received) interrupt
- WSSV bit in the Status Bytes/DCS register
- Data amplitude tracking/searching

In the case of text packets, the magazine and packet number (bytes 2 and 3 of WST teletext) may be 8:4 hamming checked as a validation of data integrity. Hamming checking is always performed on WST packets (data types 0 and 4), and is optional

for other Teletext packets (data types 8 and C) depending on the HAM bit in register DCR1. In the case of WSS525 packets (date type 7), the result of the CRC check is used to determine packet validity only if the WSS_CRC bit is set in register DCR2; otherwise all captured WSS525 packets are considered valid, relying on the Start Bit detection alone.

Teletext Hamming checking for data types 8 and C should be disabled if these data types are being used to capture data that does not employ Hamming encoding.

5.6 Registers

In Table 12, the attributes “read” and “write” indicate the intended use of the register: “read” registers are for status/information, while “write” registers are for control. All registers may be read, however only “write” registers will be modified by a write operation. All registers are initialised to their ‘Reset’ values during device reset. Reading or writing to unused register addresses will cause an ‘ERR’ acknowledge on the PI bus.

Table 12: Register Address Map and Reset Values

Register	Base Address Offset	Reset Value	Read / Write
DCR1	0x000	0x00000000	R/W
LCR2_5	0x004	0x00000000	R/W
LCR6_9	0x008	0x00000000	R/W
LCR10_13	0x00C	0x00000000	R/W
LCR14_17	0x010	0x00000000	R/W
LCR18_21	0x014	0x00000000	R/W
LCR22_24	0x018	0x00FF0000	R/W
DCS	0x01C	n/a	R
DCR2	0x02C	0x00000000	R/W
DEBUG_CTRL	0xFCC	0x00000000	R/W
INT_STATUS	0xFE0	n/a	R
INT_ENABLE	0xFE4	0x00000000	R/W
INT_CLEAR	0xFE8	0x00000000	W
INT_SET	0xFEC	0x00000000	W
MODULE_ID	0xFFC	0xA0072000	R

The function of bits designated “-” is reserved for future applications and therefore care must be taken to avoid conflicts with future hardware extensions. The value returned from undefined “read” bits should be ignored by software. Undefined ‘write’ bits should be written as ‘0’.

5.6.1 DCR1: Data Capture Register (Write)

Table 13: DCR1: Data Capture Register (Write)

DCR1								
Bits 31-24	INV_MSB	V8	V7	V6	V5	V4	V3	V2
Bits 23-16	V1	V0	H5	H4	H3	H2	H1	H0
Bits 15-8	FC7	FC6	FC5	FC4	FC3	FC2	FC1	FC0
Bits 7-0	DPH	DMP	HAM_N	FCE	VID_525	HUNT_N	VCR	ACQ_EN

Reset value:0x00000000h

This register, read by the data capture hardware every field, contains control bits for the SERPAR and timing blocks:

Table 14: Effect of DCR Register

Bit	Effect if 0	Effect if 1
INV_MSB	MSB of incoming DCVBS data is unaltered; for use if the input stream contains signed data	MSB of incoming DCVBS data is inverted for use with unsigned data, as required by PNX2000.
V[8..0]	Vertical Position of CVFLD interrupt, start of line number (1-312). Read on each field boundary. **Remark:** The Vertical position bits must be non-zero or the interrupt will never be asserted.	
H[5..0]	Horizontal Position of PKTRX interrupt, expressed in microseconds (32-63,0-3).Read on each field boundary. **Remark:** The packet received interrupt is only valid for all supported data types if set within the limits above (i.e.: from 32ms into the line through to 3ms into the following line).	
FC[7..0]	This register provides a single framing code for the checker in the SERPAR block. It is used if the MSB of the data type DT3 is 1 (i.e. programmable Framing Code), except for the VITC data types. It is read by the hardware at the beginning of each data line, after the relevant LCR register.	
DPH	Do not decode page header.	Decode Page Header. Bytes 4 to 11WST packets X/0 are Hamming 8/4 decoded and written back into bytes 4 to 11. Page header decoding is only enabled if DMP is also set.
DMP	Do not decode magazine and packet address.	Decode magazine and packet number. Bytes 2 and 3 of every WST packet are Hamming 8/4 decoded and written back into bytes 2 and 3.
HAM_N	(8,4) Hamming check on magazine and packet number of Teletext packets enabled. Hamming check is only optional for data types 8 and C.	Do not check for Hamming errors in magazine and packet number. Hamming check is only optional for data types 8 and C.
FCE	One error allowed in Framing Code for data types with an 8-bit Framing Code.	No errors allowed in Framing Code.
VID_525	Set acquisition PLL to expect 625 line transmission	Set acquisition PLL to expect 525 line transmission
HUNT_N	Amplitude searching allowed	Amplitude searching disabled[14-1]
VCR	Normal PLL mode: no integral path	VCR PLL mode: integral path enabled
ACQ_EN	All lines treated as ‘do not acquire’	Normal acquisition mode

[14-1] Do not disable during normal operation

5.6.2 DCR2: Data Capture Register 2 (Write)

Table 15: DCR2: Data Capture Register 2 (Write)

DCR2								
Bits 31-24	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Bits 23-16	WSS_CRC	INPUT_SEL	-	-	-	-	FPOS	VSPOS8
Bits 15-8	VSPOS7	VSPOS6	VSPOS5	VSPOS4	VSPOS3	VSPOS2	VSPOS1	VSPOS0
Bits 7-0	HSPOS7	HSPOS6	HSPOS5	HSPOS4	HSPOS3	HSPOS2	HSPOS1	HSPOS0

[15-1] Reset value:0x00000000h

Table 16: Effect of DCR2 Register

Bit	Effect if 0	Effect if 1
WSS_CRC	WSS525 CRC check is ignored for packet validity checking.	WSS525 packet validity depends on result of CRC check.
INPUT_SEL	I^2D input pins i2d_data_1[7:0] and i2d_dval_1 are selected.	I^2D input pins i2d_data_2[7:0] and i2d_dval_2 are selected.
FPOS	The Field-ID input even_fld is interpreted as ‘0’ for odd field, ‘1’ for even field.	The effect of the even_fld input is inverted.
VSPOS[8..0]	Offset of V_Sync input relative to CVBS, in lines. A value of zero corresponds to v_sync occurring on line 1 of the input video.	
HSPOS[7..0]	Timing of h_ref input relative to CVBS, in increments of 0.25s (1/256 of line period)	

Aligning the internal line counter to PAL or NTSC line counting standard, can be done by appropriately setting the VSPOS field in the DCR2 register.

5.6.3 LCR2..LCR24: Line Control Registers (Write)

Table 17: Structure of LCR Registers

	31..28	27..24	23..20	19..16	15..12	11..8	7..4	3..0
LCR2_5	Line 5 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 5 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 4 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 4 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 3 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 3 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 2 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 2 Field 2 DT[3:0]
LCR6_9	Line 9 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 9 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 8 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 8 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 7 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 7 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 6 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 6 Field 2 DT[3:0]
LCR10_13	Line 13 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 13 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 12 Field 1DT[3:0]	Line 12 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 11 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 11 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 10 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 10 Field 2 DT[3:0]
LCR14_17	Line 17 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 17 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 16 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 16 Field 2DT[3:0]	Line 15 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 15 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 14 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 14 Field 2 DT[3:0]
LCR18_21	Line 21 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 21 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 20 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 20 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 19 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 19 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 18 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 18 Field 2 DT[3:0]
LCR22_24	-	-	Line 24+ Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 24+ Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 23 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 23 Field 2 DT[3:0]	Line 22 Field 1 DT[3:0]	Line 22 Field 2 DT[3:0]

Reset value:0x00000000h

Reset value for LCR22_24:0x00ff0000h

This array of registers tells the front-end what data type to receive on video lines: 2, 3, 4, ... 23, (24 and after), on each field. At the start of each incoming video line, the relevant register is read, and the data slicer and SERPAR set up to slice the required type of data. On RESET, the LCR registers should be set by software to acquire nothing (DT=1111). Registers LCR2 to LCR23 apply to lines 2 to 23 respectively. Register LCR24 applies to all lines from line 24 to the end of the field. LCR2_5 is provided to cater for non-standard video signals, which may contain data from line number 2 onwards.

DT3 f1 - DT0 f1: Data type to be received on line n, first field (odd).

DT3 f2 - DT0 f2: Data type to be received on line n, second field (even).

Table 18: Data Types

DT	Data Type	Data Rate (Mb/s)	Framing Code[18-1]	FC Window	Hamming Check[18-2]	Data Bytes Output (inc Status)
0000	European Teletext (WST625), Chinese Teletext (CCST)	6.9375	0x27	WST625	Always	44
0001	European Closed Caption	0.500	001 binary	CC625	-	4
0010	VPS	5	0x9951[18-3]	VPS	-	28
0011	European Wide Screen Signalling (WSS625)	5	0x1E3C1F[18-4]	WSS625	-	16
0100	US Teletext (WST525)	5.7272	0x27	WST525	Always	36
0101	US Closed Caption (Line 21)	0.503	001 binary	CC525	-	4
0110	Reserved (currently do not acquire)	N/A	none	disable	-	0
0111	US Wide Screen Signalling (WSS525)[18-5]	0.447443	10 binary	WSS525	-	5
1000	Teletext	6.9375	programmable	gen_text	Optional[18-6]	44
1001	VITC-625	1.8125	10 binary	VITC625	-	11
1010	VITC-525	1.7898	10 binary	VITC525	-	11
1011	Open 1	5	programmable	8-16ms	-	386(max.)[18-7]
1100	US NABTS	5.7272	programmable	NABTS	Optional	36[18-8]
1101	Moji (Japanese Text)	5.7272	programmable[18-9]	MOJI	-	37
1110	Open 2	5.7272	programmable	8-16ms	-	41 (max.)
1111	Do not acquire	N/A	none	disable	-	0

[18-1] Teletext, programmable and VPS framing codes are specified in reverse transmission order (transmitted LSB first). Closed Caption and Wide Screen Signalling framing codes are specified in transmission order (transmitted MSB first).

[18-2] 8/4 Hamming check of magazine and packet address contained in bytes 2 and 3 of WST teletext.

Remark: This overrides the HAM bit in DCR for data types 0 to 7.

[18-3] The transmitted bit sequence for the VPS framing code is “10 00 10 10 10 01 10 01”.

[18-4] The transmitted bit sequence for the WSS framing code is “0001 1110 0011 1100 0001 1111”.

[18-5] Used for Copy Generation Management System (CGMS) and Japanese wide screen signalling.

[18-6] For data types where hamming checking is optional, hamming checking is enabled or disabled via the HAM bit in DCR.

[18-7] Exact number of bytes captured depends on when framing code is detected - see Section 5.4.9

[18-8] NABTS data actually contains only 33 bytes, but 34 bytes are captured so that this Data Type could also be used for WST525 or Moji, if necessary.

[18-9] Should be set to 0xA7 for Moji

5.6.4 DCS: Data Capture Status (Read)

This register gives information about the acquisition performance of the DCU.

There is no reset value as the register is updated at the end of each line regardless of any other register setting. The register is updated even if the data type is “do not acquire”, or if the ACQ_EN bit of DCR1 is set to ‘0’.

All bits are active high unless otherwise indicated. Signals from the front-end set the relevant bits in a holding latch during the field. On the field boundary the contents are transferred to the status register and the holding latch is reset to 0.

Table 19: DCS

DCS								
Bits 31-24	F_EVEN	-	-	-				LN8
Bits 23-16	LN7	LN6	LN5	LN4	LN3	LN2	LN1	LN0
Bits 15-8	FC8V	FC7V	VPSV	WSSV	CCV	-	Rsd.	525R
Bits 7-0	DPH	DMP	-	-	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0

Table 20: DCS Register Bit Definition

Bits	Bit Description
DPH	Decoding of Page Headers enabled
DMP	Decoding of Magazine and Packet numbers enabled
DT3..DT0	Type of data received (see Table 18)
FC8V	Teletext data (types 0, 4, 8, B, C, D, E) received with no errors in framing code within last field
FC7V	Teletext data (types 0, 4, 8, B, C, D, E) received with 1 error in framing code within last field
VPSV	Video Programming Signal (VPS) data received within last field
WSSV	WSS525, VITC or WSS625 data received within last field
CCV	Closed Caption data received within last field
Rsd	Reserved - always reads as ‘1’ for backwards compatibility (was ‘VSQ’ - Video Signal Quality good)
525R	525-line transmission detected by acquisition line counter
LN8..LN0	Line number in current field (1..313)
F_EVEN	Set to ‘1’ if field 2 of frame

Remark: Bits FC8V, FC7V, VPSV, WSSV and CCV do not contain information about the current packet; they are intended to give a general indication of acquisition performance on the data types requested by the Line Control Registers during the last field.

5.6.5 Interrupt Registers (Read/Write)

Only the least-significant 2 Bits are implemented in each of the 4 registers; bit 0 corresponds to the cvfld (field- rate) interrupt, and bit 1 corresponds to the pktrx (packet-received) interrupt, as shown in table below.

Table 21: Interrupt Register Bit Assignments

	Bits 31-2	Bit 1	Bit 0
INT_STATUS	-	PKTRX_STATUS	CVFLD_STATUS
INT_ENABLE	-	PKTRX_ENABLE	CVFLD_ENABLE
INT_CLEAR	-	PKTRX_CLEAR	CVFLD_CLEAR
INT_SET	-	PKTRX_SET	CVFLD_SET

INT_ENABLE is read/write. A ‘1’ will enable the interrupt pin corresponding to the actual bit set. Any interrupts which occur while disabled will still set the INT_STATUS register, indicating that an interrupt is pending.

INT_STATUS is read-only and can be interrogated to see which interrupt(s) are pending.

Writing a ‘1’ to the appropriate bit of INT_SET causes an interrupt to become pending and sets the corresponding bit of INT_STATUS, also generating an interrupt on that pin if the corresponding interrupt is enabled. INT_CLEAR is used to reset INT_STATUS and the corresponding interrupt pin by writing ‘1’ to the appropriate bit. INT_SET and INT_CLEAR are not typical registers in that they do not hold the values written to them; they will always read as ‘0’.

Remark: The pktrx interrupt will be set by the acquisition circuitry whenever a valid packet is captured, regardless of the state of the ACQ_EN control bit or the top-level dt_enable inputs.

Remark: Only the cvfld interrupt is used on the PNX2000 device; the pktrx interrupt is not internally connected. However, it is still possible to detect whether this interrupt would have occurred (i.e. whether any packets have been received) by reading the INT_STATUS register.

5.6.6 MODULE_ID (Read)

The MODULE_ID register always returns a fixed value made up of the fields shown in table below, and cannot be written to.

Table 22: Module-ID Register Contents

Bits	Field Name	Description	Value
31-16	ID	Module Identifier - unique 16-bit code	0xA007
15-12	MAJOR_REV	Major revision - indicates revisions that break software compatibility	0x2
11-8	MIN_REV	Minor revision - indicates revisions that maintain software compatibility	0x0[22-1]
7-0	APERTURE	Memory Map Aperture Size - 0x00 means 4kB	0x00

[22-1] Correct at document issue date.

Chapter 6: ITU656

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

6.1. ITU656 Formatter Overview

The ITU output formatter combines video data of the VIDDEC block and Vertical Blanking Interval (VBI) data, e.g. Teletext, of the DCU into a ITU 656 style data stream. It is mainly intended to transfer the output data stream externally to the PNX8550 or Columbus device but the output data stream could also be readable by other ITU 656 input devices.

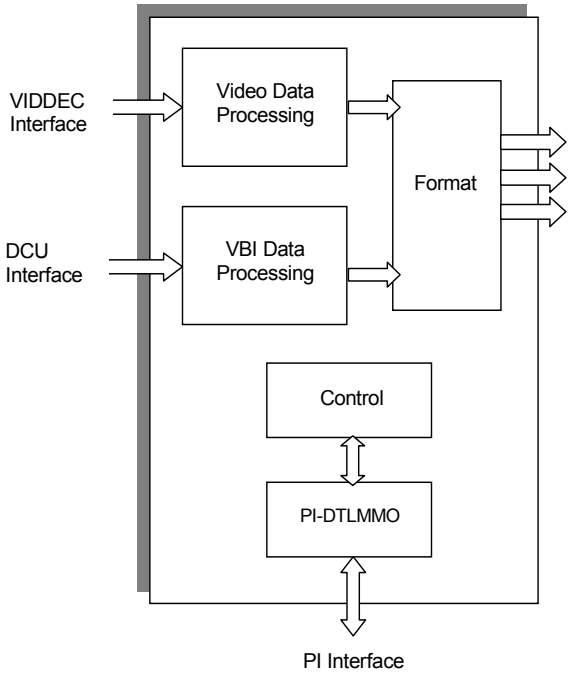


Figure 1: Formatter Block Diagram

6.2. ITU656 Formatter Data Interfaces

The ITU formatter receives data from 3 sources:

- YUV data as video input signals, sourced from the VIDDEC block. This YUV data is either decoded CVBS signals, YC or YUV input signals.
- VBI sliced data sourced from the DCU in packets between 4 and 46 Bytes depending on the format of the data packet (e.g. Euro WST, Closed Caption).
- CVBS data, sourced from the VIDDEC (after SRC and AGC).

This data will be formatted into an output data stream, which will be ITU 601/656/1364 style, this will contain video and VBI data.

VBI data, text etc., will be formatted into the VBI region and will be preceded by an ANC header.

In normal mode video data, luminance and chrominance, will be formatted into the active video region. It will be preceded by the SAV timing reference and terminated by the EAV timing reference.

In Columbus mode (external 3D-comb filter) the CVBS color burst data will be formatted into the HBI interval and will be preceded by an ANC header. Video data in this mode will consist of CVBS and chrominance samples and will be formatted into the active video region.

The ANC data packet is a Type 2 format.

The ITU output is compliant to ITU-R BT.656-4[1] and ITU-R BT.1364[2] with the exception of:

- A data valid signal is used to validate the data (not in stuttered clock mode).
- No checksum is added to the ANC data stream

The ITU 656 formatter implementation outputs VBI (text) in the VBI interval within the ITU 656 stream but doesn’t guarantee maintaining the relationship of where the line was captured in the original input analogue stream to the output ITU 656 stream.

I.e. The text data could have been captured from line 5 but might be output in the ITU-656 stream on line 6, however it will always be output in the vertical blanking interval. If the VBI data is captured in the last line of the VBI, it may in some modes be transmitted in the first line of the next of the field.

6.3. Control Registers

6.3.1 ITU656 Formatter Registers

Table 1: ITU656 Formatter Register Summary

Address	Name	Description	Type
0x7FFA000	CONFIG	Provides IP configuration	Write/Read
0x7FFA004	DATA ID: VBI	ANC VBI Data ID	Write/Read
0x7FFA008	DATA ID: HBI	ANC HBI Data ID	Write/Read
0x7FFA00C	CAPTURE	Capture parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA010	FIFO	FIFO parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA014	VF_CONTROL	VBI/Field control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA018	VF_SYNC	VBI/Field synchronization parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA01C	FIELD_1	Field one control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA020	FIELD_2	Field two control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA024	VBI_1	VBI one control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA028	VBI_2	VBI two control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA02C	VBI_3	VBI three control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA030	VBI_4	VBI four control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA034	PROG_HBI	Programmable HBI Control parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFA038	YUV_OFFSET	Programmable YUV offset parameters	Write/Read
0x7FFAFC4	DTM_SYNC	DTL to Module metastability register. Program to: 0x00000000	Write/Read
0x7FFAFC8	MTD_SYNC	Module to DTL metastability register. Program to: 0x00000000	Write/Read
0x7FFAFCC	DEBUG	Debug control register	Write/Read
0x7FFAFE0	INT_STATUS	Interrupt status	Write/Read
0x7FFAFE4	INT_ENABLE	Interrupt enable	Write/Read
0x7FFAFE8	INT_CLEAR	Interrupt clear	Write
0x7FFAFEC	INT_SET	Interrupt set	Write
0x7FFAFFC	MODULE_ID	ITU656 Formatter ID	Read

6.3.2 CONFIG Register

Table 2: CONFIG Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:16		RSD	Unused.
15	0	DVO_ENABLE	1 = DVO Outputs enabled.
14	0	INPUT_TEST_MODE	1 = Output mono bar test pattern.
13	0	OUTPUT_TEST_MODE	1 = Output color bar test pattern.
12	0	PROGRESSIVE_MODE	1 = Progessive mode, timing flags always 1st field.

Table 2: CONFIG Register ...Continued

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
11	0	CLOCK_STUTTER	1 = ITU clock stuttered.
10	0	CLOCK_INVERT	1 = ITU data clocked from formatter on rising edge.
9	0	DC_JUSTIFIED	1 = VBI ANC Data Count justified to an integer number of 4 blocks, for usage in 8 bit ITU.
8	0	DITHER	1 = LSB of 9 bit video will be dithered into 8 bit ITU.
7	0	UV_COMPL	1 = MSB of 9 bit UV video will be inverted.
6	0	CVBS_COMPL	1 = MSB of 9 bit CVBS video will be inverted.
5	0	VBI_ONLY	1 = Even during active video (non vertical blanking) text is transmitted from the DCU and inserted into ITU data stream.
4:3	0	VBI_CONTROL	Modes for Avoidance of '00' and 'FF' in data stream during VBI data transmission: 00 = Pure Text - VBI bytes are shifted left (left aligned). The risk to get an unwanted sequence with FF, 00, EAV/ SAV is high for 8 bit recognition but zero for 10 bit recognition, as the 2 LSB's are modified to prevent that. 01 = 1 Wrong Bit - (In case of 8 bit ITU) VBI bytes will be modified in the LSB bit to prevent from getting 00 or FF in the data. 10 = No Text Shift - VBI bytes will not be shifted left and the 2 MSB's are modified to prevent from getting 00 or FF (for 10-bit use). 11 = Nibble – VBI data bytes will be transmitted via 2 nibbles low nibble first filled with '1010'.
2	0	Columbus	1 = 656 output data stream contains CVBS / Chrominance samples (Columbus mode). 0 = 656 output data stream contains Luminance / Chrominance samples (Normal mode).
1:0	0	MODE	Formatter pixels per line length modes.

6.3.2.1 MODE

Bits 1:0 of the CONFIG register selects the mode of operation for the formatter.

Table 3: Supported Video Standards

Mode	Total Pixels per Line/Active Pixels per Line	CONFIG(1:0)
0	864/720	00
1	858/720	01
2	825/720	10
3	990/720 (default)	11

In mode 3 it is possible to modify the total pixels per line from 722 to 1021 but the active pixels per line will always be 720. This is achieved via the PROG_HBI register.

6.3.2.2 Columbus

Bit 2 of the CONFIG register selects the ITU 656 stream format.

Normal mode (CONFIG(2) = 0)

Video data output stream format in normal mode.

The video data words are conveyed as a 27Mwords/s in 1fh mode and 54Mwords/s in 2fh mode and shall be multiplexed in the following order:

C_{B0}, Y_0, C_{R0}, Y_1, C_{B2}, Y_2, C_{R2}, Y_3, C_{B4}, Y_4, C_{R4}, …

Columbus mode (CONFIG(2) = 1)

Video data output stream format in Columbus mode.

The video data words are conveyed as a 27Mwords/s in 1fh mode and 54Mwords/s in 2fh mode and shall be multiplexed in the following order:

C_{B0}, $CVBS_0$, C_{R0}, $CVBS_1$, C_{B2}, $CVBS_2$, C_{R2}, $CVBS_3$, C_{B4}, $CVBS_4$, C_{R4}, …

In addition to replacing luminance samples with CVBS samples, the color burst information is also transmitted in the HBI in Columbus mode.

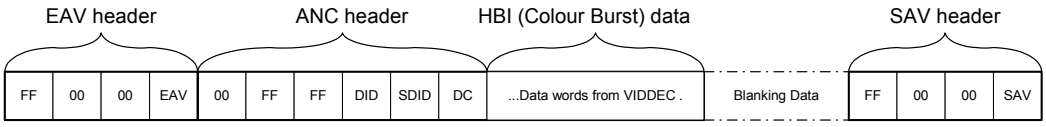


Figure 2: Insertion of HBI Data in ITU Data Stream

6.3.2.3 VBI_CONTROL

Bits (4:3) of the CONFIG register select the mode for avoidance of ‘00’ and ‘FF’ in the data stream during VBI data transmission.

Pure Text Mode (CONFIG(4:3) = 00)

As VBI data has only 8 bits a mapping has to be performed prior to data transmission. The default mapping is shown in Figure 3. This mode of operation is for usage in 10-bit ITU were signalling is detected across the full 10 bits of data.

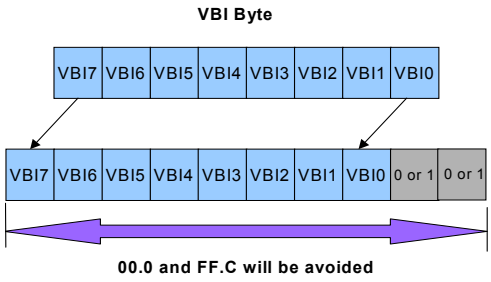


Figure 3: Shifting of Bits in Pure Text Mode

Nibble Mode (CONFIG(4:3) = 11)

Nibble mode is performed to ensure 00 or FF timing codes are not generated by the VBI data. Each byte is split in two nibbles. The remaining nibble in each byte is filled with ‘1010’. The lower nibble is transmitted first. The nibbles are output on the upper

8 bits of the data bus. This mode of operation is for usage in 10-bit ITU where signalling is detected across only the upper 8 bits or 8-bit ITU and the possible data corruptions of 1 Wrong bit mode are unacceptable.

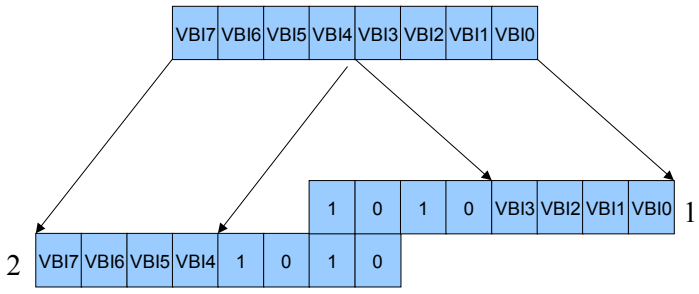


Figure 4: Generation of Bytes in Nibble Mode

Wrong Bit Mode (CONFIG(4:3) = 01)

For usage in 8 bit ITU, VBI bytes will be shifted left then the LSB (bit2 of the 10 bits) modified to prevent 00 or FF in the data bits 9:2. This mode of operation is for usage in 10-bit ITU where signalling is detected across only the upper 8 bit or 8-bit ITU and possible data corruptions are acceptable.

No text Shift (CONFIG(4:3) = 10)

VBI bytes will not be shifted left and the 2 MSB's are modified to prevent from getting 00.0-00.C and FF.0-FF.C. This mode of operation is for usage in 10-bit ITU use where VBI data is transmitted non-standard position of ITU_OUT(7:0).

6.3.2.4 VBI_ONLY

Bit 5 of the CONFIG register selects VBI_ONLY mode (CONFIG(5) = 1). In this mode the formatter will not transmit any video data from the VIDDEC and only transmits VBI data from the DCU. In this mode the formatter can utilise any video line for VBI transmission.

6.3.2.5 CVBS_COMPL

Bit 6 of the CONFIG register selects CVBS_COMPL mode (CONFIG(6) = 1). In this mode the formatter will invert the MSB of the 9 bit incoming CVBS data. This mode can be used to convert from signed to unsigned data.

6.3.2.6 UV_COMPL

Bit 7 of the CONFIG register selects UV_COMPL mode (CONFIG(7) = 1). In this mode the formatter will invert the MSB of the 9 bit incoming UV data. This mode can be used to convert from signed to unsigned data.

6.3.2.7 DITHER

Bit 8 of the CONFIG register selects dithering of Y and UV data (CONFIG(8) = 1). The dithering function can be selected for the video data input to reduce the bus width from 9 to 8 bits. The 8 bits output shall be in the upper 8 bits (9:2) of the ITU output stream.

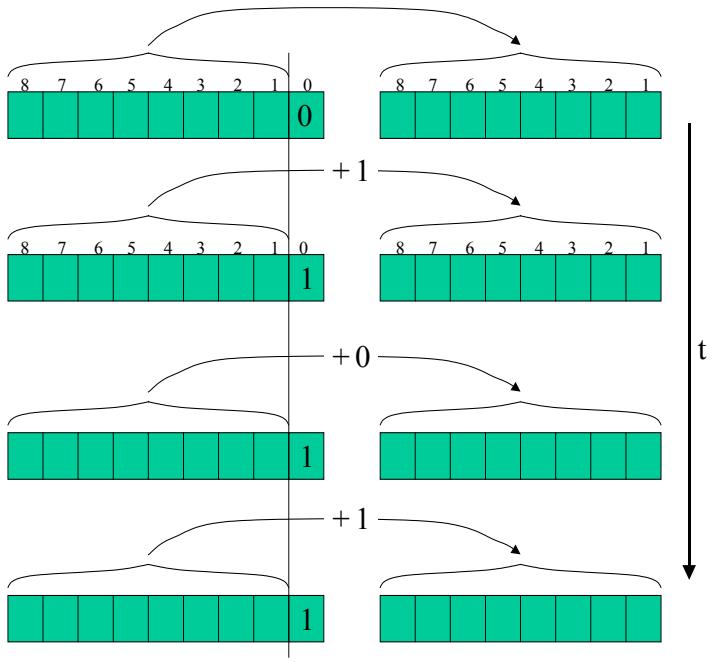


Figure 5: Dithering of 9 Bit Video Data to 8 Bits

If the LSB is ‘0’, the highest 8 bits are simply mapped to the destination (top line). If the LSB is ‘1’, an alternately ‘1’ or ‘0’ is added to the highest 8 bits before mapping.

6.3.2.8 DC_JUSTIFIED

Bit 9 of the CONFIG register justifies the data count into an integer number of 4 words (CONFIG(9) = 1). This mode is for usage in 8-bit ITU where the data count will be active only on ITU_OUT(9:2), hence the data count will require rounding up to the next multiple of 4.

6.3.2.9 CLOCK_INVERT

Bit 10 of the CONFIG register selects an inversion of the ITU_CLOCK.

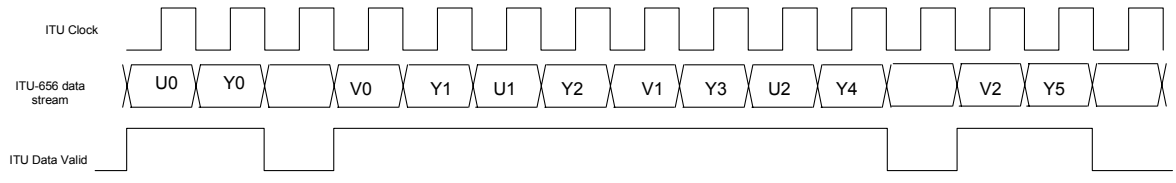


Figure 6: ITU Output Data Stream (CONFIG(10) = 0)

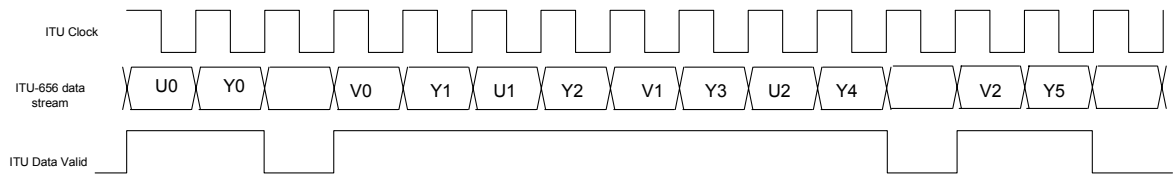


Figure 7: ITU Output Data Stream (CONFIG(10) = 1)

6.3.2.10 CLOCK_STUTTER

Bit 11 of the CONFIG register selects a stuttered ITU_CLOCK.

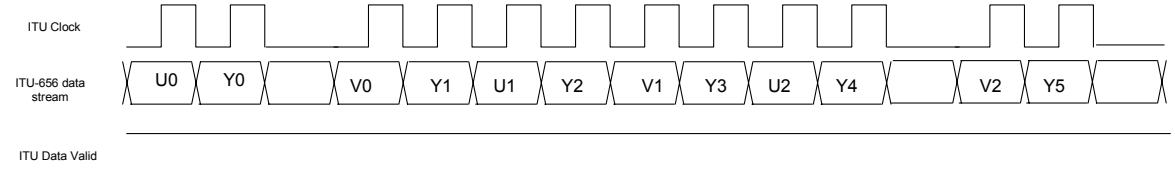


Figure 8: ITU Output Data Stream (CONFIG(11) = 1)

6.3.2.11 PROGRESSIVE_MODE

Bit 12 of the CONFIG register selects PROGRESSIVE_MODE (CONFIG(12) = 1). In this mode the SAV and EAV flags will always indicate first field. The VBI and HBI DID bytes will also only transmit the indicator for first field.

6.3.2.12 OUTPUT_TEST_MODE

Bit 13 of the CONFIG register will select a color bar test pattern (CONFIG(13) = 1). This pattern is generated on the output of the formatter. The formatter must not be in Columbus Mode to utilise this test mode.

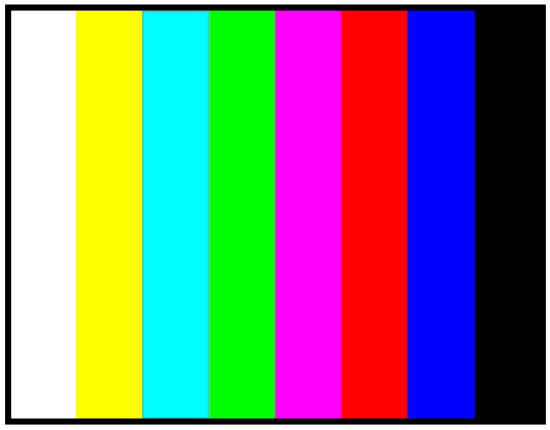


Figure 9: Colour Bar Test Pattern

6.3.2.13 INPUT_TEST_MODE

Bit 14 of the CONFIG register will select a mono bar test pattern (CONFIG(14) = 1). This pattern is generated on the input of the formatter. The formatter must not be in Columbus mode or the OUTPUT_TEST_MODE active to utilise this test mode.

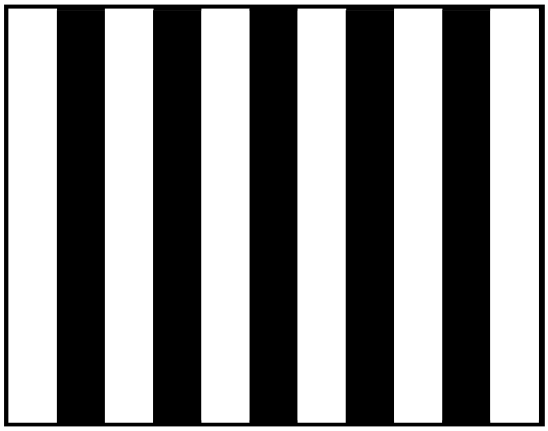


Figure 10: Mono Bar Test Pattern

6.3.2.14 DVO_ENABLE

Used to enable the DVO output pins DVO_DATA (9.0), DVO_CLK and DVO_VALID.

6.3.3 Data Identification Register – VBI data

Table 4: Data Identification Register – VBI data

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:30		RSD	Unused.
29:20	0	SDID_VBI	ANC VBI SDID word.
19:10	0	DID2_VBI	ANC VBI DID word for field 2 (even field).
9:0	0	DID1_VBI	ANC VBI DID word for field 1 (odd field).

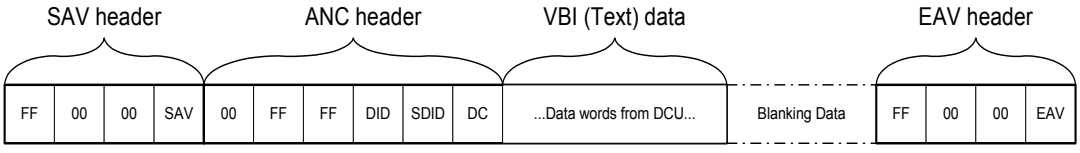


Figure 11: Insertion of VBI Data in ITU Data Stream

The data identification register for the VBI data will control the values for the DID and SDID for the ANC VBI header. The DID is selected is DID1_VBI or DID2_VBI depending on the field transmitted except when PROGESSIVE_MODE is selected then DID1_VBI is always used.

6.3.4 Data Identification Register – HBI data

Table 5: Data Identification Register – HBI data

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:30		RSD	Unused.
29:20	0	SDID_HBI	ANC HBI SDID word.
19:10	0	DID2_HBI	ANC HBI DID word for field 2 (even field).
9:0	0	DID1_HBI	ANC HBI DID word for field 1 (odd field).

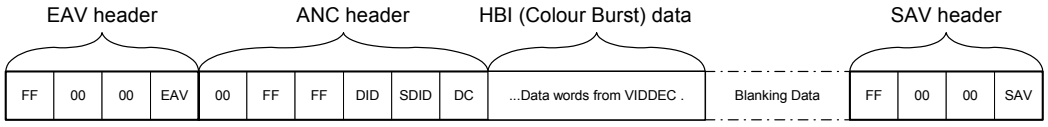


Figure 12: Insertion of HBI Data in ITU Data Stream

The data identification register for the HBI data will control the values for the DID and SDID for the ANC HBI header. The DID is selected for DID1_HBI or DID2_HBI depending on the field transmitted except when PROGESSIVE_MODE is selected then DID1_HBI is always used.

6.3.5 CAPTURE Register

Table 6: CAPTURE Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:30		RSD	Unused.
29:24	0	YUV_LATENCY	YUV latency from 1st byte to start of frame
23:21	0	RSD	Unused.
20	0	SYNC_TO_HSYNC	1 = Sync timing to HSYNC. 0 = Sync to HSY_OUT.
19	0	RSD	Unused.
18:8	0x03E	CVBS_LATENCY	CVBS latency from 1st byte to start of frame
7	0	RSD	Unused.
6:0	0x74	CVBS_FIFO_OFFSET	CVBS offset for 1st byte in buffer

This register is used to determine:

- The first CVBS sample of a line.
- The CVBS latency and hence buffer usage.
- The YUV latency and hence buffer usage.
- Timing sync to HSY_OUT or HSYNC.

6.3.6 FIFO Register

Table 7: FIFO Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:25		RSD	Unused.
24	0	FIFO_CONTROL	Operate FIFO buffering
23	0	RSD	Unused.
22:12	0	FIFO_WIN_STOP	FIFO window stop value
11	0	RSD	Unused.
10:0	0	FIFO_WIN_START	FIFO window start value

The FIFO register is for use when inputting a line locked clock into the formatter (PNX2000) in design proving and test modes. It should not be used for functional operation and therefore must be set to 0x00000000.

6.3.7 VF CONTROL Register

Table 8: VF Control Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:14		RSD	Unused.
13	0	EAV_UPDATE	1 = Update VBI and field indicators with EAV. Only use when using internally generated VBI/field indicators and syncing to hsync.
12	0	VBI_FIELD_CONTROL	1 = Use VBI and field indicators generated within the ITU656 formatter.
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x271	LINE_NUMBER	Quantity of lines per frame

Registers VF_CONTROL, VF_SYNC, FIELD_1/2, VBI1/4 are used to generate field and VBI indicators within the formatter design so the external indicators, from VIDDEC, do not have to be used.

6.3.8 VF SYNC Register

Table 9: VF Sync Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x13C	SYNC_VALUE_F1	Sync value for field one (F1)
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x003	SYNC_VALUE_F0	Sync value for field zero (F0)

6.3.9 FIELD 1 Register

Table 10: Field 1 Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x271	FIELD_STOP_1	Field stop value
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x138	FIELD_START_1	Field start value (-1)

Used to set field indicator start and stop line. The start condition will set the field indicator high indicating an even (second) field, the stop condition will set the field indicator low indicating an odd (first) field.

6.3.10 FIELD 2 Register

Table 11: Field 2 Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x003	FIELD_STOP_2	Field stop value
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x13C	FIELD_START_2	Field start value

Used to set the field indicator start and stop line under synchronisation conditions.

6.3.11 VBI 1 Register

Table 12: VBI 1 Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x14F	VBI_STOP_1	VBI stop value
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x136	VBI_START_1	VBI start value (-1)

Used to set VBI indicator start and stop line. The start condition will set the VBI indicator high indicating a VBI region, the stop condition will set the VBI indicator low indicating a video region.

6.3.12 VBI 2 Register

Table 13: VBI 2 Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x016	VBI_STOP_2	VBI stop value
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x26F	VBI_START_2	VBI start value (-1)

Used to set VBI indicator start and stop line. The start condition will set the VBI indicator high indicating a VBI region, the stop condition will set the VBI indicator low indicating a video region.

6.3.13 VBI 3 Register

Table 14: VBI 3 Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x7FF	VBI_STOP_3	VBI stop value
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x003	VBI_START_3	VBI start value

Used to set the VBI indicator start and stop line under synchronisation conditions.

6.3.14 VBI 4 Register

Table 15: VBI 4 Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:23		RSD	Unused.
22:12	0x7FF	VBI_STOP_4	VBI stop value
11		RSD	Unused.
10:0	0x13C	VBI_START_4	VBI start value

Used to set the VBI indicator start and stop line under synchronisation conditions.

6.3.15 PROG HBI Register

Table 16: PROG HBI Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:22	0	HBI_DC	Horizontal blanking interval data count value
21:11	0	CB_OFF_SLOT	Colour burst off slot
10:0	0x7B8	SAV_SLOT	First SAV slot

Used to construct a programmable HBI when mode 3 is selected, see Table 3.

6.3.16 YUV Offset Register

Table 17: YUV Offset Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:22		RSD	Unused.
21:16	0	V_OFFSET	V offset value
15:14		RSD	Unused.
13:8	0	U_OFFSET	U offset value
7:6		RSD	Unused.
5:0	0	Y_OFFSET	Y offset value

Used to offset the YUV samples that may be mis-aligned i.e.

To delay (retard) the Y sample by 4 wrt to the U V sample:

Y_OFFSET = 64 – 4 = 60 = 0x3C.

To delay (retard) the U sample by 13 wrt to the Y V sample:

U_OFFSET = 64 – 13 = 60 = 0x33.

The maximum delay is 63, a value of 0 results in no delay. Pixels at the start and end of a line will be invalid by the same value as the offset used.

6.3.17 Interrupt Registers

The interrupt status is controlled by a set of four registers. The interrupts registers provide a means of indicating DCU buffer overflows within the ITU656 formatter. A buffer overflow will indicate too many lines of VBI data from the DCU wrt to VBI indicators. Interrupts must be cleared after the ITU656 Formatter has been reset, or after the Viddec has achieved lock.

The interrupt can be enabled by means of setting the corresponding bit in the INT_ENABLE register. If an interrupt condition is not enabled the bit is still set in the INT_STATUS register but the global ITU656 formatter interrupt line will not be raised. The interrupt bits in the INT_STATUS register should be cleared manually by writing a 1 to the same bit position in the INT_CLEAR register. The INT_SET register can be used to manually force an interrupt.

6.3.17.1 INT_STATUS Register

Table 18: INT_STATUS Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:1		RSD	Unused.
0	0	DCU_BUF_INT_STATUS	Interrupt status of DCU buffers

6.3.17.2 INT_ENABLE Register

Table 19: INT_ENABLE Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:1		RSD	Unused.
0	0	DCU_BUF_INT_ENABLE	Enable interrupt for DCU buffers

6.3.17.3 INT_CLEAR Register

Table 20: INT_CLEAR Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:1		RSD	Unused.
0	0	DCU_BUF_INT_CLEAR	Clear interrupt for DCU buffers

6.3.17.4 INT_SET Register

Table 21: INT_SET Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:1		RSD	Unused.
0	0	DCU_BUF_INT_SET	Set interrupt for DCU buffers

6.3.18 MODULE_ID Register

Table 22: MODULE_ID Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:16	A05F	ID	Module ID. This field identifies the block as type ITU 656 formatter.
15:12	0	MAJ_REV	Major Revision ID. This field is incremented by 1 when changes introduced in the block result in software incompatibility with the previous version of the block. First version default = 0.
11:8	0	MIN_REV	Minor Revision ID. This field is incremented by 1 when changes interdicted in the block result in software compatibility with the previous version of the block. First version default = 0.
7:0	0	APERTURE	Aperture Size. Identifies the MMIO aperture size in units of 4kB. The ITU 656 formatter has an aperture size of 4kB. Aperture = 0; 4kB.

6.3.19 Debug Control Register

It is possible within PNX2000 to access internal signals in the ITU656 Formatter module via the testrail output. The DEBUG_OUTPUT_SELECT control bit will select the debug outputs and DEBUG_SEL selects the various debug rails as detailed in Table 23.

Table 23: DEBUG Register

Bit	Reset Value	Name	Description
31:3		RSD	Unused.
2:1	0	DEBUG_SEL	Debug rail selection: 00: tst_rail_out = core_debug 01: tst_rail_out = yuv_debug 10: tst_rail_out = cvbs_debug 11: tst_rail_out = dcu_debug
0	0	DEBUG_OUTPUT_SELECT	1= debug outputs 0 = scan chain outputs

Table 24: DEBUG Signals

TestRail	core_debug	yuv_debug	cvbs_debug	dcu_debug
23	sav_tx_req(0)	hsy_out_itu	line_sync	buffer_full_itu(3)
22	eav_tx_req(0)	evenfield_itu	cvbs_tx_ack	buffer_full_itu(2)
21	vbi_anc_tx_req(0)	vblank_itu	cvbs_valid_itu	buffer_full_itu(1)
20	hbi_anc_tx_req(0)	chroma	w_address_start_itu(6)	buffer_full_itu(0)
19	uv_tx_req	uv_dither_history	w_address_start_itu(5)	buffer_emptied(1)
18	y_tx_req	y_dither_history	w_address_start_itu(4)	buffer_emptied(0)
17	cvbs_tx_req	line_sync	w_address_start_itu(3)	dcu_r_buffer(1)
16	cvbs_cb_tx_req	hsync_itu	w_address_start_itu(2)	dcu_r_buffer(0)
15	dbc_tx_req	y_tx_ack	w_address_start_itu(1)	dcu_data(9)
14	dbl_tx_req	uv_tx_ack	w_address_start_itu(0)	dcu_data(8)
13	dcu_tx_req	uv_valid_itu	w_address_itu(6)	dcu_data(7)
12	hsync_itu	y_valid_itu	w_address_itu(5)	dcu_data(6)
11	hsy_out_itu	w_address_itu(5)	w_address_itu(4)	dcu_data(5)
10	pixel slot(10)	w_address_itu(4)	w_address_itu(3)	dcu_data(4)
9	pixel slot(9)	w_address_itu(3)	w_address_itu(2)	dcu_data(3)
8	pixel slot(8)	w_address_itu(2)	w_address_itu(1)	dcu_data(2)
7	pixel slot(7)	w_address_itu(1)	w_address_itu(0)	dcu_data(1)
6	pixel slot(6)	w_address_itu(0)	r_address(6)	dcu_data(0)
5	pixel slot(5)	r_address(5)	r_address(5)	r_address(5)
4	pixel slot(4)	r_address(4)	r_address(4)	r_address(4)
3	pixel slot(3)	r_address(3)	r_address(3)	r_address(3)
2	pixel slot(2)	r_address(2)	r_address(2)	r_address(2)
1	pixel slot(1)	r_address(1)	r_address(1)	r_address(1)
0	pixel slot(0)	r_address(0)	r_address(0)	r_address(0)

6.4. Video Line Interface Signal Structure

Table 26 to Table 30 detail the ITU frame structure for the various mode of operation.

6.4.1 PNX2000 (Mode 0) in Columbus Mode

Table 25: PNX2000 (Mode 0) in Columbus Mode

656 data output	Data Input Type: Reference [3], Figure 1
Slot 1440	End of active Video – FF.C
Slot 1441	End of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1442	End of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1443	End of active Video – EAV
Slot 1444	Ancillary Data Flag – 00.0
Slot 1445	Ancillary Data Flag – FF.C
Slot 1446	Ancillary Data Flag – FF.C
Slot 1447	Data ID Type 2 (DID)
Slot 1448	Secondary data ID (SDID)
Slot 1449	Data Count (DC)
Slot 1450	Horizontal Digital Blanking Sample 0
Slot 1451	Horizontal Digital Blanking Sample 1
Slot 1452 – Slot 1591	Horizontal Digital Blanking Samples 2 –141
Slot 1592	Horizontal Digital Blanking Sample 142
Slot 1593	Horizontal Digital Blanking Sample 143
Slot 1594	Digital Blanking Chrominance – 80.0
Slot 1595	Digital Blanking Luminance – 10.0
Slot 1596 – Slot 1721	Digital Blanking Chrominance / Luminance
Slot 1722	Digital Blanking Chrominance – 80.0
Slot 1723	Digital Blanking Luminance – 10.0
Slot 1724	Start of active Video – FF.C
Slot 1725	Start of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1726	Start of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1727	Start of active Video – SAV
Slot 0	Chrominance Blue Sample 0 = C_{B0}
Slot 1	CVBS Sample 0 = $CVBS_0$
Slot 2	Chrominance Red Sample 0 = C_{R0}
Slot 3	CVBS Sample 1 = $CVBS_1$

Table 25: PNX2000 (Mode 0) in Columbus Mode *...Continued*

656 data output	Data Input Type: Reference [3], Figure 1
Slot 4 – Slot 1435	CVBS Samples – Chrominance Samples
Slot 1436	Chrominance Blue Sample 359 = C_{B359}
Slot 1437	CVBS Sample 718 = $CVBS_{718}$
Slot 1438	Chrominance Red Sample 359 = C_{R359}
Slot 1439	CVBS Sample 719 = $CVBS_{719}$

6.4.2 PNX2000 (Mode 1) in Columbus Mode

Table 26: PNX2000 (Mode 1) in Columbus Mode

656 data output	Data Input Type: Reference [3], Figure 2
Slot 1440 – 1443	End of active Video
Slot 1444 – 1449	Ancillary Data Header
Slot 1450 – 1587	Horizontal Digital Blanking Samples
Slot 1588 – 1711	Digital Blanking Chrominance/Luminance
Slot 1712 – 1715	Start of active Video
Slot 0 – 1439	Chrominance/CVBS Samples

6.4.3 PNX2000 (Mode 0) in PNX8550 mode

Table 27: PNX2000 (Mode 0) in PNX8550 Mode

656 data output	Data Input Type: Reference [3], Figure 1
Slot 1440	End of active Video – FF.C
Slot 1441	End of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1442	End of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1443	End of active Video – EAV
Slot 1444	Digital Blanking Chrominance – 80.0
Slot 1445	Digital Blanking Luminance – 10.0
Slot 1446 – Slot 1721	Digital Blanking Chrominance / Luminance
Slot 1722	Digital Blanking Chrominance – 80.0
Slot 1723	Digital Blanking Luminance – 10.0
Slot 1724	Start of active Video – FF.C
Slot 1725	Start of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1726	Start of active Video – 00.0
Slot 1727	Start of active Video – SAV
Slot 0	Chrominance Blue Sample 0 = C_{B0}
Slot 1	Luminance Sample 0 = Y_0

Table 27: PNX2000 (Mode 0) in PNX8550 Mode *...Continued*

656 data output	Data Input Type: Reference [3], Figure 1
Slot 2	Chrominance Red Sample 0 = C_{R0}
Slot 3	Luminance Sample 1 = Y_1
Slot 4 – Slot 1435	Luminance Samples – Chrominance Samples
Slot 1436	Chrominance Blue Sample 359 = C_{B359}
Slot 1437	Luminance Sample 718 = Y_{718}
Slot 1438	Chrominance Red Sample 359 = C_{R359}
Slot 1439	Luminance Sample 719 = Y_{719}

6.4.4 PNX2000 (Mode 1) in PNX8550 mode

Table 28: PNX2000 (Mode 1) in PNX8550 Mode

656 data output	Data Input Type: Reference [3], Figure 2
Slot 1440 – 1443	End of active Video
Slot 1444 – 1711	Digital Blanking Chrominance/Luminance
Slot 1712 – 1715	Start of active Video
Slot 0 – 1439	Chrominance/CVBS Samples

6.4.5 PNX2000 (Mode 2) in PNX8550 mode

Table 29: PNX2000 (Mode 2) in PNX8550 Mode

656 data output	Data Input Type: ATSC source
Slot 1440 – 1443	End of active Video
Slot 1444 – 1645	Digital Blanking Chrominance/Luminance
Slot 1646 – 1649	Start of active Video
Slot 0 – 1439	Chrominance/Luminance Samples

6.4.6 PNX2000 (Mode 3) in PNX8550 mode

Table 30: PNX2000 (Mode 3 - Default) in PNX8550 Mode

656 data output	Data Input Type: ATSC source
Slot 1440 – 1443	End of active Video
Slot 1444 – 1975	Digital Blanking Chrominance/Luminance
Slot 1976 – 1979	Start of active Video
Slot 0 – 1439	Chrominance/Luminance Samples

Chapter 7: Audio Processing

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

7.1 General Description

The TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x) in PNX2000 forms a significant part of the audio subsystem in a Digital TV application. It performs demodulation and decoding of a wide range of analogue terrestrial TV sound standards, and provides a wealth of audio processing and enhancement features relevant for use in a TV set. It interfaces to the PNX3000 device for analogue inputs including modulated audio from a tuner block, and contains 12 Audio D/A Converters for output of analogue audio to the set's loudspeakers and external connectors. A standard I^2S format interface allows connection to a multi-channel digital audio decoder, the output of which can be processed and enhanced in the Sound Core before being rendered on the DAC outputs. The Sound Core has sufficient capacity to process audio signals for multiple outputs simultaneously, such as a multi-channel loudspeaker set, stereo headphones, and line-level outputs for recording or connection to an external amplifier.

An easy-to-use control concept is provided for easiest programming of the very complex functionality of the TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x). Pre-defined setups are available for all implemented sound processing modes. A very flexible loudspeaker switching concept allows it to adapt the pre-defined setups to the specific loudspeaker application.The built-in intelligence for pre-defined standards and Auto Standard Detection (ASD) allows an easy setup of the demodulator and decoder part.

The control concept for the demodulator and decoder (DEMDEC) is based on the following features:

- Easy demodulator setup for all implemented standards with Demodulator and Decoder Easy Programming (DDEP) for a pre-selected standard, or combined with Auto Standard Detection (ASD) for automatic detection of a transmitted standard
- Automatic decoder configuration and signal routing depending on the selected or detected standard
- FM overmodulation adaptation option to avoid clipping and distortion

The control concept for the audio processor is based on the following features:

- Pre-defined setups for the sound processing modes like Dolby® Pro Logic® II and Virtual Dolby® Surround
- Flexible configuration of audio outputs to the loudspeaker configuration with an additional output crossbar
- Master volume function

7.2 Supported Standards

The multistandard capability of the TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x) covers all terrestrial TV sound standards, FM Radio and satellite FM.

The AM sound of L/L' standard is normally demodulated in the 1st sound IF. The resulting audio signal has to be entered into the mono audio input of the TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x). A second possibility is to use the internal AM demodulator stage; however, this may result in limited performance because of video crosstalk in the IF circuitry.

Korea has a stereo sound system similar to Europe. It is supported by the TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x). Differences include deviation, modulation contents and identification. It is based on M standard.

Other features of the DEMDEC are:

- M/BTSC and N standards supported
- M/Japan (EIAJ) supported
- FM Radio stereo decoding
- Alignment-free, fully digital system
- For BTSC full dbx performance (non dbx version is possible by hardware programming)
- SAP demodulation (without dbx) simultaneously with stereo decoding, or mono plus SAP with dbx
- Line/pilot frequency selectable from 15.734 kHz and 15.625 kHz (or automatic detection / auto search)
- High selectivity for pilot detection, high robustness against high-frequency audio components
- Pilot lock indicator
- SAP detector
- Separate noise detectors for stereo and SAP with adjustable threshold levels, hysteresis, and automute function

An overview of the supported standards and sound systems and their key parameters is given in the following tables.

The analogue multi-channel sound systems (A2, A2+ and A2*) are sometimes also named 2CS (2 carrier systems).

7.2.1 Analogue 2-carrier Systems

Table 1: Frequency Modulation

Standard	Sound System	Carrier Frequency (MHz)	FM Deviation (kHz) nom./ max./over	Bandwidth/ De-emphasis (kHz/μs)	Modulation SC1	SC2
M	mono	4.5	15/25/50	mono	–	15/75
M	A2+	4.5/4.724	15/25/50	[1]§$_2$(L + R)	[1]§$_2$(L – R)	15/75 (Korea)
B/G	A2	5.5/5.742	27/50/80	[1]§$_2$(L + R)	R	15/50
I	mono	6.0	27/50/80	mono	–	15/50
D/K (1)	A2	6.5/6.258	27/50/80	[1]§$_2$(L + R)	R	15/50
D/K (2)	A2*	6.5/6.742	27/50/80	[1]§$_2$(L + R)	R	15/50
D/K (3)	A2	6.5/5.742	27/50/80	[1]§$_2$(L + R)	R	15/50

Table 2: Identification for A2 Systems

Parameter	A2/A2*	A2+ (Korea)
Pilot frequency	54.6875 kHz = 3.5 × line frequency	55.0699 kHz = 3.5 × line frequency
Stereo identification frequency	$117.5\ \text{Hz} = \frac{\text{line frequency}}{133}$	$149.9\ \text{Hz} = \frac{\text{line frequency}}{105}$
Dual identification frequency	$274.1\ \text{Hz} = \frac{\text{line frequency}}{57}$	$276.0\ \text{Hz} = \frac{\text{line frequency}}{57}$
AM modulation depth	50%	50%

7.2.2 2-carrier Systems with NICAM

Table 3: NICAM Standards

Standard	Frequency (MHz)	TYPE	Index (%nom./max.)	Deviation (kHz) nom./ max./over	SC2 (MHz) NICAM	De-emphasis	Roll-off(%)	NICAM coding
B/G	5.5	FM	–	27/50/80	5.85	J17	40	[3-1]
I	6.0	FM	–	27/50/80	6.552	J17	100	[3-1]
D/K	6.5	FM	–	27/50/80	5.85	J17	40	[3-1]
L	6.5	AM	54/100	–	5.85	J17	40	[3-1]

[3-1] See the *EBU*, or equivalent, specification.

7.2.3 Satellite Systems

An important specification for satellite TV reception is the *Astra specification*. The TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x) is suited for the reception of Astra and other satellite signals.

Table 4: FM Satellite Sound

Carrier type	Carrier frequency (MHz)	Modulation Index	Max. FM Deviation (kHz)	Modulation	Bandwidth/ De-emphasis (kHz/μs)
Main	6.50[4-1]	0.26	85	Mono[4-1]	15/50[4-2]
Sub	7.02/7.20	0.15	50	m/st/d[4-2]	15/adaptive[4-3]
Sub	7.38/7.56	0.15	50	m/st/d[4-2]	15/adaptive[4-3]
Sub	7.74/7.92	0.15	50	m/st/d[4-2]	15/adaptive[4-3]
Sub	8.10/8.28	0.15	50	m/st/d[4-2]	15/adaptive[4-3]

[4-1] For other satellite systems, frequencies of, for example, 5.80, 6.60 or 6.65 MHz can also be received. A de-emphasis of 60 μs, or in accordance with J17, is available.

[4-2] m/st/d = mono or stereo or dual language sound.

[4-3] Adaptive de-emphasis = compatible to transmitter specification.

7.2.4 BTSC/SAP, Japan (EIAJ) and FM Radio Systems

Table 5: Frequency Modulation

Standard	Sound system	Carrier frequency (MHz)	FM deviation (kHz) nom./max./over	Modulation	Bandwidth/ de-emphasis (kHz/μs)
M	Mono	4.5	15/25/50	Mono	15/75
M	BTSC	4.5	50 max	MPX (FM/AM)	14/[5-1]
	SAP	5fh=78,67 kHz	15 max	SAP (FM)	8/[5-1]
M	Japan	4.5	15/25/50	MPX (FM/FM)	15/50
FM Radio	Stereo	4.5...10.7	40/75/150	MPX (FM/AM)	15/75 or 15/50

[5-1] not applicable due to dbx noise reduction

Table 6: Identification for BTSC/SAP, Japan (EIAJ) and FM Radio Systems

Parameter	Pilot Tone Frequency
BTSC	1fh = 15.734 kHz
Japan/(EIAJ)	3.5fh = 55,069 kHz
FM Radio	19 kHz

7.3 Features

7.3.1 Demodulator and Decoder

- Demodulator and Decoder Easy Programming (DDEP)
- Auto standard detection (ASD)
- Static Standard Selection (SSS)

- DQPSK demodulation for different standards, simultaneously with 1-channel FM demodulation
- NICAM decoding (B/G, I, D/K and L standard)
- Two-carrier multistandard FM demodulation (B/G, D/K and M standard)
- Decoding for three analogue multi-channel systems (A2, A2+ and A2*) and satellite sound
- Adaptive de-emphasis for satellite FM
- Optional AM demodulation for system L, simultaneously with NICAM
- Identification A2 systems (B/G, D/K and M standard) with different identification time constants
- FM pilot carrier present detector
- Monitor selection for FM/AM DC values and signals, with peak and quasi peak detection option
- BTSC MPX decoder
- SAP decoder
- dbx noise reduction
- Japan (EIAJ) decoder
- FM radio decoder
- Soft-mute for DEMDEC outputs DEC, MONO and SAP
- FM overmodulation adaptation option to avoid clipping and distortion
- Sample rate conversion (SRC) for up to three demodulated terrestrial audio signals. It is possible to process SCART signals together with demodulated terrestrial signals.

7.3.2 Audio Multi Channel Decoder

- Dolby® Pro Logic® II Surround (DPL2) — Registered Trademark of Dolby Laboratories
- Six channel processing for Main Left and Right, Subwoofer, Center, Surround Left and Surround Right

7.3.3 Volume and Tone Control

- Automatic Volume Level (AVL) control
- Smooth volume control
- Master volume control and Balance
- Soft-mute

- Loudness
- Bass, Treble
- Dynamic Bass Enhancement (DBE)
- Dynamic Ultra Bass (DUBII)
- Non processed subwoofer
- 5 band equalizer
- Acoustical compensation
- Programmable beeper
- Noise generator for loudspeaker level trimming

7.3.4 Reflection and Delay

- Dolby® Pro Logic® Delay
- Pseudo hall/matrix function

7.3.5 Psychoacoustic Spatial Algorithms, Downmix and Split

- Incredible Mono
- Incredible Stereo
- Virtual Dolby® Surround (VDS 522,523)
- Virtual Dolby® Digital (VDD 522,523)
- Bass Redirection according to Dolby® specifications

7.3.6 Interfaces and Switching

- Digital crossbar switch for all digital signal sources and destinations
- Output crossbar for exchange of channel processing functionality
- Digital audio input interface (stereo I^2S input interface)
- Digital audio output interface (stereo I^2S output interface)
- Voice recognition output interface (stereo I^2S output interface)
- Audio monitor for level detection
- 8 audio DACs for six channel loudspeaker outputs and stereo headphones output
- 4 audio DACs for stereo SCART output and stereo LINE output.
- Serial data link interface for interfacing with the analogue multi-purpose interface IC PNX3000 (PNX3000).

7.4 Functional Overview of the Sound Core

The Sound Core contains two DSP cores as shown in Figure 1. The first core called DEMDEC-DSP is combined with DEMDEC hardware and the second core is the AUDIO-DSP. The DEMDEC-DSP is used for the decoder and demodulator tasks, plus the sample rate conversion.

The AUDIO-DSP is used for the sound features, from the level adjust unit up to the output cross bar. Audio DACs and I^2S hardware convert the processed signals to analogue or digital audio.

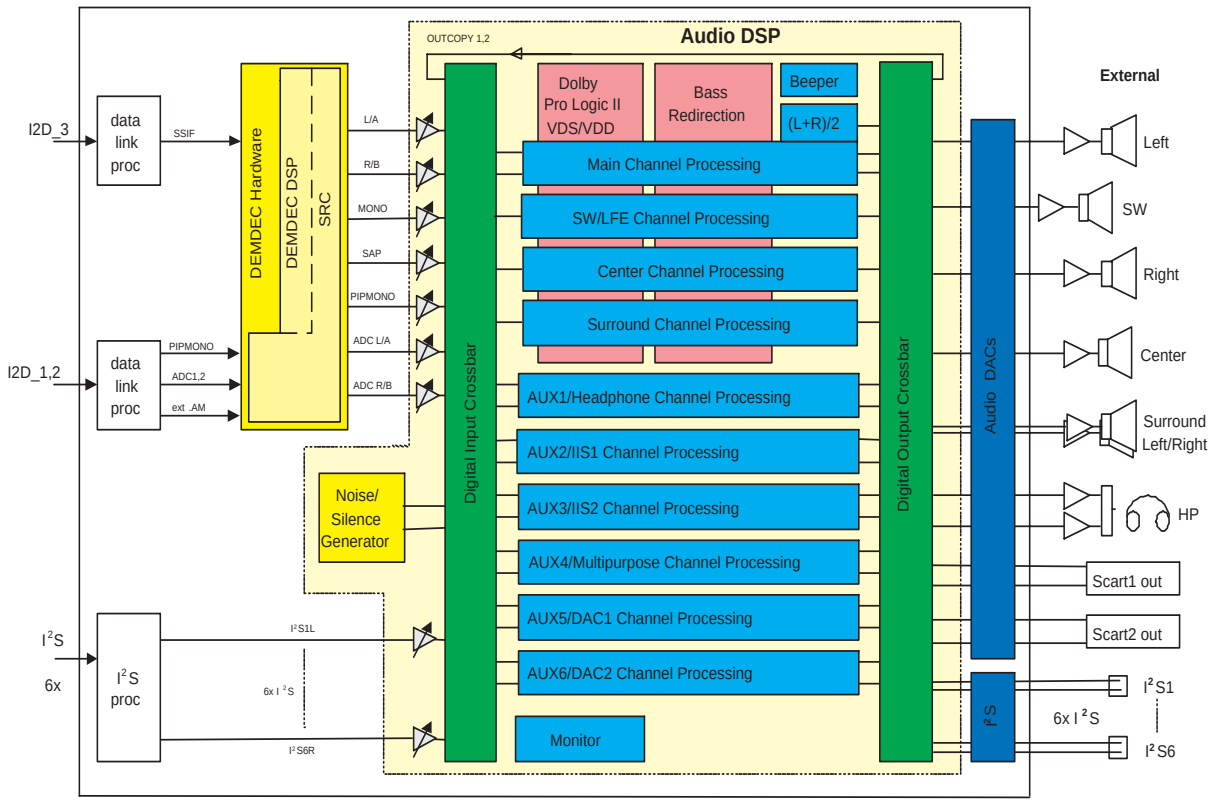


Figure 1: Sound Functions

All I^2D data links carry sound signals. The data link processing splits them from the other signals such as video so that the DEMDEC block receives the second sound IF (SSIF) and the audio signals from the audio ADCs of the PNX3000 IC.

The SSIF needs some hardware processing before it enters the DEMDEC DSP Section 7.8.

The audio signals from the audio ADCs of PNX3000 are passing the DEMDEC DSP only for source selection and sample rate conversion.

The Audio DSP block shows the structure of the audio processing. After level adjust all signals from the DEMDEC and the I^2S input are available at the Digital Input Crossbar. Special inputs are provided by the OUTCOPY 1, 2 signal, a feedback from the Digital Output Crossbar, and the Noise/Silence Generator needed for Dolby® Pro Logic® processing. Every audio channel can be connected to each of the inputs to the Digital Input Crossbar. All channel processing delivers signals to the Digital Output Crossbar which offers the facility to connect each of the channel signals to the appropriate DACs or to the I^2S outputs. The crossbar offers the freedom to the set manufacturer to choose the purpose of the speaker DACs, whether they feed the L, R, C, SL, SR or SW power amplifier, according to the needs of his chassis layout.

In normal TV applications two of the DAC outputs will be used to feed a headphone but they can also be dedicated to other purposes.

Two DAC stereo outputs are provided for the audio feedback to the PNX3000 IC. They are located to pins of the device that suit best for connection to PNX3000.

Digital audio output signals are available from six I^2S outputs. One of them can be switched to half of the clock of the other ones for a special application. The purpose of the outputs is up to set manufacturer's choice.

Details of the audio processing is described in following sections.

7.5 Sound Core Control Interface

The Sound Core is controlled by writing to locations within its address range in the memory map, much like any other block in the PNX2000 device. The PNX2000 Register List (Book 3 of 3) contains the complete list and descriptions of all user-accessible registers in the Sound Core.

The registers are divided into two sections, one for each DSP unit (DEMDEC and AUDIO). From each DSP unit base address, the bottom 64 words (address offsets 0x00 - 0xFC) are the Software Control Registers. Physically these are not conventional registers, but locations in RAM. Instead of controlling hardware directly, they are read by the software running internally on the DSP units, which alters its behaviour according to the register contents. The DSPs can also write status information back to assigned memory addresses for polling by the application software.

From the user's point of view, the only difference between the Software Control Registers and any other conventional register is the access time. The DSP software only allows control access to the DSP memories once per audio sample period, so there will be a latency of up to $1/f_S$ on accesses to the Software Control Registers (where f_S is the current audio sample frequency in use on the I^2S interface). For this reason, the time-out value of the BCU must be programmed to a minimum of $1/f_S$ to prevent spurious time-outs from occurring during access to the Sound Core registers.

The Sound Core contains a unit called the Bus Allocation Minimizer (BAM), which is intended to prevent long wait-states on the PI-bus caused by the Software Control Register access latency. This is not relevant in the PNX2000 since all control is via the (relatively low-bandwidth) I^2C interface, so the BAM should not be enabled in normal use.

7.6 I²S

The Soundblock contains different digital serial audio inputs, serial digital outputs and associated clock signals. It can be used to supply, for example, audio signals from received TV programs to a digital audio output device (AES/EBU format), or import serial audio signals from other sources for reproduction through the TV set's loudspeaker and/or head phone channels.

Three serial audio formats are supported at the feature interface:

- Philips I²S format
- Sony I²S format
- Japanese LSB justified format 24-bits

The differences between the formats are illustrated in the subsequent diagrams, see Figure 2 to Figure 4.

In the Philips and Sony formats the left audio channel of a stereo sample pair is output first and is placed on the serial data line (SDI for input, SDO for output) when the word select line (WS) is LOW. Data is written at the trailing edge of SCK and read at the leading edge of SCK. The most significant bit is sent first.

In the Japanese LSB justified format the right audio channel of a stereo sample pair is output first. The most significant bit is sent first but data is LSB aligned to the falling edge of the word select line (WS).

The following is only applicable for Japanese LSB justified formats:

The input circuitry is limited in handling the number of SCK pulses per WS level. The maximum allowed number of bitclocks per WS is 64(per mono audio word 32 bitclocks). Also the number of bitclocks during the low and high phase of WS must be equal or more than the selected format (24 bits).

All inputs and the output work with the same sampling frequency, formats and word sizes.

For input, six stereo channels per sampling frequency are transmitted.The number of significant bits is 24.

For output, six stereo channels (2*32 bits) per sampling frequency are transmitted.The number of significant bits on the output is 24.

The number of bitclock (BCK) pulses may vary in the application. When the applied word length is smaller than 24 bits, the LSB bits will be set to “0” internally. When the applied word length exceeds 24 bits, the LSB’s are skipped.

During master mode the word select output is clocked with the audio sample frequency at 48 kHz. The serial clock output (BCK) is clocked at a frequency of 64*Fs. This means, that there are 64 clock pulses per pair of stereo output samples, or 32 clock pulses per sample. Depending again on the signal source, the number of significant bits on the serial data output SDO is 24. Apart from just feeding a digital audio device, such as a DAC or an AES/EBU transmitter, the serial data outputs can be connected directly to the serial inputs (loop-back connection) or first to an external

device, e.g. a feature DSP such as the SAA7710 and then back to the serial inputs. In all of these configurations, the SCK and WS clocks will be generated by the DIOP, which then is the I^2S-bus master.

In slave mode, the external source is master and supplies the clock (BCK) and the word select (WS). The I^2S interface works on sampling frequencies of 32kHz to 48kHz.Formats.

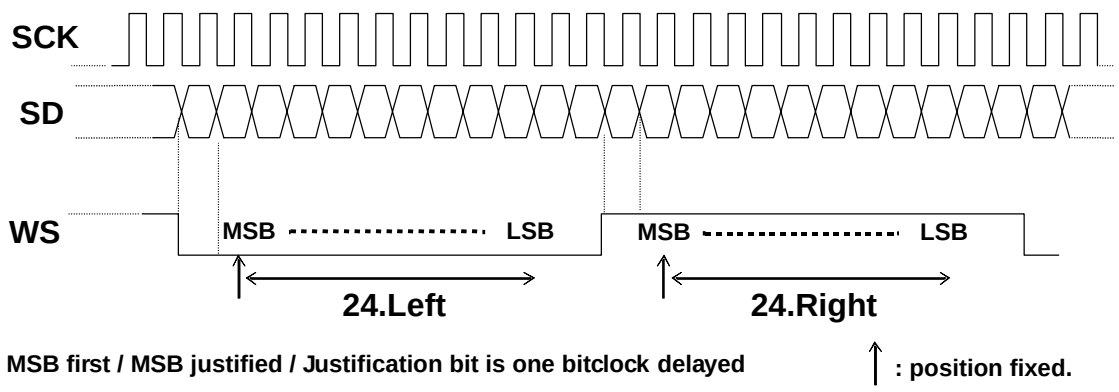


Figure 2: Philips I^2S Format

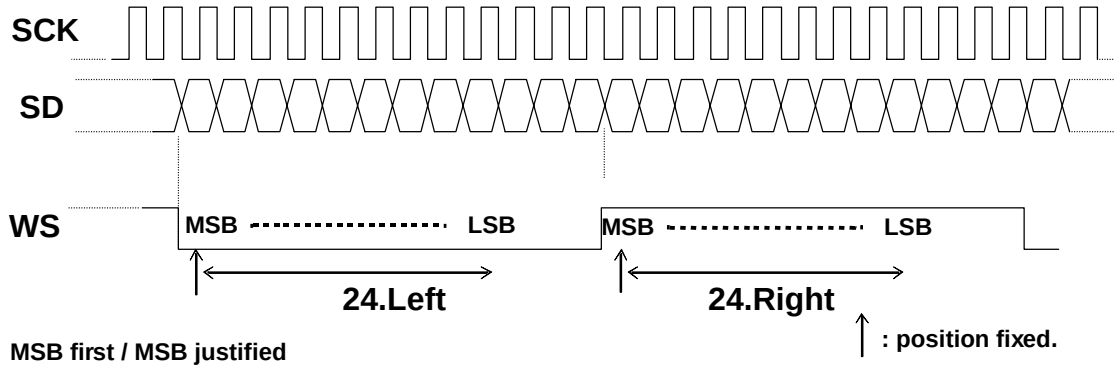


Figure 3: Sony I^2S Format

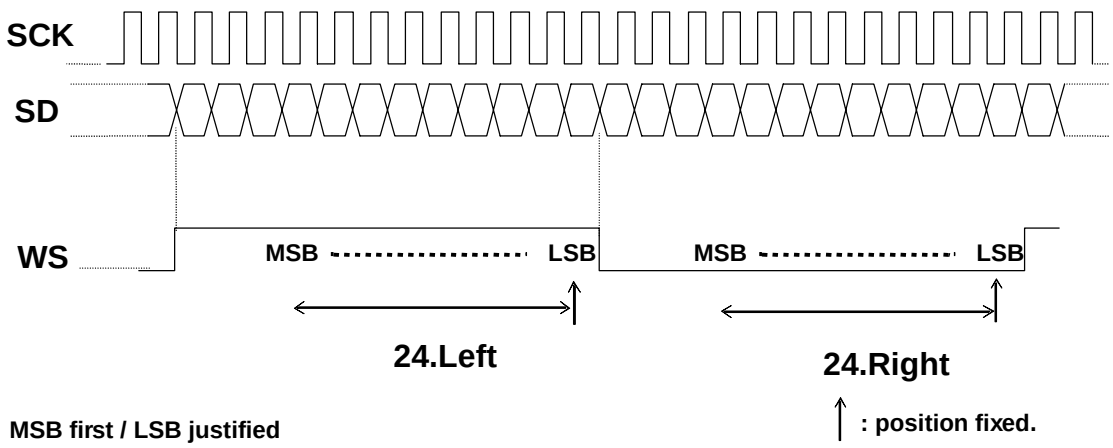


Figure 4: Japanese Format

7.7 Digital-Analogue Converters

The TV Sound Processing Core (PNX300x) contains twelve audio DACs. These DACs are typically used to provide six analogue loudspeaker outputs, two analogue headphone outputs and four analogue audio output connections from the digital sound processing core to an external analogue crossbar switch section.

Each of these audio DACs is based on the SDAC type meaning that it incorporates a switched resistor architecture. This special multi-stage bitstream digital-to-analogue converter requires a 128-fold oversampled input signal. The oversampled input signal is internally preprocessed by a 3rd order noise shaper to achieve a further noise reduction in the audio frequency band.

The DAC itself is capable to convert a 4 bit input signal into 16 different analog output levels. These levels are generated using 15 resistors of 15 kΩ each which are placed between an analogue switch either to supply or ground and the analogue voltage output pin. The AC output resistance of this circuit equals 1 kΩ.

Since the DAC itself does not contain any interpolating low-pass filter at its output an additional external capacitor is required. Together with the AC output resistance this capacitor represents a sufficient first order low-pass. Using a capacitor of approximately 3.3 nF results into a 3 dB roll-off at 48 kHz.

The SDAC analog voltage output has neither current source nor sink capability. Therefore an appropriate AC coupling is required in the application to connect to e.g. to a subsequent power amplifier.

7.8 Demdec DSP

DEMDEC Easy Programming (short DDEP) is the name of the high-level control interface to the DEMDEC DSP in the SoundCore. Its main intention is to make the development of system control software for the DEMDEC as simple as possible, while optimally exploiting the available hardware and DSP resources.

The functionality of DDEP is divided into three main areas:

1. Demodulator and decoder configuration with optional standard and second carrier / subcarrier search;
2. Decoding, signal routing and switching for simple handling of broadcast sound signal types, plus encoding of the main status register;
3. FM overmodulation adaptation: optional adaptive reduction of levels and filter widening in case of overmodulation, in order to avoid distortions due to clipping or overflow.

The DDEP software controls both the demodulator hardware and the real-time signal processing software running on the same DSP, e.g. by changing filter coefficients, pointers etc, often depending on status information generated by hardware or software.

Most functions act like “background processes": small code sections are executed at a reduced rate (for instance every 32nd sample at 32 kHz = 1000 times per second), in order to accommodate a large amount of program code without consuming too much of the available processing power of the DSP. A "control timeslot" is reserved in the DSP software in which both control register decoding and background processing is performed.

7.8.1 DDEP in Brief

DDEP can operate in one of two modes, which differ only in the type of standard handling. Additionally, a few options are available to the user.

In ASD (Auto Standard Detection) mode, an automatic TV sound standard and carrier search is performed at a channel switch, following preferences determined by the user or the system controller, such that a standard detection and identification (stereo / dual) result is obtained as fast as the hardware permits. If only the stereo system within a standard changes later, the search procedure adapts (e.g. B/G A2 to B/G NICAM or vice versa).

The SSS (Static Standard Selection) mode requires the user to *select* the sound standard (incl. stereo system) by means of a standard code (e.g. code 4 denotes "B/G A2", the European analog FM two-carrier standard) and no searching is done. This mode is like a subset of the ASD mode in that it acts similarly to the ASD mode if the standard detection has found the *selected* standard. However, in SSS mode the decoder never changes to a different standard, and the user must supply settings that ASD selects by its own expertise (IDENT speed for A2 standards and line frequency for BTSC). The SSS mode can be used to enforce a certain sound standard in case ASD was unable to find a sound carrier (see Section 7.8.13.4) and is needed to select FM Radio decoding. The ASD routines operate as if using the SSS mode to select a certain standard.

In both of these modes, the DDEP system handles the other signal processing and settings automatically without a need for further interaction, and also allows the same options:

- It is possible *not* to use the default NICAM configuration for a detected or selected standard, but supply other settings via the NICAM configuration register (see Section 7.8.8.6)

- The default thresholds and hysteresis sizes for noise-based automute and SAP detection can be overruled (see Section 7.8.8.8).
- The optional overmodulation adaptation may be used in ASD as well as in SSS mode (see Section 7.8.14.2).
- A pre-scaling of the EXTAM signal is usually needed to obtain a correct level.
- As NICAM sound often seems softer than the FM sound, an additional level adjust for this signal path is possible.
- Levels of the DEMDEC output signals may be changed individually if a level other than the nominal -15 dBFS (with nominal modulation degrees) is desired: in the AUDIO DSP, all signal levels can be adjusted before the first digital crossbar.

DDEP can be switched off completely, allowing user access to all low-level settings. All automatic settings are then disabled. This is called "DEMDEC expert mode" ("manual mode") and it requires detailed knowledge and understanding of the hardware and software affected. A *satellite TV application* requires expert mode since satellite sound is not supported by DDEP. For this application, all configurations like carrier frequencies and de-emphasis types must be supplied by the set user or need to be pre-programmed. Expert mode is also needed for Philips internal evaluation purposes.

Figure 5 shows the management of the two different control register sets, DDEP and expert mode, and their translation into software and hardware settings.

All central DDEP functions are controlled by writing a single register, the DDEPR (see Section 7.8.8), located in the XRAM (data memory) of the EPICS DSP and accessible via the I^2C bus interface of AVIP.

7.8.2 What DDEP Does NOT Do

1. DDEP does **not** handle the SIF frontend (input selection, AGC etc.) since this is application dependent and forms part of another chip or IP block (currently MPIF). It is also lacking information about the SSIF input level, IF lock, video detection, or other parts of the system.
2. The DEMDEC expert mode registers are **not** overwritten by DDEP, so it is not possible to read internal settings (such as the hardware configuration) from these registers. This is for two main reasons: control registers must not change their own value (except at reset), and it is too complicated to *encode* the expert mode registers from the distinct DDEP variables and settings.
3. DDEP has nothing to do with controlling the audio features in the Audio DSP of the sound core.

4. It is currently not possible to exchange the standard detection routines by user-defined algorithms.

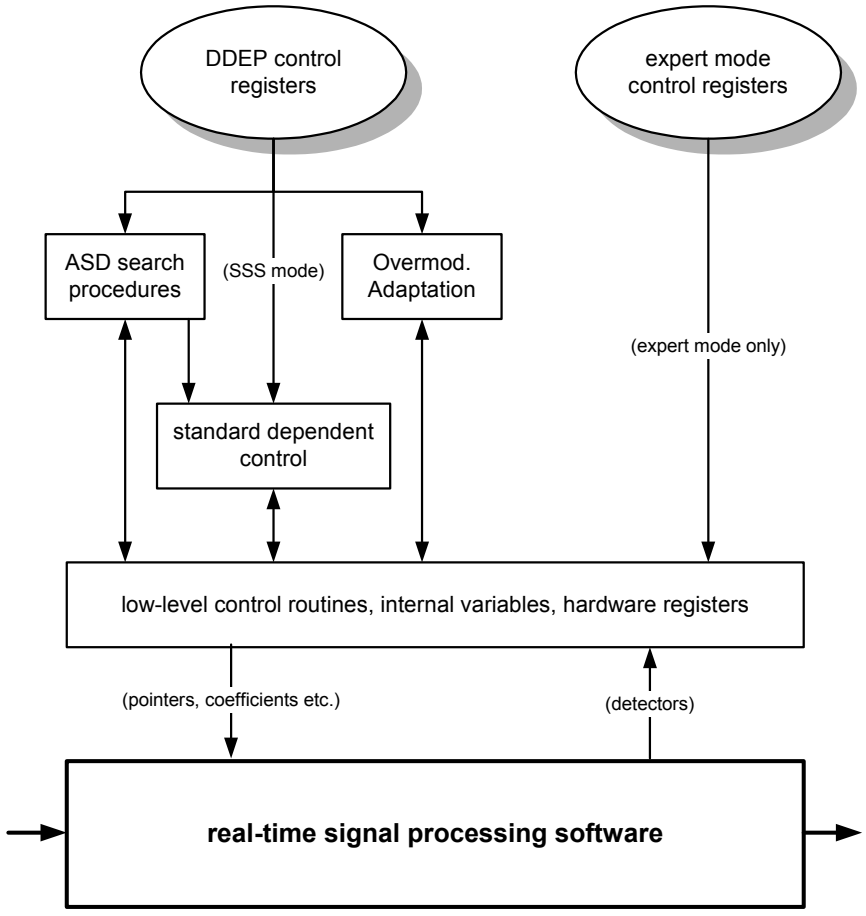


Figure 5: Control Flow

7.8.3 Design Considerations

The following requirements and priorities were identified for the design of the DDEP functionality.

1. Detection of sound standards and stereo / bilingual mode must be as fast as possible, i.e. as fast as the hardware permits.
2. DEMDEC control should be possible with a minimum of transfers, preferably via a single control and one status register.
3. Except during initialization and channel switching, no further controller interaction should be necessary.
4. The controller should have the option to change a number of default settings.
5. The control interface should help to minimize the risks involved in standard detection (see Section 7.8.14.1).
6. The control (I^2C or PI bus) register map should be easy to overview, with related functions placed in one register or close to each other.

7. Registers are writable / readable with auto-increment of addresses (for access via I^2C)
8. Refreshing registers should be allowed without major restrictions.
9. All automatic settings can be disabled, allowing control in a basic way using low-level settings (mainly for debugging, validation and internal purposes).
10. Complexity should not be too high in order to allow economic implementation on a EPICS7A DSP.

7.8.4 DDEP Basics and Usage

This chapter explains everything that a control software developer needs to know in order to manage the SoundCore DEMDEC DSP in a terrestrial TV or VCR application.

7.8.5 DEMDEC Hardware Blocks and the Sample Rate Problem

Due to the high bandwidth and computational requirements, the actual demodulation of the sound carrier(s) is implemented in dedicated digital hardware. These are:

1. Two FM / AM demodulator channels with programmable mixer frequencies and four different filter bandwidths, as present in all TDA987x(A) digital stereo decoders;
2. A NICAM demodulator and decoder for all NICAM standards, mostly identical to the TDA9874(A) and TDA9875(A), but adapted to 27 MHz system clock and using an internal timing (symbol tracking) loop instead of a DCXO;
3. An identification circuit for all standards as in TDA987x(A) but extended by the Japanese standard detectors;
4. An additional "BSJ" ("BTSC, SAP, Japan") block (PS restricted) provides MPX demodulation (for BTSC and FM Radio), FM subchannel demodulation plus matching filter (for SAP and EIAJ standard), and a noise detector. This block was not yet present in TDA987x(A) and adds "global TV sound" capability to the DEMDEC.

The dedicated demodulator and decoder hardware delivers "raw" signals that cannot be used without further processing in the DEMDEC DSP. Furthermore, each signal type comes in with a different sample rate: the analog sound carrier channels produce samples at n*35.2 kHz (derived from the 27 MHz clock by dividers $3 \cdot 2^n$); NICAM audio is sampled at 32 kHz (synchronized to the transmitter), and the ADCs deliver signals with 52.7 kHz sample rate (rounded values). In order to achieve a common sample rate for all these signals, a flexible or asynchronous *sample rate conversion (SRC)* is necessary, as explained below.

The AUDIO DSP runs at a sample rate determined by the operating mode of the sound core:

- in I2S master mode (the default), a fixed sample rate of 48 kHz is derived from the system clock (32 and 44.1 kHz are also possible);
- in I2S slave mode, the WS (word select) signal of the external device is the clock master. The SoundCore supports 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz sample rates in I2S slave mode.

Figure 6 shows the hardware blocks described and their interconnection to the DSP. The hardware is normally controlled by the DDEP software, or via the expert mode.

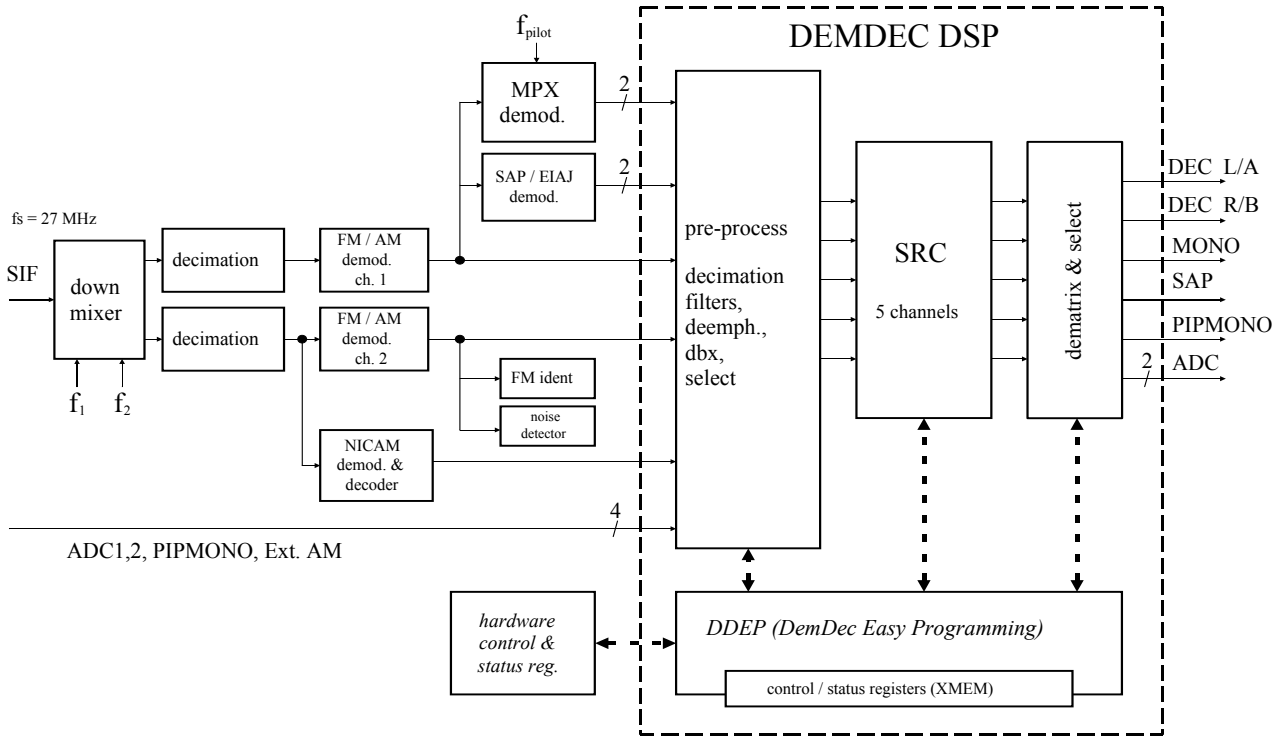


Figure 6: DEMDEC structure

7.8.6 Signal Processing in DSP Software

The output signals of the above-mentioned hardware blocks, plus four audio ADC channels are read in by the DSP, processed, converted to the current audio sample rate, "demultiplexed", and forwarded to the Audio DSP for further processing (volume, tone control, effects etc.). Figure 7 shows this signal flow in a simplified structure.

The DSP applies several filters, like down-sampling and de-emphasis, noise reduction processing (Wegener-Panda / dbx expanders), performs a sample rate conversion (SRC) to the current audio sample rate, and routs the decoded signals to the output channels. The first (topmost in pair of output channels, called DEC (from DECoder), is intended to carry the stereo or bilingual (dual) signal; an extra "MONO" channel always contains the mono signal from the first sound carrier (always FM or AM), or the main channel ([L+R]/2) of the MPX type standards BTSC, FM Radio and EIAJ. (This channel may contain different audio contents in case of NICAM.) Another single channel named "SAP" transports a SAP signal if detected during a BTSC reception. PIPMONO is the monaural sound belonging to the "picture-in-picture" feature and may come from a second tuner or some other source. The two "ADC" channels are originating from some other external device, usually via the SCART stereo input connector. The “PIPMONO” and “ADC” signals are not processed further.

The "external AM" signal (EXTAM in Figure 7 and Figure 8) should be used for standard L/L' as the "internal" (related to the SoundCore) digital AM demodulator does usually not achieve the S/N performance of an analog demodulator operating on the first sound IF. The EXTAM signal may come from the IF frontend's (MPIF or successor) *internal* AM demodulator or another external device. It is routed by DDEP to the MONO output of the DEMDEC (and to the DEC as well if no NICAM is detected), see also Table 8.

By means of this signal routing, the processing paths in the audio backend do not need to select a specific source depending on the currently active sound standard as was required in earlier Philips stereo decoders (FM/AM, NICAM source). For every audio processing path, the controller can select the DEC, MONO etc. output like any other signal source (ADC, I2S input,…). The information about the signal type (mono, stereo, dual) on the DEC channels is available from two status bits (see Section 7.8.10). This also allows the audio backend to implement a "smart matrix" which selects one of the two languages in dual mode, or stereo in other cases (see Section 7.8.10.1).

The MONO output can be selected in case stereo / dual is not wanted, while a two-channel output to another destination is still possible. A special case is a NICAM transmission with independent contents of analog and NICAM sound carriers (indicated by status flag RSSF=0) when the mono channel carries a different signal than the NICAM channels.

The switching structure of the output processing block, Figure 8, matches the requirements of the various standards and allows simple handling of auto-mute issues etc.

Internal scalings are applied in DDEP mode (not all shown in the diagrams due to limited space) such that all outputs signals have a level of -15 dBFS for nominal modulation degrees (e.g. 54% full scale sine wave = 27 kHz FM deviation of a B/G FM carrier). Additional level adjustments can be performed at the digital crossbar in the audio DSP. In expert mode, the internal scalings, switches etc. must be controlled via the expert mode registers.

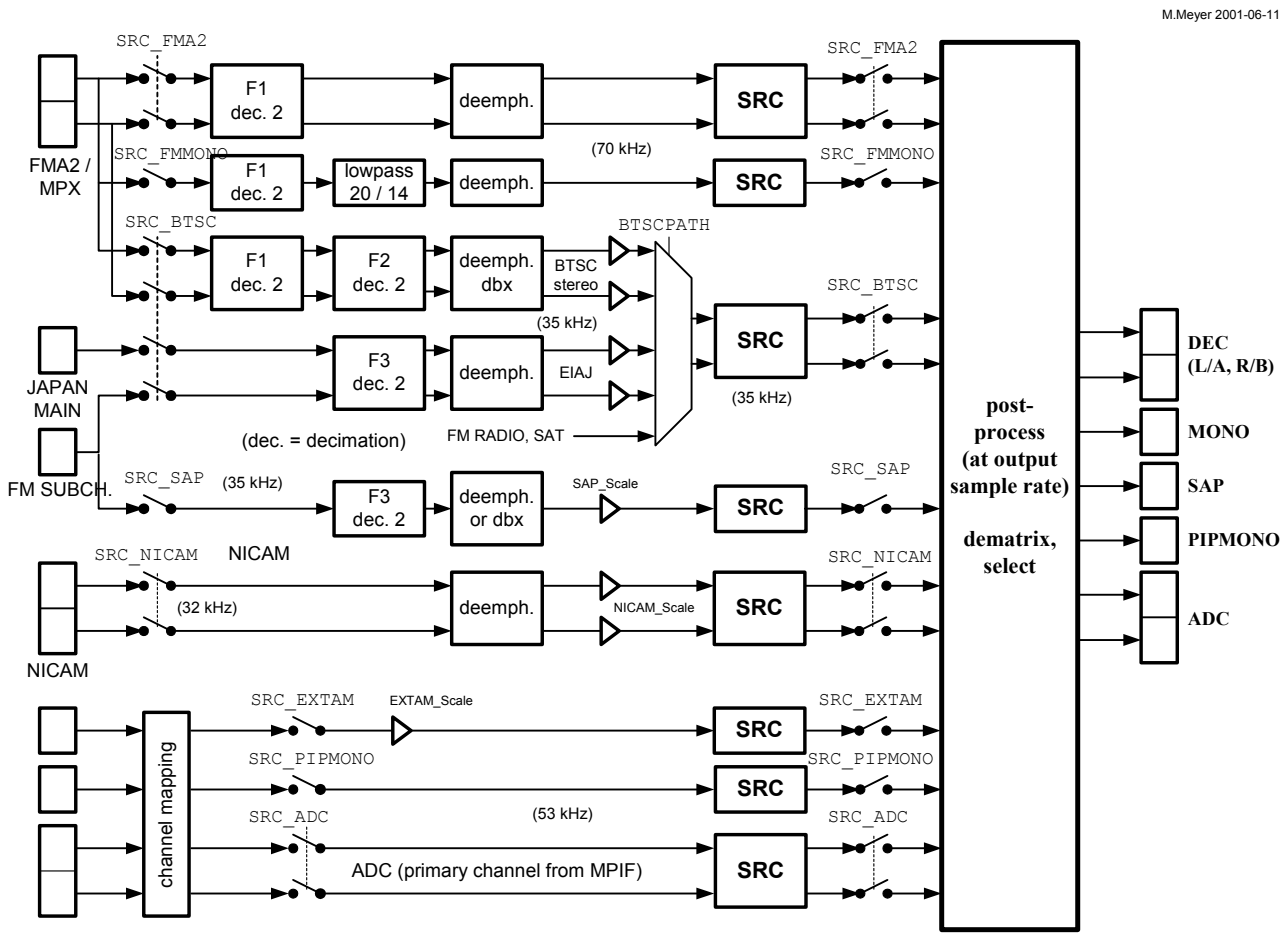


Figure 7: Signal Processing Modules and SRC in DEMDEC DSP (Simplified)

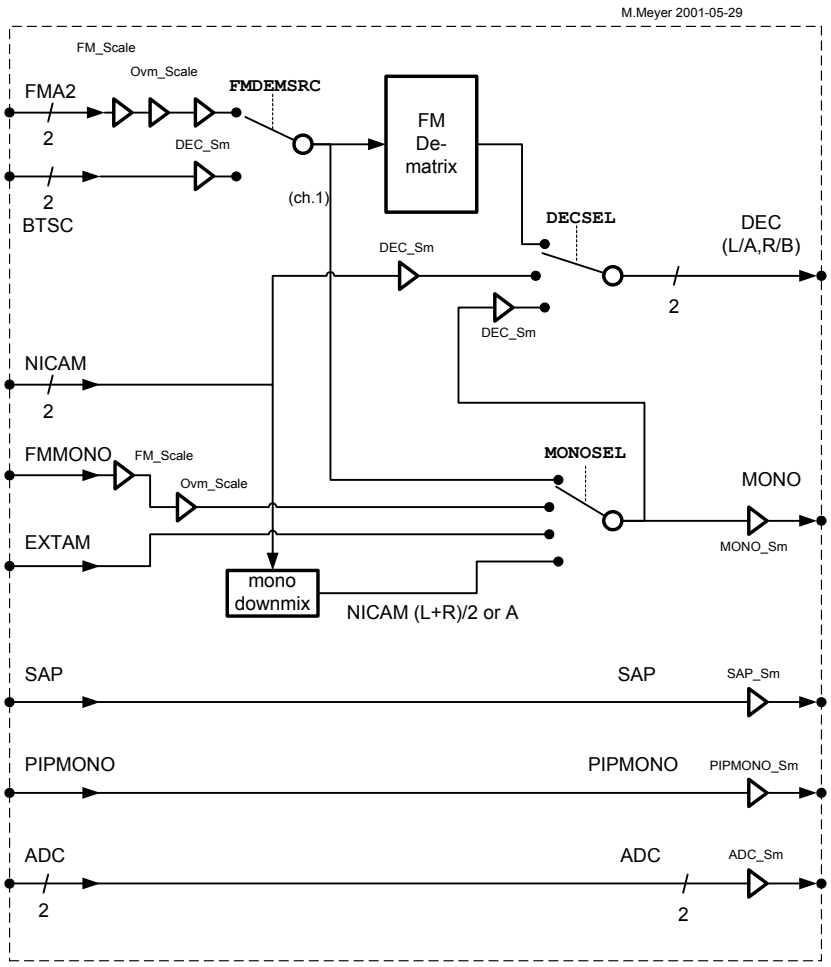


Figure 8: Switching and Matrixing in Post-processing Block

7.8.7 SRC constraints

A high-quality flexible sample rate conversion, i.e. a re-sampling with a fractional and varying frequency ratio, is very costly in terms of computing power due to a high amount of filtering needs. The DEMDEC DSP, if running at the currently specified clock of 140 MHz (= 140 MIPS), has a capacity to process five SRC channels plus the required TV sound-related processing (pre-/post-processing) and administration overhead.

The TV sound demodulators / decoders and audio ADCs can produce up to six independent channels: two channels for stereo or bilingual TV sound, a third language (SAP in the BTSC standard, or the analog sound carrier in NICAM standards), PIPMONO, and a two-channel ADC. These outputs are indicated in Figure 6 and further explained in this section. However, only up to five channels can be processed by the SRC due to the limited DSP capacity.

Therefore, it is necessary that the controller selects which channels are to be converted by SRC, depending on which sources for the audio backend are desired by the set's user. How this is accomplished is explained below.

This limitation to five channels is not an actual restriction because it can be assumed that not more than three independent audio output facilities are present in the sound subsystem, as it is usually the case in a TV set (speakers, headphone, and a SCART output).

The system controller has to select a certain “preferred” SRC channel configuration by the 2-bit variable `SRCPREF` (SRC PREFerence) in the DDEP control register, see Section 7.8.8. Although the SRC constraints are not much related to the actual DEMDEC functionality, this variable has been placed in the DDEP control register in order to maintain the advantage of a single-register control facility.

The generalized meanings of the values the `SRCPREF` variable may assume are listed in Table 7. It is meaningful mostly in sound standards where an independent third channel may be present, these are the BTSC and NICAM standards. For the FM A2 and EIAJ standards, no restrictions apply, but `SRCPREF` can be used consistently to suppress stereo decoding like in the other cases, by choosing `SRCPREF`:= 3. Likewise, if no stereo / dual mode is detected or auto-mute is active, a configuration equivalent to `SRCPREF` = 3 is chosen automatically (i.e. other settings are internally overruled), such that all the other signals can be converted. Table 8 gives a detailed overview of all these possible SRC configurations.

The controller will rarely choose configurations with `SRCPREF` = 3, but it is required for example if NICAM stereo is received, and the analog sound carrier, PIPMONO, and ADC sources are selected in the audio backend. It can also serve to disable stereo decoding (“forced mono”) in case of unstable reception conditions to avoid flickering.

Remark: In this case the GST and GDU bits (which always reflect the signal type on the DEC output) will also be zero, such that the actual reception conditions have to be determined from the other status bits. See Status Evaluation during Forced Mono Mode for more information.

Table 7: Output Signal Restriction Depending on SRCPREF

SRCPREF (dec.)	*UNAVAILABLE* DEMDEC Output Signal, If Standard Is BTSC Or NICAM
0	PIPMONO
1	Third language (SAP or analog carrier @NICAM)
2	ADC
3	DEC stereo / dual (output forced to mono, i.e. DEC has same contents as MONO also for FM A2 and EIAJ)

The `SRCPREF` variable may be changed at any time and is always active in DDEP mode.

To avoid pop or click noises, the SRC channels are switched with automatic internal softmute (raised cosine ramp of 32 ms length), that means a short delay may occur before the change becomes effective.

Table 8: Active Output Signals Depending on Standard and SRCPREF Selection

Standard Group	Ref. No.	Variable SRCPREF (Dec.)	Output (Active Yes/no, Contains …)				
			DEC ("Decoded")	MONO	PIPMONO	SAP	ADC
FMA2	1	0, 1, 2	M / St / Du	M	yes	-	yes
	1m	3	M	M	yes	-	yes
EIAJ, FM Radio[8-4]	2	0, 1, 2	M / St / Du	Main ch.	yes	-	yes
	2m	3	M	M	yes	-	yes
BTSC	3	0	M / St	Main ch.	NO	yes	yes
	4	1			yes	NO	yes
	5	2			yes	yes	NO
	6	3 / X[8-1]	FMMONO	FMMONO	yes	yes	yes
NICAM B/ G,I,D/K	7	0	NICAM (St / Du / M)	FMMONO	NO	-	yes
	8	1[8-2]		NICAM to MONO	yes	-	yes
	9	2		FMMONO	yes	-	NO
	10	3 / X[8-3]	M	M	yes	-	yes
NICAM L	11	0	NICAM (St / Du / M)	EXTAM	NO	-	yes
	12	1[8-2]		NICAM to MONO	yes	-	yes
	13	2		EXTAM	yes	-	NO
	14	3 / X[8-3]	EXTAM	EXTAM	yes	-	yes

[8-1] 6 is chosen automatically if no stereo pilot is detected, or if the dbx decompressor is used for the SAP channel (bit SAPDBX = 1, see The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.Table 11). SRCPREF is not effective in this case.

[8-2] For 8 and 12, the MONO output will be derived from the NICAM signal (instead of the analog sound carrier) for compatibility reasons, i.e. mix stereo to mono or use language A, respectively.

[8-3] 10 or 14 are chosen automatically in case of NICAM automute.

[8-4] 2/2m is chosen automatically for FM Radio.

X means "don't care".

Table 9 shows which SRC channels are active per configuration, and the number of active channels.

According to current data, the worst case with regard to the cycle budget is BTSC stereo with SAP.

Table 9: Active SRC Channels per Configuration

Std. Group	Ref. No.	Ctrl. Bits Srcpref (Dec)	Active Src Channels And Preprocessing Routines								Active Channels
			FMA2	FMMO NO	BTSC	NICAM	SAP	EXTAM	PIPMO NO	ADC	
FM A2	1	0,1,2	2						1	2	5
	1m	3	2						1	2	5
EIAJ, FM Radio	2	0,1,2			2				1	2	5
	2m	3			2				1	2	5
BTSC	3	0			2		1			2	5
	4	1			2				1	2	5
	5	2			2		1		1		4
	6	3/X		1			1		1	2	5
NICAM	7	0		1		2				2	5
B/G,I,D/K	8	1				2			1	2	5
	9	2		1		2			1		4
	10	3/X	2						1	2	5
NICAM L	11	0				2		1		2	5
	12	1				2			1	2	5
	13	2				2		1	1		4
	14	3/X						1	1	2	4

Table 10 shows how the SRCPREF setting can be derived from the desired channels, i.e. the channels that the Audio DSP wants to use. (3 out of 5 = 10 combinations.)

Table 10: SRCPREF Selection Depending on Desired Sources

No	DEC	MONO	SAP	PIPMONO	ADC	SRCPREF
1	X	X	X			0
2	X	X		X		2
3	X	X			X	0
4	X		X	X		2
5	X		X		X	0
6	X			X	X	1
7		X	X	X		2
8		X	X		X	0
9		X		X	X	3
10			X	X	X	3

7.8.8 The DDEP Control Register

All control and status registers of the DEMDEC DSP are listed in Appendix 1 Register Map of DEMDEC DSP. This is also the source for generating the URT file for semi-automatic generation of the "QuickView" software and control / demonstration software development. A brief overview of all registers is given the DDEP control register (short DDEPR) is reproduced in The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.Section 7.8.8. Most important are the EPMODE (Easy Programming mode), STDSEL (standard selection and ASD control), REST (restart), and SRCPREF (SRC preference).

7.8.8.1 Mode Selection

As explained previously, there are two basic operating modes, ASD and SSS, plus the possibility to disable DDEP entirely (means "expert mode" DDXM). This is determined by the EPMODE variable: 0 chooses ASD mode, 1 means SSS mode, and 3 enables the expert mode and its separate register set (not in the scope of this document).

Due to space restrictions, the `STDSEL` variable (five bit wide) is used for different purposes depending on the operating mode.

With ASD, each bit represents one of the five standard groups: if it is set to 1, the following carrier search will perform an amplitude detection at the corresponding carrier frequency, otherwise it will not detect a standard of this group. This approach helps to minimize possible ambiguities and to reduce the risk of wrong standard detection (see Standard Search First Step). The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.Table 12 shows the relation between `STDSEL` and standard groups. Between one and four bits may be set to 1. The result of a standard search can be found in the DEMDEC status register, see Section 7.8.10.1.

In SSS mode, `STDSEL` is considered an integer number and represents a code for a certain stereo standard code listed in The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the

SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.Table 13. For example, if STDSEL equals 5, "B/G NICAM" is selected, without any searching.

Remark: Correct signal handling with FM dematrix control and automute is always applied due to the switching task (as explained in Section 7.8.14.3), but only if the selected and the received standards match can a stereo or bilingual output be reproduced. For the above example (select "B/G NICAM"), if B/G A2 is received, only the first sound carrier is reproduced as mono.

7.8.8.2 Starting and Restarting

Many settings in the DDEPR become effective only at a "restart" condition, triggered via the REST bit. This is needed to start the standard detection process at a defined moment, and also to reset a number of hardware and software states in order to adapt as quickly as possible to a different TV channel. A restart must be performed at every channel switch (or for initialization after power up). The REST bit is the only "edge sensitive" control variable in the DEMDEC part, i.e. a change from 0 to 1 triggers the restart[1].

A change from 1 to 0 may be done any time later and has no effect.

7.8.8.3 DDEP Control Variables

The other parts of the DDEPR are explained in The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.Table 11 and in later sections.

The DDEPR alone is already sufficient for a typical terrestrial TV sound application. Additional registers (explained later) allow changes to the standard behaviour or adjustments of several important parameters like detection thresholds that by default have values considered “reasonable.”

Most variables in the DDEPR become effective **at every write access**, independent of a restart condition: EPMODE, OVMADAPT, DDMUTE, FILTBW (only if OVMADAPT=0), IDMOD (only in SSS mode), OVMTHR (only if OVMADAPT=1), SAPDBX, SRCPREF.

In contrast, the STDSEL and FHPAL variables are evaluated only at a restart, i.e. in the same write access when REST changes from 0 to 1.

The DDEPR must always be written and refreshed, even in expert mode, where all other bits except EPMODE are not active. For more information, see Other Details.

1. The REST bit was introduced for the original EPICS7A I2C interface (the MPI unit) as there was no means to find out which I2C register (= XRAM address) was accessed, i.e. written or read. The address indication hardware ("JTA" register) was added later and would facilitate a restart upon a simple write to the DDEPR, but the REST bit was still kept in order to allow changing other parts of the register, and for repeated refreshing which some control architectures may require.

When using SSS mode for FM A2 or EIAJ standards, the IDENT speed selection via IDMOD should be "fast" mode until stereo or dual is detected, and then switched to "slow" mode (except for EIAJ where the “medium” setting is recommended; see Section 7.8.14.2). This is done automatically in ASD mode.

The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.

Table 11: Contents of DDEP Control Register (DDEPR)2 (DD22)

Variable Name	# of bits	Bit Index	Detailled Description
EPMODE	2	[1..0]	DEMDEC Easy Programming (DDEP) mode $0 = 'AUTO STANDARD DET.' (ASD), STDSEL[4:0] defines the set of detectable standards. $1 = 'STATIC STANDARD SELECT' (SSS). STDSEL[4:0] contains standard code. $2 = reserved $3 = DEMDEC expert mode (fully manual mode, DDEP disabled)
STDSEL	5	[6..2]	Bits multiplexed for ASD or SSS. In ASD mode (EPMODE=0): flags for allowed standards B/G | D/K | L/L' | I | M (LSB to MSB). In SSS mode (EPMODE=1): standard code as defined in status register STDRES, e.g. code 4 selects B/G A2.
REST	1	[7]	RESTART decoder and initialize Easy Programming after channel switch if changed from 0 to 1 (see Section 7.8.8.2)
OVMADAPT	1	[8]	FM over modulation adaptation (avoids distortion, filter bandwidth and gain is chosen adaptively) $0 = disabled $1 = enabled (recommended)
DDMUTE	1	[9]	Mute DEMDEC output signals DEC, MONO, and SAP (softmute) $0 = no mute $1 = mute
FILTBW	2	[11..10]	Sound carrier filter bandwidth (like FILTBW_M). NOT effective if BTSC, EIAJ, FMRADIO active, or if OVMADAPT=1. $0 = narrow (recommended) $1 = extra wide $2 = medium $3 = wide
IDMOD	2	[13..12]	FM ident speed in SSS mode (otherwise not effective) $0 = slow $1 = medium $2 = fast $3 = off (reset)
-	1	[14]	Unused (was: CHGNIC)
-	1	[15]	Unused (was: NMUTE)
SAPDBX	1	[16]	SAP decompression mode $0 = dbx used for BTSC stereo decoding, fixed compromise de-emphasis for SAP (recommended) $1 = dbx used for SAP, BTSC stereo forced to mono

Table 11: Contents of DDEP Control Register (DDEPR)2 (DD22) *...Continued*

Variable Name	# of bits	Bit Index	Detailled Description
FHPAL	1	[17]	Line frequency for BTSC decoding (see Section 7.8.8.4) $0 = NTSC line frequency (15.734 kHz) used in SSS, or preferred in ASD mode $1 = PAL line frequency (15.625 kHz) used in SSS, or preferred in ASD mode
OVMTHR	2	[19..18]	Over modulation level threshold relative to nominal (applies if OVMADAPT=1) $0 = +3 dB = -12 dBFS $1 = +6 dB = - 9 dBFS (recommended) $2 = +9 dB = -6 dBFS $3 = +12 dB= -3 dBFS
-	2	[21..20]	Reserved, must be written as 0
SRCPREF	2	[23..22]	Select channels to convert via SRC (see Section 7.8.7) $0 = DECoder, 3. language and ADC (not PIPMONO) $1 = DECoder, PIPMONO and ADC (not 3. language) $2 = DECoder. PIPMONO and 3. language (not ADC) $3 = MONO, PIPMONO, 3. language and ADC (DEC only MONO)

Table 12: Standard detection control bits in ASD mode

STDSEL Bit	If set, include standard group in search:	Carrier test frequency [MHz]
STDSEL[0]	B/G/H (2 possible stereo standards)	5.5
STDSEL[1]	D/K/K' (4 possible stereo standards)	6.5 (FM)
STDSEL[2]	L/L'	6.5 (AM)
STDSEL[3]	I	6.0
STDSEL[4]	M (Korea A2, BTSC, or EIAJ)	4.5

Table 13: Static standard selection codes in SSS mode

STDSEL (decimal)	Description		
	Standard	Ch. 1 freq. MHz	Ch. 2 freq. MHz
0…3	Reserved		
4	B/G A2	5.5	5.742
5	B/G NICAM	5.5	5.850
6	D/K A2 (1)	6.5	6.258
7	D/K A2 (2)	6.5	6.742
8	D/K A2 (3)	6.5	5.742
9	D/K NICAM	6.5	5.850
10	L NICAM	6.5	5.850
11	I NICAM	6.0	6.552
12	M Korea	4.5	4.724
13	M BTSC	4.5	- (MPX demod.)
14	M EIAJ	4.5	- (MPX demod.)
15	FM radio, Europe (50 µs de-emphasis)	10.7	- (MPX demod.)
16	FM radio, USA (75 µs de-emphasis)	10.7	- (MPX demod.)

Table 13: Static standard selection codes in SSS mode

STDSEL (decimal)	Description		
17	FM radio, Europe (50 µs de-emphasis)	Selected via CARRIER1	- (MPX demod.)
18	FM radio, USA (75 µs de-emphasis)	Selected via CARRIER1	- (MPX demod.)
19…30	Reserved for future extensions		

7.8.8.4 Dependencies Between Variables in the DDEPR

IDMOD: only effective in SSS mode, in ASD mode overruled internally (fast until detection, then slow mode).

Remark: For expert mode, the variable IDMOD_M, located in the hardware configuration register (DEM_HWCF_REG), must be used.

FILTBW: overruled internally if OVMADAPT = 1 or if an MPX-type standard is active ("wide" needed for BTSC, FMRADIO and EIAJ standards).

Remark: For expert mode, the variable FILTBW_M, located in the hardware configuration register (DEM_HWCF_REG), must be used.

OVMTHR: only relevant if OVMADAPT = 1.

FHPAL: determines lines frequency for BTSC in SSS mode. It must match the currently received pilot frequency, otherwise the PLL cannot lock to the pilot and stereo indication is not possible. In ASD mode, it selects the frequency to be tested first during M standard detection (see Search Procedure for M Standards), therefore it should be set to 1 in Argentina (or other areas with PAL + BTSC sound) for fastest detection.

SAPDBX: enforces SRC configuration as if SRCPREF = 3 (forced mono) if standard is BTSC and reserves the dbx decoder for the SAP channel and not for the stereo sub channel. Recommended: set to 0, only set to 1 if SAP is selected for output (i.e. by an audio backend path) but the DEC output is not.

7.8.8.5 Automute Function

In this context, automute refers to an automatic mute of the stereo or bilingual if the signal reception is below a certain (adjustable) level of quality, although a stereo or bilingual identification is still present. The term “automute” is still used although a more precise description would be “auto-fallback to mono”.

The automute function is active in both the ASD and SSS modes. It must be distinguished from the case that the DEMDEC outputs are muted after an ASD search (first carrier search as explained in Standard Search First Step) has failed due to poor reception conditions. An automute function is available for all sound standards, means FM A2, NICAM, and multiplex standards (BTSC, EIAJ, FM Radio).

The original FM sound carrier of all sound standards (except L) is rather robust against noise and is still significantly audible if the picture is hardly visible, i.e. at tuner input levels below 20 dBµV. In contrast, the additional stereo information is more sensitive due to the technical parameters (second carrier with lower level, or

subcarrier above audio baseband) and requires better signal quality (higher C/N). It has always been common practise for NICAM standards to mute the NICAM sound above a certain bit error rate threshold to avoid an unpleasant crackling sound. For A2 standards, the situation is similar: since the second sound carrier (SC2) is nominally 7 dB lower than the first, the C/N threshold at which the crackling (caused by signal phase wraparounds due to noise) starts is reached at a ~7dB higher C/N than for the first carrier. However the FM identification block of Philips Semiconductors is very sensitive and detects the stereo or dual information even at C/N levels several dB below the crackling threshold. To avoid this crackling, a noise detector (corresponding to the bit error rate estimation from the NICAM decoder) is used to auto-mute the SC2 signal if a certain noise level is exceeded. For the multiplex standards BTSC (and FM Radio) and EIAJ, automute works accordingly. (Although here the FM crackling threshold is the same for the baseband signal and the sub carrier, it makes sense to disable the sub carrier above a certain noise level.) For each standard type, a separate noise threshold detector is used internally.

In case of an A2, BTSC, or EIAJ stereo reception, muting the (sub) carrier with the stereo information already causes a mono reproduction. For bilingual or NICAM reception, automute also means a *replacement* of the muted signal by the monaural analog sound carrier.

If the automute function has suppressed the stereo / dual signal, the DEC output is switched to the same source as the MONO output. This may coincide with a change of the SRC channel configuration as shown in Table 8.

DDEP by itself never mutes the mono sound no matter how bad the signal may be. It is however common practise to mute the decoder outputs if no video signal (sync) is detected, as recommended in Section 7.8.13.4.

In case of a fallback from stereo to mono, it is advised that audio features in a subsequent audio backend processing path are adjusted (e.g. change from I-Stereo to I-Mono, maybe switch off DPL etc.).

Similarly, the separate SAP output is silent when no SAP carrier is detected, as described below.

7.8.8.6 NICAM Configuration

If the NICAM configuration register is not changed, the following default settings are active:

- `ONLY_RELATED`=0 (see below),
- J17 de-emphasis on (`NIC_DEEM`=0),
- automute enabled (NIC_`AMUTE`=0),
- bit error thresholds `NICLOERRLIM`=100 (dec.),
- `NICUPERRLIM`=200 (dec.).

In expert mode, only `NDEEM` is active.

The EXTAM bit should be set to 1 if the AM demodulation for standard L/L' can be provided by the IF stage. This bit is active with standard L and only evaluated at a restart.

It might not be desired to have an automatic switching from FM/AM to NICAM if contents are different (conveyed by the reserve sound switching flag RSSF being 0). For this reason, the ONLY_RELATED control variable has been introduced. While ONLY_RELATED is 1, NICAM is only reproduced on the DEC output in case of "related" sound (RSSF=1), otherwise the analog sound carrier. In case of "unrelated" NICAM, and if the user wants to select NICAM (via remote control or similar), this bit should be set to 0 such that the NICAM output is allowed.

In total, the conditions required for a NICAM output are the following: (VDSP =1) AND (SRCPREF <>3) AND (RSSF=1 OR ONLY_RELATED=0) AND (bit error threshold detect=false).

The NICAM automute (auto fallback to mono) function uses a threshold detector for the bit error count ERR_OUT, the thresholds of which are selectable by NICLOERRLIM (lower error limit) and NICLOERRLIM (upper error limit). Automute can be disabled by NIC_AMUTE=1 (not recommended). The bit errors are by default counted by the hardware NICAM decoder over 128 ms. However if NICERRDETLO is set to 1, the bit errors are counted by the DSP code in a selectable interval and used as the lower threshold, instead of the hardware counter value ERR_OUT.

This modified automute function is provided to minimize NICAM on/off transitions during marginal or unstable reception. The length of the counting interval is selected by NICAM_ERRDETECTTIME in the DDEP_OPTIONS1_REG register, see Section 7.8.9 / Table 19. This means that NICAM is only un-muted if the number of bit errors in the expired variable interval is less than or equal NICLOERRLIM. To prevent increased detection times after a channel switch, NICAM_ERRDETECTTIME should be set initially to a small value, and after NICAM detection the desired setting for a longer interval is applied (for example 1 second). The timer and counter for the variable interval are reset to 0 if the upper threshold is exceeded or if sync state is lost.

Table 14: NICAM Configuration Register (NICAM_CFG_REG, DD21)

Variable Name	No. of Bits	Bit Index	Description
ONLY_RELATED	01	[0]	Reproduce only related NICAM on DEC output (DDEP only) $0 = false (NICAM whenever possible) $1 = true (NICAM suppressed if RSSF=0)
EXTAM	01	[2]	Fall back source in case of automute in standard L (DDEP only) $0 = channel 1 output (AM) $1 = ADC output (external AM demodulator)"
NICDEEM	01	[3]	NICAM de-emphasis (J17) $0 = ON $1 = OFF (only for test purposes)
NIC_AMUTE	01	[4]	NICAM auto mute function depending on bit error rate (DDEP only) $0 = ON (recommended) $1 = OFF

Table 14: NICAM Configuration Register (NICAM_CFG_REG, DD21)

Variable Name	No. of Bits	Bit Index	Description
NICLOERRLIM	08	[12..5]	NICAM lower error limit for automute (DDEP only)
NICUPERRLIM	08	[20..13]	NICAM upper error limit for automute (DDEP only)
NICERRDELTO	0	[21]	Select NICAM bit error detector type for lower threshold0 = hardware, 128 ms fixed1 = software, adjustable time

7.8.8.7 Amplitude and Noise Threshold Registers

These four registers (MAGDET_THR_REG, NMUTE_FMA2_SAP_REG, NMUTE_MPX_REG, NMUTE_EIAJ_REG; DD17 to DD20) are, like the NICAM configuration register, initialized with reasonable default values only at start-up and not later on. The system controller may change the contents of these registers, but it is recommended to keep the defaults, because a number of measurements and tests are needed to ensure a correct operation.

Magnitude Detection Register

The variables in the MAGDET_THR_REG (DD17) register allow adjustments of the detection thresholds (lower and upper thresholds to form a hysteresis) for the firsts sound carrier detection (ASD step one), the multiplex pilot (BTSC, FM Radio), and the SAP carrier (BTSC), in dB relative to the nominal values.

Reasonable hysteresis sizes, i.e. the difference between upper and lower threshold, for the pilot and SAP detection are 3 to 6 [dB].

`ASD_SC1_THR` sets the internal threshold used for indicating a "failure" of the first ASD step (described in section Standard Search First Step) relative (in dB) to the internal constant reference value of –30 dBFS (active if `ASD_SC1_THR` is 0 = initial value of this variable). If `ASD_SC1_THR` is set to -16, the threshold is set to 0 such that a failure cannot occur, but it is doubtful whether this makes sense.

Table 15: Magnitude Detection Register (MAGDET_THR_REG, DD17)

Variable Name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Valid Range	Description
MPX_PILOT_THR_UP	04	[3..0]	15..0	Upper threshold for MPX pilot detection (BTSC, FM RADIO) in dB below nominal level
MPX_PILOT_THR_LO	04	[7..4]	15..0	Lower threshold for MPX pilot detection (BTSC, FM RADIO) in dB below nominal level

Table 15: Magnitude Detection Register (MAGDET_THR_REG, DD17)

Variable Name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Valid Range	Description
SAP_CAR_THR_UP	04	[11..8]	15..0	Upper threshold for SAP carrier detection in dB below nominal level
SAP_CAR_THR_LO	04	[15..12]	15..0	Lower threshold for SAP carrier detection in dB below nominal level
ASD_SC1_THR	05	[22..18]	15..-15	Threshold for detection of first sound carrier (SC1) during ASD first step, relative to -30 dBFS

Noise Threshold Registers

These registers (NMUTE_FMA2_SAP_REG (DD18), NMUTE_MPX_REG (DD19), NMUTE_EIAJ_REG (DD20)) allow adjustments of the automute behaviour with respect to noise.

For each carrier type (SAP, SC2 in FMA2 standards, BTSC, FM Radio, EIAJ), a relative threshold (-15 to +15 dB) and a hysteresis size (0 to 15 dB), both given in dB, are available. Each of these pairs are parameters for threshold detectors which cause an automute of the corresponding stereo (sub-) carrier in case of strong noise. As an example, register NMUTE_FMA2_SAP_REG (DD18) is shown below, the other registers have the same functionality applied to the corresponding standards.

A relative threshold setting of 0 (=default) means that the reference threshold (an internal constant) is used as the effective upper threshold, a setting of –6 means a 6 dB lower threshold etc. The threshold is selected subjectively at a level of noise where some crackling is just audible. For SAP, a higher threshold is selected (i.e. more noise is allowed before mute) because this carrier often suffers from noise interference, but a certain limit should not be exceeded otherwise the SAP detection algorithm fails. A threshold setting of –16 deactivates the noise threshold detector; this is strongly discouraged at least for the SAP and SC2 cases. In the latter case (FMA2 standards), the noise threshold detector prevents both crackling and a (very unlikely) wrong stereo / dual identification (e.g. if SC2 is not present and catches crosstalk from SC1 modulated with the “European stereo” identification frequency of 117.5 Hz).

The lower threshold is the upper threshold reduced by the hysteresis size. Reasonable hysteresis size settings are 3 to 6 [dB].

Table 16: Noise Automute Control Register, FMA2/SAP (NMUTE_FMA2_SAP_REG, DD18

Variable Name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Valid Range	Description
NMUTE_SAP_THR	05	[4..0]	15..-16	Noise threshold adjustment for automute of SAP (-16 means automute off)
NMUTE_SAP_HYST	04	[8..5]	15..0	Hysteresis size [dB] for automute of SAP
NMUTE_SC2_THR	05	[13..9]	15..-16	Noise threshold adjustment for automute of SC2 in FM A2 standards (-16 means automute off)
NMUTE_SC2_HYST	04	[17..14]	15..0	Hysteresis size [dB] for automute of SC2 in FM A2 standards

7.8.8.8 SAP Detection

The SAP detection routine is active while "M MONO" or "M BTSC" is detected or selected. This routine performs two separate hysteresis detections, one for the SAP carrier magnitude, and another for the noise level. Table 17 truth table shows the effects of the detector outputs and the SAP detection status.

Remark: The SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.

Table 17: SAP Detection by magnitude and noise detection

SAP magnitude detector	Noise detector hysteresis for SAP	DEMDEC Status Register	
		SAPDET (1 means signal is present)	SAPMUT (1 means muted)
0	0	0	0
0	1	0	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

7.8.8.9 EIAJ Subcarrier Detection

The presence and contents (L-R, language B) of a subcarrier in the Japanese multichannel sound standard (EIAJ) is indicated by a pilot tone at 3.5 * f_H. However, if the pilot tone is switched off at the same time as the subcarrier, a short noise becomes audible due to the delayed pilot detection. To prevent this noise, a detector for the subcarrier at 2* f_H can be enabled by the `EIAJ_CAR_DETECT` bit (introduced in code version 3.2.0). If enabled, the logical output of this detector must be 1 (=carrier detected) for stereo detection. If it is 0 (=no carrier detected), any stereo detection from the hardware identification unit is immediately forced to zero. The stereo status is internally derived by the expression `GST`:= (`AST=1`) AND (noise detector output = 0) AND ((`EIAJ_CAR_DETECT`= 0) OR (subcarrier detector output=1)).

This subcarrier detector works in the same way as the SAP carrier detector, and its thresholds can be adjusted in the same way by the control variables `EIAJ_CAR_THR_UP` and `EIAJ_CAR_THR_LO`. Due to lack of space in the DEMDEC status register, there is no status bit showing the output of the EIAJ subcarrier detector.

The new control variables are placed in the NMUTE_EIAJ_REG register.

Table 18: Control Variables for EIAJ Subcarrier Detection

Variable Name	No Of Bits	Bit Index	Valid Range	Description
EIAJ_CAR_THR_UP	04	[12..9]	15..0	Upper threshold for EIAJ SUB carrier detection in dB below nominal level
EIAJ_CAR_THR_LO	04	[16..13]	15..0	Lower threshold for EIAJ SUB carrier detection in dB below nominal level
EIAJ_CAR_DETECT	01	[17]		Enable EIAJ SUB carrier detector 0 = sub carrier detector disabled 1 = sub carrier detector enabled

7.8.9 Other DEMDEC Control Options

The DDEP_OPTIONS1_REG register contains some additional control bits.

Table 19: DDEP_OPTIONS1_REG Register

Variable Name	No Of Bits	Bit Index	Description
SRC_CFG_TABLE	03	[2..0]	SRC configuration table 0 = 5 channels max. 1 = 6 channels max. 2 = 4 channels max. 3 = 3 channels max., no PIPMONO and ADC 4 = table in YRAM (default identical with 5 channel table)
IDMOD_SLOW_EUR	2	[5..4]	In ASD mode, IDMOD setting when European A2 standards (B/G, D/K) are detected 0 = slow 1 = medium 2 = fast
IDMOD_SLOW_KOR	2	[7..6]	In ASD mode, IDMOD setting when M Korea standard detected 0 = slow 1 = medium 2 = fast
IDMOD_SLOW_JAP	2	[9..8]	In ASD mode, IDMOD setting when EIAJ standard detected 0 = slow 1 = medium 2 = fast
NICAMCPLL_ACQHELP_OFF	1	[10]	Acquisition help for NICAM carrier loop 0 = active 1 = disabled
NICAM_ERRDETECTTIME	8	[18..11]	Detection time interval for software bit error detector, in multiples of 32 ms
SAP_BW	1	[19]	SAP filter bandwidth selection 0 = narrow filter 1 = wide filter

SRC_CFG_TABLE selects a table of SRC channel configurations. Section 7.8.7 explained the restriction to a maximum of five SRC channels, which is valid if SRC_CFG_TABLE is set to 0 (default). Due to design and process optimizations it is however possible to process up to six channels simultaneously, if a DSP clock of 126 MHz or more can be achieved and guaranteed under worst-case conditions. Table 20 shows the SRC configuration for this mode, enabled by setting SRC_CFG_TABLE to 1.

Remark: Although no longer required, but for compatibility reasons, EPMODE=3 still enforces mono decoding, by overriding the identification and possibly skipping the stereo processing channel. The other defined settings of SRC_CFG_TABLE are intended for internal test purposes.

The CPU load of the DSP, means the fraction of CPU time spent on processing and not waiting for input/output tasks, can be read out from the INF_CPULOAD_REG register, as a signed 24 bit integer (averaging time is approx. 2^{23} DSP clock cycles). If the load is more than approx. 0.95 * full scale, the sound output might be distorted and the DSP clock should be increased.

Table 20: SRC Configuration - up to six Channels

Std. Group	Ref. No.	Ctrl. Bits SRCPREF (dec)	Active SRC channels and preprocessing routines								Active Channels
			FMA2	FMMO NO	BTSC	NICAM	SAP	EXTAM	PIPMO NO	ADC	
FM A2	1	0,1,2	2						1	2	5
	1m	3	2						1	2	5
EIAJ, FM Radio	2	0,1,2			2				1	2	5
	2m	3			2				1	2	5
BTSC	3	0			2		1			2	5
	4	1			2				1	2	5
	5	2			2		1		1		4
	6	3/X		1			1		1	2	5
NICAM	7	0		1		2			1	2	5
B/G,I,D/K	8	1				2			1	2	5
	9	2		1		2			1		4
	10	3/X	2						1	2	5
NICAM L	11	0				2		1		2	5
	12	1				2			1	2	5
	13	2				2		1	1		4
	14	3/X						1	1	2	4

NICAM_ERRDETECTTIME selects the interval of counting bit errors to un-mute NICAM sound. The interval length is 32 ms * NICAM_ERRDETECTTIME.

The IDMOD_SLOW_*xyz* variables select the IDMOD setting for the identification unit which are used in ASD mode after a stereo or dual ident has been found. The ASD procedure always applies the “fast” mode (IDMOD=2) first to minimize the detection time, until stereo or dual has been detected, and then switches to the setting given in this register for the current standard. Separate settings are available for the European (B/G, D/K), Korean and Japanese standards. (For Japan, the corresponding variable IDMOD_SLOW_JAP should be set to 1 (default) to avoid problems with certain TV test generators.)

The NICAMCPLL_ACQHELP_OFF bit can be used to disable an acquisition help for the NICAM carrier loop (for test purposes), which has been added as a countermeasure against locking problems of this PLL under unwanted n* f_H phase modulation (see PR no. 631 and related documentation). It is recommended to keep it active.

SAP_BW selects the bandwidth of the bandpass filter of the FM subchannel demodulator for SAP, that is either “narrow” (SAP_BW =0) or “wide” (1). The latter results in a more flat frequency response (with dbx) and lower harmonic distortion and is therefore the recommended setting, although the default value is currently still 0.

The DD_OPTIONS2_REG register provides control bits related to a known (and not yet solved) problem in timing PLL the sample rate conversion: after a audio clock interruption (e.g. no I2S input clock, or power down mode of WS PLL) there is a chance of approx. 1:60 that one or more SRC output signals are permanently distorted. To prevent this, a “watchdog” routine has been added in the DSP code which enforces a new initialization of the SRC PLLs after a clock interruption of more than 6000 DSP clock cycles. This watchdog can be switched off by WATCHOUTCLK_OFF=1.

However it was found that in rare cases the distortion might still occur. A “sanity check” of the internal buffers can remove the distortion, but this test cannot be active all the time because it causes click noise when the SRC configuration changes. Therefore it is recommended to enable the sanity check (by CHECK_SRC_BUFFERS=1) only once for a short time (few ms) after a possible interruption or disturbance of the audio clock.

Table 21: DD_OPTIONS2_REG Register

Variable Name	No Of Bits	Bit Index	Description
WATCHOUTCLK_OFF	01	[0]	Watchdog for failure of output audio clock 0 = active 1 = disabled
SRCPLL_OUT_INIT	01	[1]	Initialize SRC PLL for output thread 0 = no action 1 = enforce initialization
SRCPLL_32K_INIT	01	[2]	Initialize SRC PLL for 32 kHz input thread 0 = no action 1 = enforce initialization

Table 21: DD_OPTIONS2_REG Register ...Continued

Variable Name	No Of Bits	Bit Index	Description
SRCPLL_35K_INIT	01	[3]	Initialize SRC PLL for 35 kHz input thread 0 = no action 1 = enforce initialization
SRCPLL_53K_INIT	01	[4]	Initialize SRC PLL for 53 kHz input thread 0 = no action 1 = enforce initialization
CHECK_SRC_BUFFERS	01	[5]	Sanity check of SRC buffers, enable only for short time after power up or audio clock interruption 0 = disabled 1 = active

7.8.9.1 ADC Channel Control

For the sake of additional flexibility, the ADC channels from the I2D link input can be mapped to any of the DEMDEC internal signals and channels by means of the register DEM_ADC_SEL_REG. It also allows muting / unmuting the PIPMONO and ADC channels. A mute bit for the EXTAM signal is not present here as this is managed by the standard dependent signal routing of DDEP. All control bits in this register are active in DDEP or expert mode.

Table 22: ADC Channel Control Register (DEM_ADC_SEL_REG, DD24)

Variable Name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Description
MAP_EXTAM	02	[1..0]	ADC channel from I^2D to EXTAM $0 = primary channel 1 $1 = primary channel 2 $2 = secondary channel 1 $3 = secondary channel 2
MAP_PIPMONO	02	[3..2]	ADC channel from I^2D to PIPMONO $0 = primary channel 1 $1 = primary channel 2 $2 = secondary channel 1 $3 = secondary channel 2
MAP_ADCST_L	02	[5..4]	ADC channel from I^2D to ADC stereo ch. L $0 = primary channel 1 $1 = primary channel 2 $2 = secondary channel 1 $3 = secondary channel 2
MAP_ADCST_R	02	[7..6]	ADC channel from I^2D to ADC stereo ch. R $0 = primary channel 1 $1 = primary channel 2 $2 = secondary channel 1 $3 = secondary channel 2
MUTE_PIPMONO	01	[8]	Soft mute PIPMONO channel $0 = active $1 = muted
MUTE_ADCST_LR	01	[9]	Soft mute ADC channels $0 = active $1 = muted
-	14	[23..10]	Reserved, must be written as 0

7.8.10 Status Registers

7.8.10.1 DEMDEC Status Register

Table 23 contains the most important status information. In a typical application, mainly generalized stereo and dual flags (GST and GDU), the SAP detection flag (SAPDET) and (partly) the standard detection result (STDRES) are of interest to the user, as explained in Section 7.8.13.

In order to simplify the control software, this register is also available as a low latency register, see Section 7.5.

The GST and GDU bits indicate the type of signal present on the DEC output: both GST=0 and GDU=0 means a monophonic signal, GST=1 indicates a stereophonic and GDU=1 a bilingual (dual) signal. GST and GDU are never both 1 at the same time. By evaluating these flags, the user is spared from checking the type of standard (i.e. A2, NICAM, BTSC) and from selecting the corresponding identification status bits, which are also present in the device status register as additional information. Table 24 explains in terms of logical equations the dependence of the GST and GDU bits on the other status flags.

Remark: If automute is active, or if "forced mono" is applied (by SRCPREF=3), the “primary” identification may indicate a stereo reception (e.g. AST = 1) while GST is zero.

Furthermore, in the audio backend source selectors, GST and GDU are used for an automatic language selection in case of dual transmission at the input of each two-channel audio processing path (e.g. MAIN, DAC): By selecting a special matrix code, for example "automatrix language A", the system switches from an identity matrix (output=input, while GDU is 0) to language A (first of the two channels) if the GDU flag is 1. Language B can be "pre-selected" accordingly.

Bits VDSP_C, NICST_C, and NICDU_C are copies of the identical information in the NICAM status register, see below. NAMUT indicates an automute condition, that is, the DEC output does not carry the NICAM signal, but the same signal as the mono channel, because of an exceeded bit error count or synchronization loss. In this case, GST and GDU are always zero although NICST_C or NICDU_C may still be 1 (depending on the NICAM decoder status: if still in sync (VDSP=1), NICST_C or NICDU_C can be 1; if not in sync or no audio (VDSP=0), NICST_C and NICDU_C are 0).

In expert mode, STDSEL, GST, GDU, NAMUT, BPILOT, SAPDET, BAMUT, SAPMUT and AAMUT are 0.

Table 23: DEMDEC Status Register (INF_MAIN_STATUS_REG, DD01)

Variable Name	# of Bits	Bit Index	Detailed Description ($ = HEX values)
STDRES	5	[4..0]	Standard detection result (ASD mode), or selected standard in SSS mode 00 = failed to find any standard or not supported by device 01 = B/G (still searching, SC2 not (yet) found) 02 = D/K (still searching, SC2 not (yet) found) 03 = M (still searching, no ident or pilot found) 04 = B/G A2 05 = B/G NICAM 06 = D/K A2 (1) 07 = D/K A2 (2) 08 = D/K A2 (3) 09 = D/K NICAM 10 = L NICAM 11 = I NICAM 12 = M Korea 13 = M BTSC 14 = M EIAJ 15 = FM Radio, 10.7 MHz IF (50 µs de-emphasis) 16 = FM Radio, 10.7 MHz IF (75 µs de-emphasis) 17 = FM radio, variable IF (50 µs de-emphasis) 18 = FM radio, variable IF (75 µs de-emphasis) 31 = still searching for a standard (can occur a short time after RESTART)
GST	1	[5]	General stereo flag (ident source determined by currently detected or selected standard) 0 = No stereo mode 1 = Stereo mode detected
GDU	1	[6]	General dual flag 0 = No dual mode 1 = Dual mode detected
APILOT	1	[7]	A2 or EIAJ pilot tone detected 0 = False 1 = True
ADU	1	[8]	A2 or EIAJ ident dual flag 0 = False 1 = True
AST	1	[9]	A2 or EIAJ ident stereo flag 0 = False 1 = True
AAMUT	1	[10]	SC2 (if A2 mode) or EIAJ subchannel muted due to noise 0 = False 1 = True
BPILOT	1	[11]	BTSC or FM radio pilot tone detected (stereo indicator) 0 = False 1 = True
SAPDET	1	[12]	SAP carrier detected 0 = False 1 = True
BAMUT	1	[13]	BTSC stereo muted due to noise (if noise detector enabled) 0 = False 1 = True

Table 23: DEMDEC Status Register (INF_MAIN_STATUS_REG, DD01) *…Continued*

Variable Name	# of Bits	Bit Index	Detailed Description ($ = HEX values)
SAPMUT	1	[14]	SAP muted due to noise (if noise detector enabled) 0 = False 1 = True
VDSP_C	1	[15]	NICAM decoder VDSP flag 0 = DATA or undefined format 1 = SOUND
NICST_C	1	[16]	NICAM decoder stereo flag 0 = False 1 = True
NICDU_C	1	[17]	NICAM decoder dual flag 0 = False 1 = True
NAMUT	1	[18]	NICAM automute flag 0 = not muted 1 = muted (fallback source)
RSSF	1	[19]	NICAM reserve sound switching flag (=C4), see NICAM specification 0 = analogue sound carrier conveys different contents than NICAM carrier 1 = analogue sound carrier conveys same contents as the NICAM carrier (M1 if DUAL)
INITSTAT	1	[20]	Initialization status (set to 0 upon read access) 0 = no reset performed 1 = reset has been applied to DSP and init routine has been executed
SRC_UNLOCK	1	[21]	SRC out of lock flag (output or 32 kHz PLL) 0 = SRC in normal operation 1 = SRC out of lock, outputs are muted or distorted
SRD_STATUS	2	[23..22]	Sample rate detector 0 = 32 kHz 1 = 44.1 kHz 2 = 48 kHz 3 = less than 6 kHz / invalid I^2S input clock

[23-1] The output PLL of the SRC may be temporarily unlocked in case of a sample rate switch or an invalid audio clock in I^2S slave mode, or if the DSP is overloaded (too low DSP clock selected).

Table 24: Generalized Stereo / Dual Flags

Standard type	GST equals	GDU equals
FM A2, EIAJ	AST and APILOT and NOT(AAMUTE) and NOT(forced mono)	ADU and APILOT and NOT(AAMUTE) and NOT(forced mono)
NICAM	NICST_C and NOT(NAMUT) and NOT(forced mono)	NICDU_C and NOT(NAMUT) and NOT (forced mono)
BTSC, FM Radio	BPILOT and NOT(BAMUT) and NOT(forced mono)	0

[24-1] “and” means a logical (not bit-wise) “and” operation, “NOT” means logical negation.

Status Evaluation during Forced Mono Mode

Table 25 suggests how the standard-dependent status flags can be used to derive the current sound mode while the controller has selected "forced mono": by skipping the "and NOT(forced mono)" term, the equations for the actually received sound mode are obtained.

Table 25: Deriving the Stereo / Dual Information in Case of Forced Mono

Standard type	Stereo received if	Dual received if
FM A2, EIAJ	AST and APILOT and NOT(AAMUTE)	ADU and APILOT and NOT(AAMUTE)
NICAM	NICST and NOT(NAMUT)	NICDU and NOT(NAMUT)
BTSC, FM Radio	BPILOT and NOT(BAMUT)	0

7.8.10.2 NICAM Status Registers

Due to the automatic switching provided by DDEP and the flags in the device status register, the NICAM status register (listed in Noise Detection21) is normally not needed by the system controller. This applies even more to the NICAM additional data register as long as no application of this data stream is known.

As mentioned above, the `VDSP, NICST` and `NICDU` status bits are also available in the device status register. The bit error counter is used by the NICAM automute function of DDEP. `CO_LOCKED` (formerly called `OSB` in TDA9875A and TDA9874A) is used by the standard detection procedures to identify a NICAM standard.

Table 26: NICAM Status Register (INF_NICAM_STATUS_REG, DD02)

Variable name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Description
ERR_OUT	08	[7..0]	NICAM error counter: number of parity errors found in the last 128ms period
CFC	01	[8]	NICAM Configuration Change 0 = No configuration change 1 = Configuration change at the 16 frame (CO) boundary
CO_LOCKED	01	[9]	NICAM frame and CO synchronization 0 = Audio output from NICAM part is digital silence 1 = Device has both frame and CO (16 frames) synchronization
NACB	04	[13..10]	NICAM application control bits (see C1..C4 in NICAM transmission)
VDSP	01	[14]	Identification of NICAM sound 0 = DATA or undefined format 1 = SOUND

Table 26: NICAM Status Register (INF_NICAM_STATUS_REG, DD02) …Continued

Variable name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Description
NICST	01	[15]	NICAM stereo flag 0 = No NICAM stereo mode (= Mono mode if NICDU = $0) 1 = NICAM stereo mode
NICDU	01	[16]	NICAM dual mono mode 0 = No NICAM dual mono mode (= Mono mode if NICST = 0) 1 = NICAM dual mono mode
-	07	[23..17]	Reserved

7.8.11 Noise Detection

DDEP uses a noise detector for the automute function in non-NICAM standards. The noise detector consists of a fourth-order bandpass connected to one of the two FM demodulators, followed by a rectifier (absolute value operation) and a lowpass. The bandpass center frequency can be switched either to a low band (center at 2.5 * line frequency fh) or a high band (7.5 * fh). The configuration that is currently set by DDEP and the output level can be read from the Noise detector status register. `NOISELEVEL` is a 22 bit positive signed integer; it can be converted to dBFS (decibel relative to full scale (=2^{21})) by 20 * $\log_{10}$(`NOISELEVEL` / 2^{21}).

Table 27: Noise Detector Status Register (INF_NOISELEVEL_REG, DD08

Variable Name	No of Bits	Bit Index	Description
NDETCH_STAT	1	[0]	Status noise detector channel 0= channel 1 1= channel 2
NDETPB_STAT	1	[1]	Status noise detector passband 0= low (2.5fh) 1= high (7.5fh)
NOISELEVEL	22	[23..2]	Noise detector output

7.8.12 Muting all DEMDEC Outputs

DDEP does not provide a function to mute all sound outputs in case of very bad reception, non-existent sound carriers, or unused TV channel. This decision should be taken by the system controller. Next to video signal detection, a further criterion is the noise level measured by the noise detector. However, only one noise detector is available, and it must be switched to the first sound carrier (a second FM carrier may not exist). This is the case in MPX (BTSC, EIAJ, FM Radio) and NICAM standards and in one of the “mono” detections (status STDRES is 1, 2, or 3), but not while an A2 standard is detected (ASD mode) or selected (SSS mode), means while STDRES is 4 (=B/G A2), 6, 7, 8 (D/K), or 12 (Korea).

Therefore, detecting “unacceptable” sound generally only works in ASD mode, since only with ASD the (detected) standard code is always a NICAM standard (I or L) or a “mono standard” (STDRES = 1, 2, or 3) at very high noise levels. In SSS mode it is possible only with standards other than FM A2.

Table 28 lists the noise levels at which it seems reasonable to consider the sound unacceptable, it means above these levels the DEMDEC outputs may be muted (set DDMUTE bit to 1).

Table 28: Noise Levels for Muting per Standard

Standard	Noise Detector Band And Channel	Fm Filter Bandwidth (Internal)	Max. Noise Detector Level (Dbfs)	Detector Level 'unacceptable' Threshold (Dbfs)
FM A2	Low /ch.2	Irrelevant	-8	-11
NICAM	Low /ch.1	Irrelevant	-8	-11
B/G or D/K Mono (std, code 1 or 2)	Low /ch.1	Irrelevant	-8	-11
MPX (BTSC,EIAJ,FM radio)	High /ch.1	Wide/extra wide	-9	-11
M Mono (std, code 3)	High /ch.1	Wide/extra wide	-9	-11

7.8.13 Using DDEP in a Set Design

As explained in Section 7.8.14.1, the ASD feature should be used with great care to avoid malfunctions of the set, such as a distorted or noisy audio output, due to a wrongly detected sound standard.

This section proposes ways to handle the problems involved with the multitude of sound standards and to minimize the risks.

7.8.13.1 Application Related Constant Settings

Registers which are usually written only at startup and not changed later:

- optional control variables: `EXTAM`, `OVMADAPT`, `OVMTHR`, `FILTBW` (if `OVMADAPT` not used);
- additional scaling for NICAM and EXTAM;
- noise and magnitude thresholds if default settings are not wanted.

7.8.13.2 Prerequisites and User Interface

Every application or set should provide some kind of setup facility. A TV or VCR will make use of an On-Screen Display (OSD), while the application software for a PC TV card will probably include a setup or configure dialog. Often these setup facilities do not satisfy end user demands, which can be divided in two groups:

- Users with little or no technical background do not want to be bothered with questions of video or sound standard settings.
- Advanced users like to have more influence on settings.

It is recommended to build a user interface which allows two alternative selections:

1. Country / area selection: everyone should know where the set is currently located. Not every country or state needs to be listed, they may be grouped in areas with common TV standards.

2. Direct standard selection: the user can select a video standard (PAL, NTSC, SECAM; not needed if the video decoder is capable of auto-detection), and one of the five sound standard groups like "B/G"The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration., or even the precise stereo / multichannel standard like "B/G NICAM".

The control software should contain a table of countries and areas to map the user-supplied info from alternative (1) to the STDSEL variable for the ASD function. Optionally this table may contain a default standard for each area, which is selected (via SSS) in case the ASD returns a "failed" code (Table 29 gives an example), but it may be modified according to the set maker's preferences. One may consider to add standards present in border regions of some countries and make the table more detailed, for example allow both L/L' and B/G at the French/German border.

A special case is PAL-N (line frequency 15.625 kHz with BTSC sound) in Argentina and some other South-American countries, where the FHPAL bit (The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.5) should be set to 1.

If an unused (empty) TV channel is selected, it may occur that ASD cannot find any sufficiently strong sound carrier, reports a failure (STDRES=0) and mutes the outputs. However, in most cases, the noise is strong enough that a sound carrier is (erroneously) detected randomly at one of the selected test frequencies. Therefore, the system controller should, if possible, check whether the video decoder is detecting a valid picture. If no video is present, it mutes the audio outputs (via the DDMUTE bit) and blanks the screen.

An alternative approach to the “default standard” is to prevent the “failure” condition by setting the detection threshold to 0 and set only one bit in STDSEL, such that it is ensured that corresponding standard is always “detected” (known as “forced standard detection [FSD]”).

It is important that the standard information from the video decoder should *not* be considered for the sound standard detection (e.g. NTSC video -> select only M standard sound), because almost every combination of video and sound standards may occur in the field.

Of course, hardware-related aspects may also have an influence on the control software design: it may be required to select a different filter for the SIF signal depending on the country, even before ASD can be used. Typically, a conventional

intercarrier configuration is used for M standards with a SIF passband up to 5 MHz, while QSS with a separate SAW filter and a passband of 5 to 7 MHz is applied for the other standards.

Table 29: Areas and ASD Settings

Country/ Area	Asd Control (Stdsel Variable) B/g	D/k	L/l'	I	M	Recommended Fallback Standard (Set By System Controller Via Sss)
Germany, Netherlands, Italy, Austria, Switzerland, Malaysia, Australia, Israel, Saudi Arabia	1	1 (*)				B/G A2
Scandinavia, Spain, Belgium, New Zealand, Singapore	1					B/G NICAM
Great Britain, Hong Kong				1		I NICAM
France	1[29-1]		1			L NICAM
Eastern Europe, GUS, China	1[29-1]	1				D/K NICAM
USA, Canada, Mexico, Brazil, Taiwan (NTSC, set FHPAL=0)					1	M BTSC
Argentina, … (PAL, set FHPAL=1)					1	M BTSC
Korea					1	M A2 (Korea)
Japan					1	M EIAJ (TESONIC: M MONO)

[29-1] May be useful in areas near border.

7.8.13.3 Auto-tune Process

At the auto-tune or scan run, the system controller steps through all possible TV channels, checks if a signal is present and builds a program list. This is performed at the installation of the set or device, but rarely later on. It is recommended storing only the information whether a video signal was found or not, but not to store the detected sound standard for later use, because there is no advantage in doing so:

1. Detecting a standard by means of ASD practically does not take any longer (only some milliseconds) than the identification of a multichannel sound standard needs anyway.
2. Storing a wrongly identified standard multiplies the seriousness.
3. The scan can be faster if only the video standard detection is required. Therefore it is advantageous to do the sound standard detection only after changing the channel, by using the ASD mode.

7.8.13.4 Channel Switch Procedure

With the information from the setup, a channel switch should be carried out as follows:

1. Write the DDEPR, set `EPMODE`=0 (select ASD mode), `DDMUTE` = 1 (soft-mute outputs within ~32 ms) and `REST` = 0.
2. Wait at least 32 ms until softmute is complete.

3. Program tuner and (possibly) IF demodulator with settings for the new channel. Wait until the SIF signal is stable.
4. Write the DDEPR with STDSEL taken from the area table or the direct standard selection, DDMUTE = 0 (means un-mute after ASD first step) and REST = 1. A standard search is now started, and all DDEP-internal states are reset (automute hysteresis, pilot detection, FM identification, overmodulation adaptation, etc.).
5. At least 70 ms later, read the DEMDEC status register. After the minimal allowed time, read the video detection info from the video decoder.
6. If no video has been detected, blank screen (if possible) and mute audio.
7. If video is present, but ASD has failed with STDRES=0, select the default standard via SSS mode (includes another "restart"). Maybe a warning should be issued on the OSD.
8. During normal operation, reflect changes of the GST and GDU bits on the OSD, maybe together with the sound standard. If a NICAM standard is found, maybe also display the RSSF information. Likewise, with M BTSC reception, a SAP carrier detection should be indicated. Some audio backend features like I-Stereo, Dolby® Pro Logic® etc. may have to configured according to the sound mode (M / St. / Du).

7.8.14 Details of Operation

This section explains the DDEP functionality in more detail, with focus on the Automatic Standard Detection (ASD).

7.8.14.1 Search Procedures (ASD Mode)

Introduction

The standard detection works in two steps. The first step is to find the first sound carrier and determine the standard group, i.e. one of the five groups in The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.6. In the second step, it is attempted to identify the received stereo (or multi-channel) standard.

The first sound carrier search is configured via the five bits of the STDSEL variable (The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.6) and delivers a result code in less than 50 ms. The result code may indicate a failure if sufficient signal strength is not found. The second search step can be skipped if the first step already yields an "unambiguous" stereo standard, i.e. I NICAM and L NICAM.

For the three other cases (B/G, D/K, and M standards), the "step 2" search procedures attempt to identify the stereo standard as soon as possible. If a stereo standard is detected, the procedure is held as long as the standard can be identified. Otherwise the search continues after a timeout, this means the procedure remains in an infinite loop until the next channel switch or it is otherwise stopped. This serves three purposes:

- a temporary mis-identification of the stereo system (due to special signal conditions) does not make the search hang forever;
- if an identification was not found immediately due to temporary bad reception (e.g. airplane flutter), or is switched on by the broadcasting station some time after the channel switch, it will be detected;
- the decoder can adapt if the stereo system should change (e.g. from B/G A2 to NICAM), although this should not occur in the field, but is common practise in the laboratory.

The current state of the search "engine" is not completely visible from the outside, but the code of the currently active standard is available via `STDRES` in the device status register.

Standard Search First Step

The following diagrams sketch the spectral conditions of four different TV standards. Amplitude axis and sound carrier width not to scale, frequency is relative to picture carrier in RF domain.

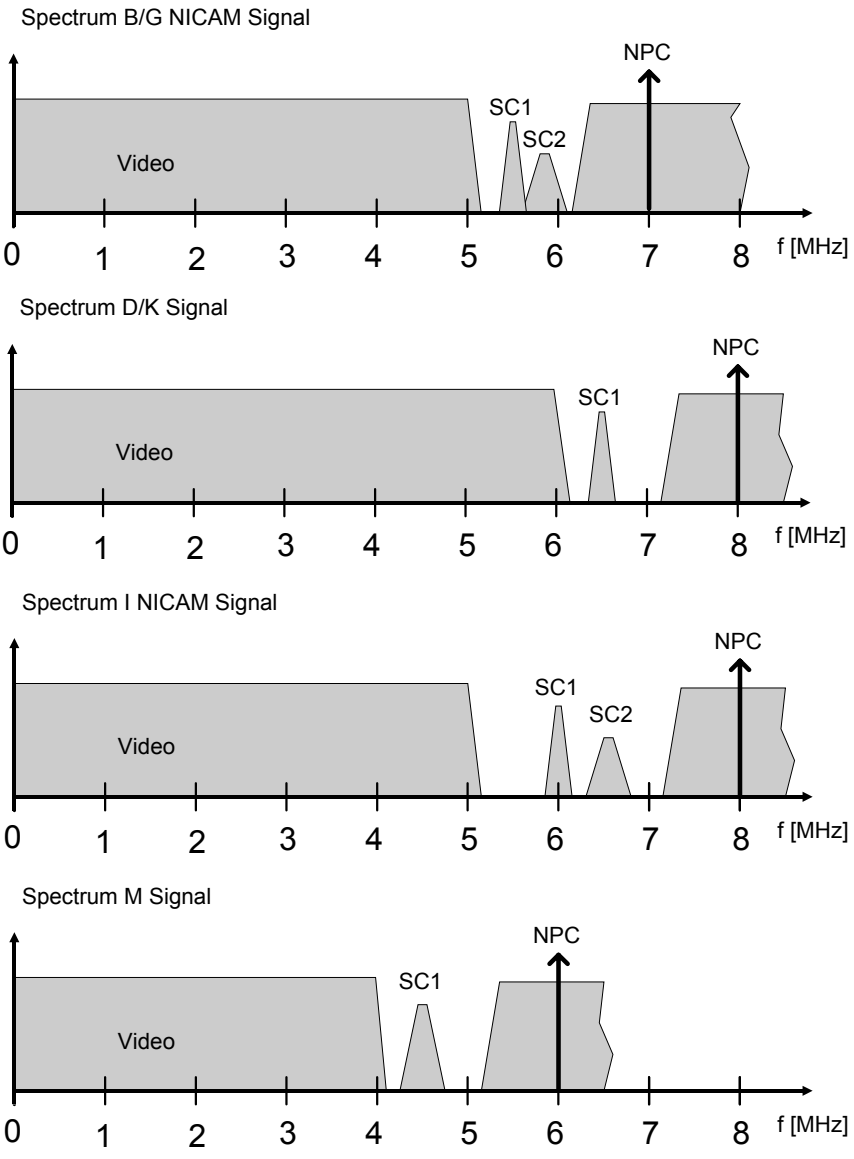


Figure 9: Spectra of TV HF Signals

The neighbor picture carrier (NPC) distance is assumed worst-case (e.g. 7 MHz for B/G, which only occurs in CATV but not in terrestrial broadcasts). The spectrum seen at the SIF input depends on the passband of the sound filter in the IF stage. For PAL and SECAM QSS applications, the equivalent 2. SIF passband is usually from 5 to 7 MHz, while for NTSC (M standards), conventional intercarrier is most common, such that the NPC is suppressed. Of course the video power spectrum of a live picture is

not constant, therefore a certain amplitude at a certain location is not guaranteed. Only in SECAM the FM color subcarriers have a constant amplitude. This means that high frequency video components might be detected as sound carrier.

A second sound carrier (SC2) is not always present.

Furthermore, a 6.5 MHz sound carrier may be an AM carrier in L/L´ or a FM carrier in D/K, they cannot be reliably distinguished since a non modulated FM sound carrier is identical to a non modulated AM carrier[1].

These facts show that it is impossible to identify a sound standard with 100% certainty by means of simple (and fast) amplitude detection and without further knowledge. However, in practise and without any special test signals, a correct standard detection is possible in probably more than 99% of all cases.

In order to minimize the risk of wrong detection and to solve the D/K vs. L/L´ ambiguity, the five standard detection control bits STDSEL have been introduced. By setting only those bits for "expected" or "supported" standards, any other standard will not be detected. It depends on the application, i.e. IF filter types, supported standards etc., and the location (country / area) of the set, which of the flags should be set. For further recommendations, seeSection 7.8.13.

After a restart, the standard search performs the following actions:

1. Mute all DEMDEC outputs immediately.
2. Measure the amplitude at the frequency 6.5, 6.0, 5.5 and 4.5 MHz. If the corresponding standard is not selected, skip the measurement and set the measured amplitude to 0.
3. Find the largest of all measured amplitudes.
4. If the maximum amplitude is below a selectable threshold (currently –30 dBFS +/- 15 dB, via control variable ASD_SC1_THR; -30 dbFS is about 20 dB below typical values), indicate “detection failed” and STOP (enter idle state).
5. Determine standard group according to Table 30.
6. Start demodulating SC1, unmute outputs, i.e. start reproducing mono sound (normally FM, except standard L: internal AM demodulation or input via ADC if bit EXTAM=1‘).
7. In case of B/G, D/K, or M, proceed with search for stereo system. Otherwise apply a static demodulator setup (standards I or L NICAM).

Remark: If both STDSEL[1] and STDSEL[2] are set to 1 (which does not make sense), D/K is given priority.

The above procedure is only started explicitly via the REST bit, not by any other event.

1. Additionally, a FM carrier also yields a (distorted) output if AM demodulation is applied due to the filter shape.

The second sound carrier cannot be considered in this first search step, as it may be non-existent or too close to the noise floor, and detecting an identification such as A2 stereo takes too long, the user wants to hear the sound immediately.

Table 30: Deciding for a Standard Group

Maximum Found At	Condition (Order Is Relevant)	Decided Standard	Possible Source(S) Of Misidentification
6.5 MHz	STDSEL[1]=1	D/K	L/L´ SC1; NPC VSB B/G, M
	STDSEL[2]=1	L/L´	D/K SC1; NPC VSB B/G, M
6.0 MHz	STDSEL[3]=1	I NICAM	M NPC; D/K, L high frequent video (unlikely)
5.5 MHz	STDSEL[0]=1	B/G	M NPC VSB; D/K or L high frequent video (unlikely)
4.5 MHz	STDSEL[4]=1	M	video components from other standards

Search Procedure for B/G Standards

The B/G search routine is started when ASD step 1 has found a maximum at 5.5 MHz. A simplified flowchart of this procedure is given Figure 10.

The timeout for NICAM or A2 identification is 2 seconds.

The DC offset detection is a method to speed up detection.

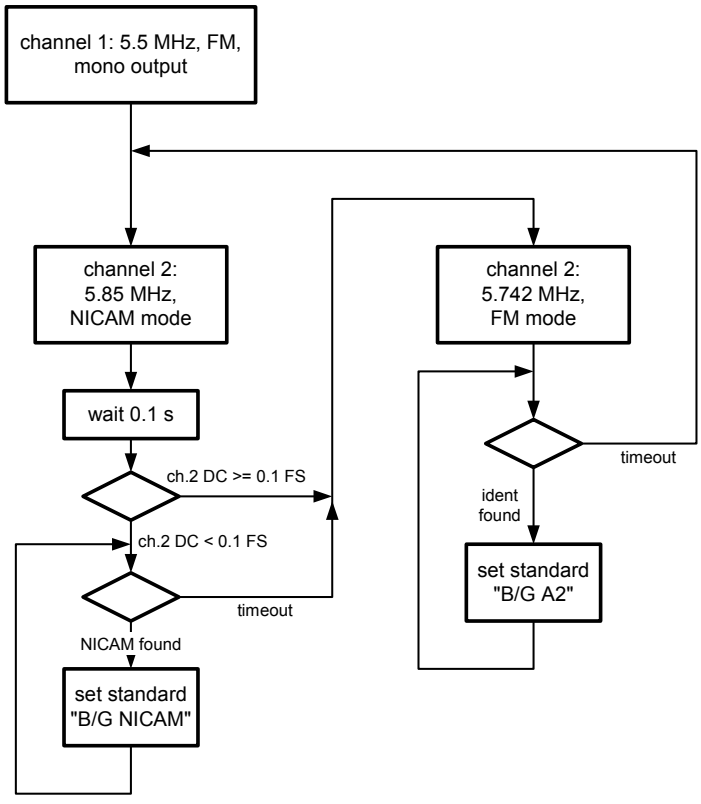


Figure 10: B/G Search Procedure

Search Procedure for D/K Standards

Here, another amplitude detection is performed at three of the possible SC2 frequencies in order to start the search at the most likely location. 5.742 MHz is not measured as there are often video components, and the pilot detector is not used at that frequency. As in the B/G search procedure, the timeout for NICAM or A2 identification is 2 seconds.

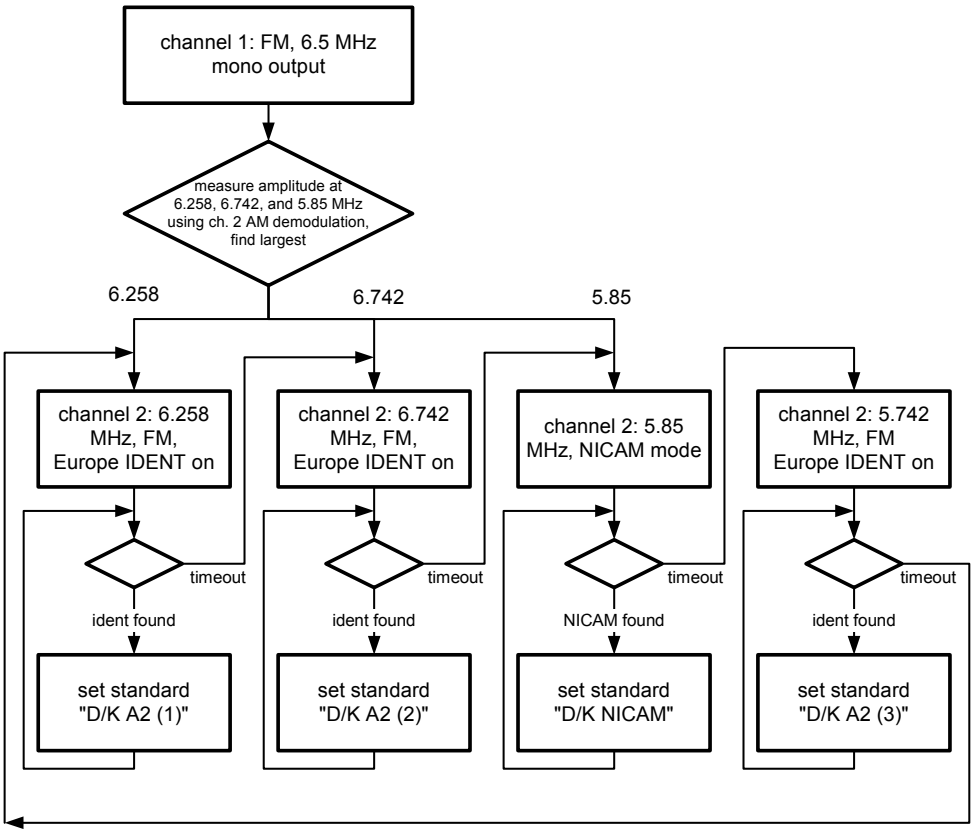


Figure 11: D/K search procedure

Search Procedure for M Standards

Pilot lock indication

The MPX demodulator provides the lowpass filtered in-phase product of the received and the PLL- regenerated pilot carrier via an internal hardware status register. This information (combined with a hysteresis detector in software) acts as a reliable lock indication. The upper / lower thresholds are selectable via register MAGDET_THR_REG.

If "M BTSC" is detected, the "wide" filter is always active for the FM demodulator and overrules any other setting from the DDEPR or determined by the `OVMADAPT` routine.

Search procedure approach

As the MPX demodulator is connected to the FM demodulator channel 1, it is possible to search for a BTSC pilot and a FM ident in parallel. However, the ident can only operate in one of the Europe, Korea and EIAJ modes and is connected to channel 2, thus only either M Korea or M EIAJ can be checked at a time. Therefore the search procedure measures the FM subchannel magnitude and starts the ident in the "more promising" configuration, while also checking the BTSC pilot detection in parallel.

A separate SAP detection routine is active whenever the current standard is "M MONO" or "M BTSC", as explained in section SAP Detection.

Line frequency handling

Two different line frequencies are used with BTSC, and as the pilot PLL of the MPX demodulator is very narrow (10 or 20 Hz), the current line frequency must be provided by the ASD routine (or by the system controller in SSS mode via the `FHPAL` variable).

The search procedure starts with trying to get a pilot detection at the "preferred" pilot frequency f_{H1}, this is the NTSC line frequency (f_H) of 15734 Hz if bit `FHPAL` in the DDEPR equals 0, or the PAL f_H of 15625 Hz otherwise. If this detection is not successful within a timeout period of 400 ms (about four times the typical detection time), the search proceeds with testing the other possible line frequency f_{H2}.

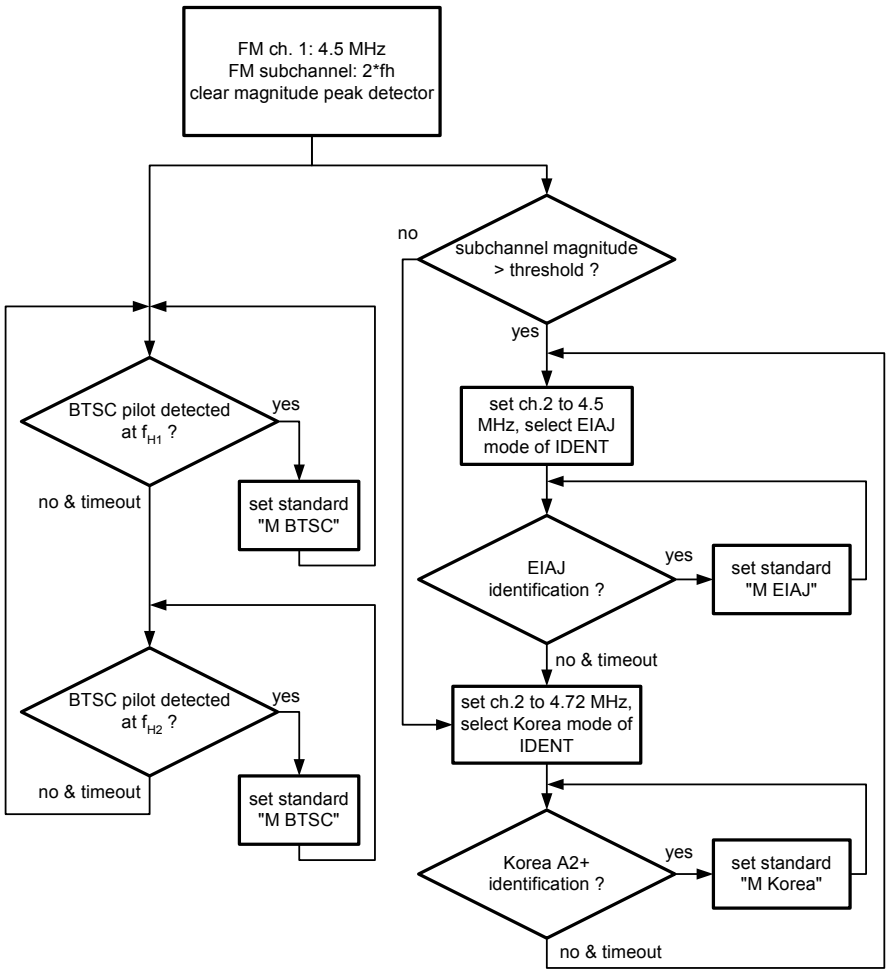


Figure 12: Search Procedure for M Standards

7.8.14.2 Using the SSS Mode

General

Unlike the ASD mode, the SSS mode requires the controller to set an appropriate value for the FM ident time constants via the `IDMOD` bits (11 means "off/reset", thus no stereo or dual detection possible) for the FM A2 and EIAJ standards (don't care for all other standards). The ident area code is known from the standard code.

The `STDSEL` variable should only have values of 4 to 18 (The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.7), others will result in a "failure" code (`STDRES` = 0 in DEMDEC status register) and mute all outputs.

Remark: STDSEL is only evaluated at "restart".

FM Radio

FM Radio can only be activated via SSS. It does not make sense to include it into the carrier search procedure in ASD mode, because FM Radio requires special settings for the entire receiver (tuner, IF demodulator, filters, screen switched off etc.) and is thus known beforehand.

The FM Radio feature of the current DEMDEC is merely a "by-product" of the BTSC decoder because the same hardware MPX demodulator can be used. It cannot compete with a dedicated high-performance FM Radio receiver solution. The digital filter selectivity by itself is not sufficient, at least one narrow bandpass before the SIF input (to suppress neighbor channels) is required. It depends on the tuner and IF application how FM Radio must be handled.

FM filter bandwidth is "wide" as in BTSC mode. Pilot frequency is 19 kHz, nominal pilot level is 7.5 kHz, hysteresis thresholds are selectable via register MAGDET_THR_REG.

Four different FM Radio settings can be selected see Table 13The DDMUTE bit mutes all DEMDEC outputs (DEC, MONO, SAP) with a 32 ms raised-cosine ramp, such that no extra action is required for the audio backend. It is recommended to be used in the channel switch procedure (see Section 7.8.13.4). For the PIPMONO and ADC paths, separate mute bits are provided in the DEM_ADC_SEL_REG registerThe SAP detection bits are independent from the selected SRC configuration, i.e. SAPDET can be 1 while the SAP SRC path is not currently active.. All mute bits do not affect the SRC configuration.. Choices are 50 µs (Europe) or 75 µs (USA) de-emphasis, and either a fixed 10.7 MHz IF or a freely selectable IF determined by the contents of the CARRIER1 variable (DEM_CA1_REG). A carrier frequency of 10.7 MHz is outside the specified (~4 to 10 MHz) range of the SIF input, but works fine as long as no interferences at IF +/- 6.75 MHz are present.

As the frequency resolution of the tuner is typically only 62.5 kHz, it is recommended to always use the variable IF option and fine-tune the mixer frequency via CARRIER1 within a range of +/-31.25 kHz, to avoid this offset which may lead to earlier clipping or distortion.

The 24 bit value Ω_1 of the CARRIER1 control variable can be computed according to:

$$\Omega_1 = round\left(\frac{f_1}{f_{mixer}} 2^{24}\right) \quad (1)$$

(f_1 = desired mixer frequency, f_{mixer} = 13.5 MHz).

For example, f_1 = 4.5 MHz yields Ω_1 = 5592405 (dec) = 555555 (hex). Values for common mixer frequency settings are listed in the description of CARRIER1 and CARRIER2.

There are two options to implement fine-tuning:

- Since today's tuners use a crystal-based oscillator with high precision, the optimal mixer frequency for a certain RF frequency (e.g. 87.60 MHz) can be precisely computed. In other words, the frequency offset due to the limited frequency resolution of the tuner can be compensated via `CARRIER1`. For example, if the offset is +25 kHz (i.e. FM carrier is located 25 kHz above the nominal mixer frequency like 4.5 MHz), `CARRIER1` should be increased by 31069 (dec).
- The current frequency offset can be *measured* via the `SC1_DC` status variable (DC output of the DC notch filter, 24 bit signed integer) in INF_DC1_REG (DD06):

$$\Delta f = \frac{SC1\_DC}{2^{24}} f_{S,FMDEM} \quad (2)$$

with $f_{S,FMDEM}$ = 27 MHz / 64 ≈ 422 kHz.

Δf > 0 means that the mixer frequency is larger than the carrier frequency. For example, `SC1_DC` = +390777 means Δf = 10 kHz (mixer frequency is 10 kHz larger than carrier frequency).
A settling time for the DC filter of at least 200 ms is recommended; the controller should wait at least this time after restart before reading the DC value and adjusting the mixer frequency.

See Section 7.8.11 and Section 7.8.12 for how to detect a valid sound carrier.

7.8.14.3 Automatic Signal Switching and Routing

The switching task takes care of FM dematrix controlling, level adjusts, (un-)mute, automute, and routing the correct signals to the outputs, including management of the SRC configurations and SAP detection. Internally, different switch routines are active depending on the standard type.

Depending on the current standard, the switching task has to evaluate different status information and handles the internal signal switches (see Figure 7 and Figure 8 accordingly).

Table 31 lists all possible signals on the DEC and MONO outputs depending on the type of the current standard and ident / detection conditions, but without considering the SRC limitations explained in section SRC constraints. The SAP detection is described in section SAP Detection.

Table 31: DEMDEC Output Signals (not Considering SRC Restriction)

Standard Type	Signal On "Dec" Output		Signal On "Mono" Output
	Stereo / Dual Detected And No Automute	No Stereo / Dual Detection Or Automute	
Mono (no stereo standard found)	SC1 output	SC1 output	SC1 output
A2	L/A, R/B (output of FM dematrix)	SC1 output	SC1 output

Table 31: DEMDEC Output Signals (not Considering SRC Restriction) *...Continued*

BTSC, FM RADIO	L, R (output of FM dematrix)	Mono (baseband)	Mono (baseband)
EIAJ	L/A, R/B (output of FM dematrix)	Mono (baseband)	Mono (baseband)
NICAM	L/A, R/B (output of NICAM decoder)	Mono (analog sound carrier; internal FM or external AM demodulator)	Mono (analog sound carrier; internal FM or external AM demodulator)

Overmodulation Adaptation

The overmodulation adaptation (short OVMADAPT) feature is active while the corresponding variable OVMADAPT in the DDEPR is set to 1 in ASD or SSS mode. It measures the peak deviation of the (first) sound carrier before the DC notch filter and de-emphasis and feeds this values through a sort of "quasi peak detector" with an infinite decay time, this means that the detected value does not decay at all. The FILTBW variable in the DDEPR is not effective, but depending on the detected quasi-peak value, the FM filter bandwidth is chosen, starting with "narrow", then "medium", "wide" and "extra wide" (high deviation mode). However, if M BTSC or FM Radio is active, the filter bandwidth is overruled with "wide" because a constant setting is required to obtain an constant level of the subcarrier. The high deviation mode is not used while an A2 standard is active as only a single demodulator channel is available in this mode.

Secondly, OVMADAPT reduces the internal scaling coefficient for the analog sound channels if the output signal level (derived from the detected peak level without considering the de-emphasis) exceeds the threshold selected by the OVMTHR variable. This can be 3, 6, 9, or 12 dB above the nominal output level of -15 dBFS. +6 dBr = -9 dBFS is recommended.

Both the filter selection and the level reduction are not changed if the FM deviation remains below the thresholds or tends towards zero (i.e. no decay, "one-way road") in order to avoid small clicks which occur when switching the filter bandwidth, and to avoid varying output levels.

All internal variables of the OVMADAPT task are reset if the OVMADAPT bit is set to 0 and also at a "restart".

A critical parameter is the attack time constant of the quasi peak detector filter. It has been aligned by listening tests with over-modulated sound carriers.

The current scaling coefficient and filter settings can be read from the INF_OVMADAPT_REG register.

Other Details

Table 32: Overmodulation Adaptation Status Register (INF_OVMADAPT_REG, DD28)

Variable Name	No Of Bits	Bit Index	Description
FILTBW_STAT	02	[1..0]	indicates internal FM/AM filter bandwidth (FILTBW) 0 = narrow 1 = extra wide 2 = medium 3 = wide
-	10	[11..2]	reserved
OVM_SCALE_STAT	12	[23..12]	current scaling factor for OVMADAPT (off: 1024 = 0 dB)

Power-up state

After power-up or reset, the DDEP software is in ASD mode (EPMODE=0) but in the same state as after a failed standard search, i.e. outputs are muted and all background routines are idle. The DDEPR must be written and a "restart" performed as explained before, or EPMODE can be set to 3 to use the expert mode. In this case, the expert mode registers must be written *afterwards.*

Control Interface

The hardware of the control interface is chip dependent. From the DSP's view, the type of hardware interface (PI bus, PCI bus, I^2C,...) makes (almost) no difference: all control accesses by the control interface to the DSP (X or Y) memories are only granted at the execution of a dedicated instruction called "MPI". This is necessary because the DSP needs the full bandwidth of the memories, and the DSP must not be forced to wait for an external memory access to complete as this may not allow the DSP to meet the real-time signal processing requirements.

At the MPI instruction, a read or write memory access by the control interface may be performed. If this has happened, the address which was accessed is available to the DSP software via a special hardware register, i.e. the software knows which register was accessed. This information, plus the actual register contents from XRAM, are put into a FIFO buffer. The issuing of MPI instructions and filling of the FIFO takes place within the 53 kHz thread; if the FIFO buffer is full (currently max. 12 entries), no MPI instruction is executed such that *control accesses are disabled* until at least one FIFO location becomes vacant. At every second 32 kHz cycle, if at least one item is in the FIFO, the oldest item is read out and the corresponding *register handling routine* is invoked. This routine, in case of a control register, decodes the register contents (which was stored in the FIFO and may differ from the actual value in the XRAM register!) and performs the required actions, or (in case of a status register) implements the defined behaviour of a few status variables (after read, clear INITSTAT bit in DD01; reset simple peak detector in DD04; special protocol for NICAM additional data in DD03).

Remark: Every other 32 kHz time slot is occupied by a "background" control routine, each of which must be executed at a constant rate.)

By means of storing both register address and contents in a FIFO, it is ensured that all control words sent by the controller are decoded and executed in the correct order. However the control software must consider that status data must be read a certain time after changing settings. With respect to DDEP, this is no critical issue and this

report should contain sufficient information about such delays, for example see the channel switch procedure (for expert mode, things are a lot more complex). Likewise, it should be considered that the *average* control data bandwidth is clearly smaller than the peak rate (53 kWords/s) because the DSP needs time to process the control data as explained.

If the PI bus control interface is to be used together with an interrupt-driven scheme, i.e. an interrupt is triggered each time a control access has completed, a resulting peak interrupt rate of 53 kHz (≈ 1/19µs) is considered too high for a typical micro controller. Therefore, the MPI instruction execution rate can be reduced by means of the `MPI_DIV` control variable in the MPI_CONTROL_REG register (DD25). The actual MPI rate is 53 kHz *divided* by `MPI_DIV` (a 0 behaves like a 1) with a maximum value of 255, i.e. the smallest possible MPI rate is approx. 207 Hz ≈ 1 / 5 ms.

System initialization

The DEMDEC DSP *must not* be initialized until the clock system of the IC is functioning, that is, at least the DSP clock and the audio clocks must be present. The SSIF signal input (from I2D link or whatever) does not need to be a valid sound IF for the initialization, but it should be at the DDEP restart as described in section Channel Switch Procedure.

For resuming after a power-saving mode, a DSP hardware reset and a new initialization should be performed. These control registers are chip dependent and are not in the scope of this report.

The DSP needs up to 100 µs after reset before it can process control accesses.

Refreshing control registers

Control registers can be refreshed in any order.

Remark: Some changes only take effect when the DDEPR is written, or if a DDEP restart is triggered. However, due to the dynamic properties of the DDEPR, refreshing cannot prevent the consequences of certain bit errors on the I^2C bus (e.g. if a bit error causes a wrong standard selection at the restart point of time). Therefore, refreshing does not yield a 100% certainty against I^2C bus bit errors. A higher safety could be achieved by verifying each write access by reading back the data, but this is not common practice.

Mode transitions

1. ASD to SSS mode: the search routine is disabled, everything else remains unchanged. This may be used to stop the search procedures and hold the currently active standard.
2. SSS to ASD mode: the last selected standard remains active, search is not active until "restart".
3. DDEP mode to expert mode: all DDEP-internal variables are reset, but the expert mode register contents are undefined and must be written afterwards in order to initialize the hardware and software.
4. expert to DDEP mode: settings from expert mode remain effective, but DDEP should be initialized via a "restart".

Hardware versioning

Some products may contain special versions of the DDEP software in which certain features can be disabled by means of hardware input signals of the DSP, which are typically generated by bond options, flash / OTP memory contents or similar. For example, for commercial reasons a certain sound standard might not be enabled. In such a case, the underlying DEMDEC software usually mutes the stereo or dual signal such that only the mono sound is available (even in expert mode), and DDEP likewise indicates a mono reception via the GST and GDU flags, although the stereo/dual identification information is still available. For example, if all FM A2 standards are disabled by versioning, these signals are only reproduced as mono, GST and GDU are always 0, even if the AST (FM A2 stereo ident) or ADU (FM A2 dual) flag is 1. The standard detection is not limited by versioning.

In PNX2000, only the dbx noise reduction is controlled by a versioning. If dbx is not enabled, the dbx decoder is replaced by a simplified algorithm, resulting in a limited stereo channel separation (“cheap stereo”).

Appendix 1 Register Map of DEMDEC DSP

Table 33: Register Map Overview of DEMDEC DSP (High Latency Registers)

W/R	XMEM ADDR. Decimal	RegisterName	Cluster Coarse	Detailed Description
R	1	INF_MAIN_STATUS_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	DEMDEC main status register. Some variables are active only in DDEP mode.
R	2	INF_NICAM_STATUS_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	NICAM status register. status signals from decoder hardware. active in DDEP and expert mode.
R	3	INF_NICAM_ADD_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	NICAM additional data register. updated every NICAM frame (1Khz rate).
R	4	INF_MONLEVEL_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	monitor level register. updated every 35 Khz period.
R	5	INF_MPX_LEVEL_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	MPX (BTSC / FM radio) pilot level register. from MPX demodulator hardware. close to 0 if not locked.
R	6	INF_DC1_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	DC offset of sound carrier 1 after FM demodulation
R	7	INF_SUBMAGN_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	FM subchannel magnitude register. lowpass filtered AM output of subchannel FM/AM demodulator.
R	8	INF_NOISELEVEL_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	Noise detector output and status register
R	9	INF_SRCSTATUS_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	SRC status information
W/R	10	DEM_HWCFG_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	Main hardware configuration register (FM/AM demodulator, IDENT)
W/R	11	DEM_CA1_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	Sound carrier 1 (mixer 1) frequency register
W/R	12	DEM_CA2_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	Sound carrier 2 (mixer 2) frequency register

Table 33: Register Map Overview of DEMDEC DSP (High Latency Registers) *...Continued*

W/R	13	DEM_MPXCFG_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	MPX demodulator configuration register
W/R	14	DEM_FMSUBCFG_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	FM subchannel demodulator and noise detector configuration register
W/R	15	DEM_SWCFG_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	Software signal processing before SRC (filter, de-emphasis, decompression etc.) configuration and SRC control
W/R	16	DEM_OUT_CFG_REG	DEMDEC EXPERT MODE	Output processing (SRC postprocessing) and monitor control register
W/R	17	MAGDET_THR_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	Magnitude detection thresholds for DDEP mode
W/R	18	NMUTE_FMA2_SAP_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	noise detector configuration for automute of SAP and SC2 in FM A2 standards (DDEP only)
W/R	19	NMUTE_MPX_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	noise detector hysteresis configuration for subchannel automute in BTSC and FM RADIO standards (DDEP only)
W/R	20	NMUTE_EIAJ_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	noise detector hysteresis configuration for subchannel automute in the EIAJ standard (DDEP only)
W/R	21	NICAM_CFG_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	NICAM configuration register
W/R	22	DDEP_CONTROL_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	DEMDEC Easy Programming register (DDEPR)
W/R	23	DEM_LEVELADJUST_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	DEMDEC level adjust and scaling register
W/R	24	DEM_ADC_SEL_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	ADC channel selection and mute
W/R	25	MPI_CONTROL_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	MPI (microprocessor interface) control
R	26	INF_REVID_DD_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	Revision ID of Embedded DSP Code
R	27	INF_CPULOAD_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	CPU load indicator register
R	28	INF_OVMADAPT_REG	DEMDEC STATUS	Overmodulation status register
W/R	29	DDEP_OPTIONS1_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	DDEP options register no.1
W/R	30	DD_OPTIONS2_REG	DEMDEC EASY PROGRAMMING	DEMDEC options register no. 2

7.9 AUDIO-DSP

7.9.1 Functional Overview

Functional overview of Audio-DSP for PNX2000 is given in Figure 13

The processing of the loudspeaker channels (MAIN, SUB, C, Ls, Rs), the headphone channel (AUX1/HP) and channels AUX2 to AUX6 is nested between the Digital Input Crossbar and the Digital Output Crossbar.

The following sources are inputs to the Digital Input Crossbar:

- DEC, left and right inputs from the demodulator / decoder (DEMDEC),
- Mono, mono input from the demodulator / decoder (DEMDEC),
- SAP, Secondary Audio Program input from the demodulator / decoder (DEMDEC),
- ADC (L, R), two channel input from the demodulator / decoder (DEMDEC),
- PIPMONO, mono input from the demodulator / decoder (DEMDEC),
- I2S 1 to 6 IN, from the I2S inputs at PNX2000.

All these signals pass the Level Adjust function before entering the crossbar. An adjustment is needed to level the source signals if they deviate from nominal setting.

A special source is the feedback from the Digital Output Crossbar. This OUTCOPY 1, 2 path offers the possibility e.g. to connect the Audio Monitor to one of the inputs of the Digital Output Crossbar.

The Noise/Silence Generator is another selectable source, needed for Dolby® Pro Logic® II and Dolby® Digital speaker trim. This noise source is compliant to the Dolby® requirements for noise sequencer.

The Digital Input Crossbar provides source select and also matrixing for the channels MAIN (L, R), AUX1 to AUX6 and the Audio Monitor (AUDMON). But only source select for Center (C), Left surround (Ls), Right surround (Rs) and low-frequency effects (LFE), because these are already decoded multi-channel signals.

Although the selectors are all of the same type not all facilities will be used in normal applications of the PNX2000. E.g. the center and surround selectors can be permanently connected to the Noise/Silence Generator. On the other hand there is normally no need to switch the AUX channels to Noise/Silence.

The setting of the Digital Matrix depends on the type of input signal. The different signal types: stereo, dual language or mono, may be detected by the identification circuit located in the demodulator/decoder block. So the switching can be done dependent on the identification. For dual language the preference for language A or B can be set if automatrix is selected. In this case the matrix provides the language according to the preference selected by the end-user.

The signal type is unknown if an external audio source (ADC, I2S) is chosen. In this case the end-user needs to have a selection facility. It should include the choice between stereo (AB, being L,R for stereo or both languages e.g. passed to SCART/ cinch for recording), mono (from stereo by (A+B)/2, also called forced mono), sound A or B and a swap (BA) for stereo if the source has interchanged L and R.

The processing channels are dedicated to loudspeakers (MAIN, SUB, C, Ls, Rs), to headphones (AUX1/HP), or to I2S1 to I2S6 out, DAC1 and DAC2 (AUX2 to AUX6). AUX2 to AUX6 offer only volume plus trim control (Vol/Trim) and Soft Mute (SM), whereas AUX1/HP has additional bass / treble control (Ba/Tr) and a mixer to feed in a beeper signal (e.g. as prompt from remote control commands).

The loudspeaker channels of the PNX2000 can process mono, normal stereo, already decoded multi-channel or Dolby® Pro Logic® II encoded signals. The functions provided can be used according to these signal types. Some of them are dedicated to specific modes leading to constraints. E.g., Pseudo Hall/Matrix ((L+R)/2; (L-R)/2) can only be used with stereo or mono signals, VDS only with DPL II decoded signals, and VDD applies to 5 externally decoded Dolby® Digital channels. IMono or IStereo can be selected, but both have to be switched off to meet the Dolby® requirements if DPL II is active.

Other selections depend on the speaker system, whether the set is equipped with 6 speakers (L, R, SUB, C, Ls, Rs) or subsets of this. For example, the surround speakers may be disconnected, or only the 2 main speakers (L, R) are in use. Another important issue is the size and bandwidth of the loudspeakers.

Some of the functions are set by 'SNDMODE'-register control according to the Sound Mode Table (see Table 1). The remaining functions need to be controlled by individual settings.

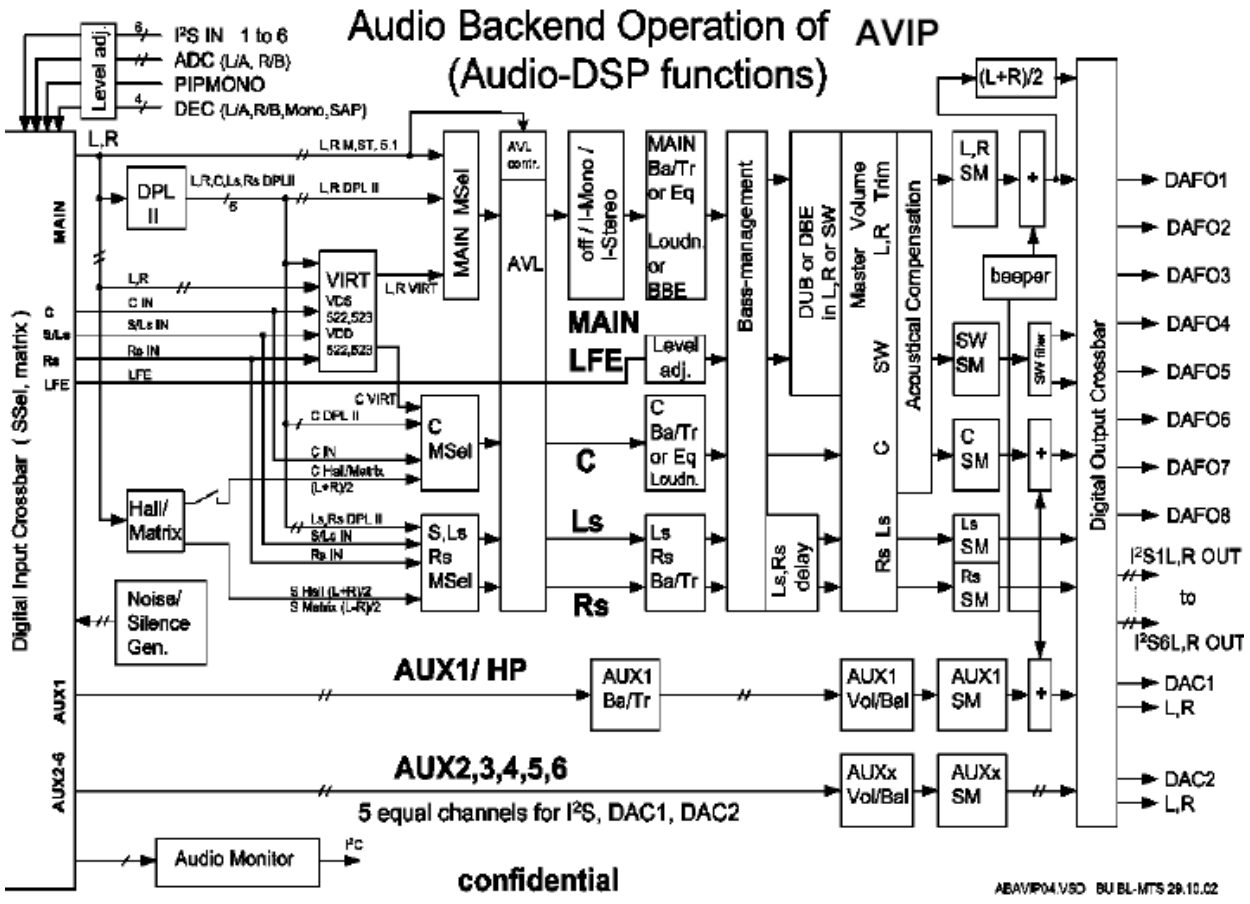


Figure 13: Audio Backend Operation of PNX2000

7.9.2 Loudspeaker Channel Sound Modes

Sound modes are defined in Table 34.

Table 34: Loudspeaker Channel Sound Modes

Mode	Description
M/ST	Mono/Stereo in case of mono or stereo source signals
M/ST Hall	Mono/Stereo with pseudo Hall in case of mono or stereo source signals[34-1]
M/ST Matrix	Mono/Stereo with pseudo Matrix in case of mono or stereo source signals[34-1]
DPLII Wide Center	DPLII Wide Center in case of DPL encoded source signals (large center speaker)
DPLII Phantom Center	DPL II Phantom Center in case of DPL encoded source signals (small center speaker)
DPLII 3 Stereo	DPLII 3 Stereo in case of DPL encoded source signals (no surround speakers available)
VDS523	DPLII+VDS(523) Virtual Dolby® Surround 523 in case of DPL encoded source signals
VDS522	DPLII+VDS(522) Virtual Dolby® Surround 522 in case of DPL encoded source signals
VDD523	VDD(523) Virtual Dolby® Digital 523 in case of externally decoded AC3 source signals
VDD522	VDD(522) Virtual Dolby® Digital 522 in case of externally decoded AC3 source signals
NSEQ	Multi-channel speaker level Trim (noise sequencing)

[34-1] In case that Hall or Matrix mode is active the extra 'CENTERMUTE-bit' gives the possibility to switch off the center signal. This is needed because it is not sufficient to mute the center signal by use of the Soft Mute (located directly in front of the Output Crossbar). The Bass Management would simply redirect the bass signals of the center, and therefore give an extra bass boost in left, right or subwoofer channel.

The Sound Mode explicitly sets the functions DPLII, VDS, VDD, Main MSel, C MSel, S MSel, Pseudo Hall/Matrix and provides a specific setting for noise sequencing.

Two steps are needed to change from one sound mode to another. Select the new sound mode first, and then toggle the execution bit 'EXEMODTAB' from '0' to '1' to activate the new mode. To make this happen two write accesses are needed.

1. Set EXEMODTAB-bit and set new SNDMOD-bits.
2. Clear EXEMODTAB-bit.

This means that it is always necessary to write twice to change the sound mode once. This control mechanism is built in to make the system robust against regular register updates, which are processed every few seconds.

Table 35 shows the setting for the loudspeaker channels dependent on the selected "Sound Mode".

Table 35: Sound Modes

Sound Mode	DPLII	Noise/ Silence Gen.	VDSVDD	MSEL.Main	Pseudo Hall Matrix	MSEL. Centre	MSEL. Surround
M/ST	not active	Active[35-1]	Not active	Connected to L,R M/ST	Not active	Connected to CIN	Connected to LsIN, RsIN
M/ST Hall	not active	Not active	Not active	Connected to L,R M/ST	Pseudo Hall active	Connected to (L+R)/2	Connected to (L+R)/2
M/ST MATRIX	not active	Not active	Not active	Connected to L,R M/ST	Pseudo Matrix active	Connected to (L+R)/2	Connected to (L-R)/2

Table 35: Sound Modes *...Continued*

Sound Mode	DPLII	Noise/ Silence Gen.	VDSVDD	MSEL.Main	Pseudo Hall Matrix	MSEL. Centre	MSEL. Surround
DPLII N/W	DPLII N/W	Not active	Not active	Connected to L,R DPLII	Not active	Connected to C (DPLII)	Connected to Ls, Rs (DPLII)
DPLII PH	DPLII PH	Not active	Not active	Connected to L,R DPLII	Not active	Connected to silence[35-2]	Connected to Ls, Rs (DPLII)
DPLII 3ST	DPLII 3ST	Not active	Not Active	Connected to L,R DPLII	Not active	Connected to C (DPLII)	Connected to silence[35-2]
VDS523	DPLII N/W	Not active	VDS523	Connected to L,R VIRT	Not active	Connected to C VIR	Connected to silence[35-2]
VDS522	DPLII N/W	Not active	VDS522	Connected to L,R VIRT	Not active	Connected to silence[35-2]	Connected to silence[35-2]
VDD523	Not active	Not active	VDD523	Connected to L,R VIRT	Not active	Connected toC VIR	Connected to silence[35-2]
VDD522	Not active	Not active	VDD522	Connected to L,R VIRT	Not active	Connected to silence[35-2]	Connected to silence[35-2]
DPLII NSEQ	Not active	Active[35-1]	Not Active	Connected to L,R M/ST	Not active	Connected to CIN	Connected to LsIN, RsIN

[35-1] The Noise/Silence Generator is active, MSel Center is connected to CIN and MSel Surround is connected to LsIN, RsIN. This is done to give the set manufacturer the facility to build a noise sequencer application of his choice with the M/ST sound mode.

[35-2] (silence) means that the signal carries digital silence, no audio signal nor noise.

7.9.3 Comments about Function Control

7.9.3.1 Automatic Volume Levelling (AVL)

The AVL reduces the audio input signal in the MAIN channels (L, R, C, Ls, Rs) to a selectable maximum output level, if it exceeds this level at the input to the stage.

A detector creates a control signal from Lt and Rt (input of the DPL II decoder) or from the L, R output of the virtualizer. The AVL provides a short attack time of 4ms and settable decay times of 20ms, 2s, 4s, 8s and 16s. A weighting filter can be chosen in the control signal generation. The advantage is that bass signals and high frequency components have less impact on control.

Also the AVL level (maximum output level) can be set and the AVL can be switched OFF.

7.9.3.2 Virtual Dolby® Surround (VDS)

Virtual Dolby® Surround gives a surround sound impression with use of only two speakers (VDS522) or three speakers (VDS523). Inputs to VDS are the L, R, C, Ls and Rs outputs of the DPL II decoder. The surround signals Ls and Rs are virtualized and redirected in both cases to the left and right channel, whereas the center signal is only redirected to L, R when VDS522 is selected. In VDS523 mode a separate center channel is provided. But digital silence is connected to the C output of the virtualizer in VDS522 mode. Ls and Rs carry digital silence in both modes VDS522 and VDS523.

Figure 14 shows the left and right output signal of the VDS module. The signals C (center), Rs (right surround) and Ls (left surround) are connected to digital silence. The main left and right inputs are connected to the source signal, which in this case is: L = -R with 20dB headroom. VDS522 is selected as sound mode, with a mix level set to 80% and DPLII set to Movie mode. The 'VDDMONSUR' switch has to be activated and produces a phase inversion of the DPLII Rs surround output channel to achieve a de-correlation of mono surround signals.

The curve in Figure 14 should be used for characterization of the VDS module.

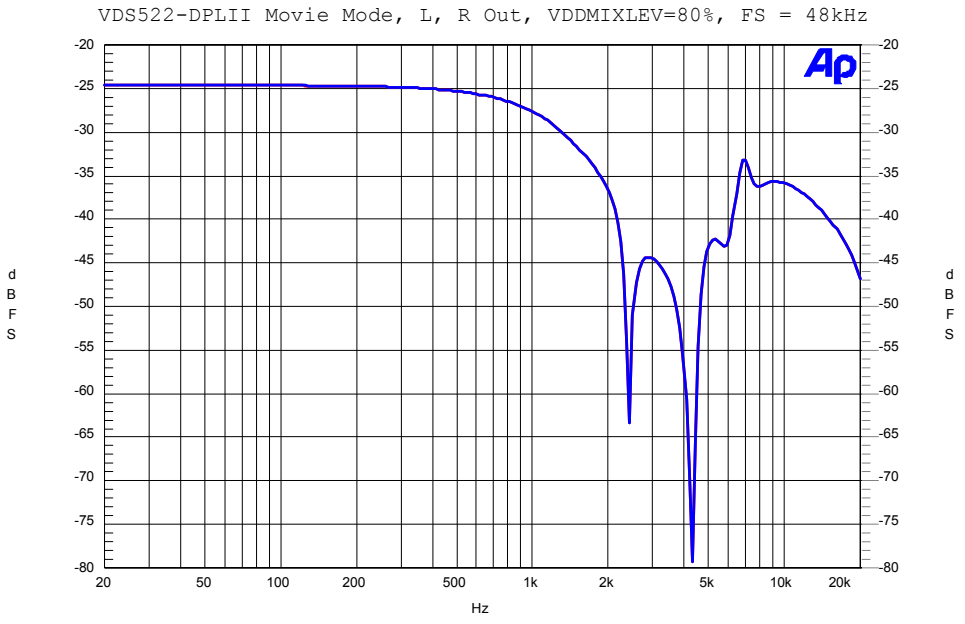


Figure 14: Virtual Dolby® Surround Left and Right Output Signal

7.9.3.3 Virtual Dolby Digital (VDD)

Virtual Dolby Digital gives a surround sound impression with use of only two speakers (VDD522) or three speakers (VDD523). Inputs to VDD are the L, R, C, Ls and Rs inputs of the Digital Input Crossbar. The surround signals Ls and Rs are virtualized and redirected in both cases to the left and right channel, whereas the center signal is redirected to L, R only in case of VDD522 is selected. In VDD523 mode a separate center channel is provided. But digital silence is connected to the C output of the virtualizer in VDD522 mode. Ls and Rs carry digital silence in 522 and 523 mode.

The 'VDDMONSUR' switch must be activated to get some de-correlation via phase inversion, this is necessary for mono surround signals.

Figure 15 shows the left and right output signal of the VDD module. The input signals MAIN (L and R), as well as Center (CIN) and Right Surround (Rs) are connected to digital silence. The left surround (Ls) input is connected to a source signal with 15dB headroom. The diagram is scaled to -15dBFS = 0dBr. VDD522 is selected as sound mode and the mix level is set to 80%.

The curves should be used for characterization of the VDD module.

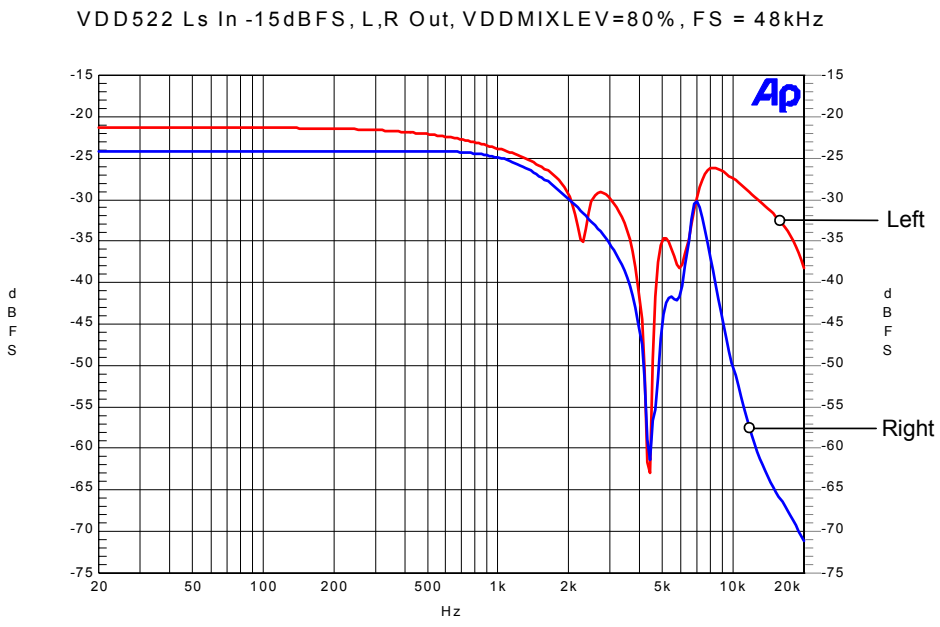


Figure 15: Virtual Dolby® Digital Left and Right Output Signal

7.9.3.4 Noise Sequencer for DPLII

The set manufacturer has to provide a program to build a noise sequencer with the components available in the PNX2000. The noise sequencer must meet the requirements as specified in the Dolby® Licensee Information Manual: Dolby® Digital Consumer Decoder. All channels L, C, R, Ls, Rs can be connected to the noise source, then the noise can be cycled by use of the Soft Mute (SM). It is recommended to mute the subwoofer output, while the noise sequence is active.

7.9.3.5 Dolby® Pro Logic® II Function (DPLII)

The Dolby® Pro Logic® II decoder decodes the incoming Dolby® encoded Left (Lt) and Right (Rt) channels into the 5 output channels: Left (L), Right (R), Center (C), Left surround (Ls) and Right surround (Rs).

This implemented DPLII decoder is compliant with all requirements mentioned in the 'Dolby® Licensee Information Manual: Dolby® Pro Logic® II '.

The selection of DPLII normal/wide, Phantom Center, or 3 Stereo mode delivers output signals according to the Dolby® requirements. Outputs which are not used in a specific mode carry Digital Silence '-'.

The Surround delay is adjustable between 0ms and 25ms, depending on the selected DPLII decoder mode. The DPLII function provides 5 different decoder modes:

- Movie,
- Music,

- Virtual,
- Pro Logic Emulation,
- Matrix.

Movie Mode

The Movie mode is very similar to the Pro Logic mode. The main difference is, that Pro Logic has a 7 kHz surround filter and a mono surround output, while the Movie mode has no surround filter and stereo surround outputs.

Music Mode

The Music mode offers users some flexibility to control the end results for their own taste. Music mode is recommended by Dolby® Labs. as the standard mode for auto-sound music systems (without video). The Music mode has to be identified as the "Music" version of Pro Logic II, to distinguish it from the Movie mode.

Only the Music mode offers additional control of the following features:

Dimension Control

Allows the user to gradually adjust the sound field either towards the front or towards the rear. This can be useful to help achieve a more suitable balance from all the speakers with certain recordings.

Center Width Control

Allows variable adjustment of the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from left/right speakers as a "Phantom" center image, or various combinations of all three front speakers. This control (used in a car application) allows to create a balanced left-center-right stage presentation for both the driver and the front passenger.

On the other hand it allows improved blending of the center and main speakers, or to control the sense of image width, or "weight".

Panorama

Extends the front stereo image to include the surround speakers for an exciting "wraparound" effect with side wall imaging.

Virtual Mode

The Virtual mode is usually used when Pro Logic II is connected to a virtual surround process. However, there might be some virtualizers for which this mode does not produce the intended result. The Movie mode may give a better surround effect for those virtualizers.

Pro Logic Emulation Mode

The Pro Logic Emulation mode included in the DPLII technology package is as robust as the original Pro Logic decoding function without having to provide separate decoding circuitry in the product.

Matrix Mode

Matrix mode is the same as Music mode except that the directional enhancement is turned off. It may be used to enhance mono signals by making them seem "larger". Matrix mode may also find a use in auto systems, where the fluctuations from poor FM stereo reception can otherwise cause disturbing surround signals from a logic decoder.

Remark: Listening tests done at Dolby® Laboratories during the Dolby® Approval of the PNX2000 showed, that for VDS522 and VDS523 sound mode (DPLII combined with the internal virtualizer) it is necessary to select the DPLII Movie mode, additionally the "VDDMONSUR" switch has to be switched ON.

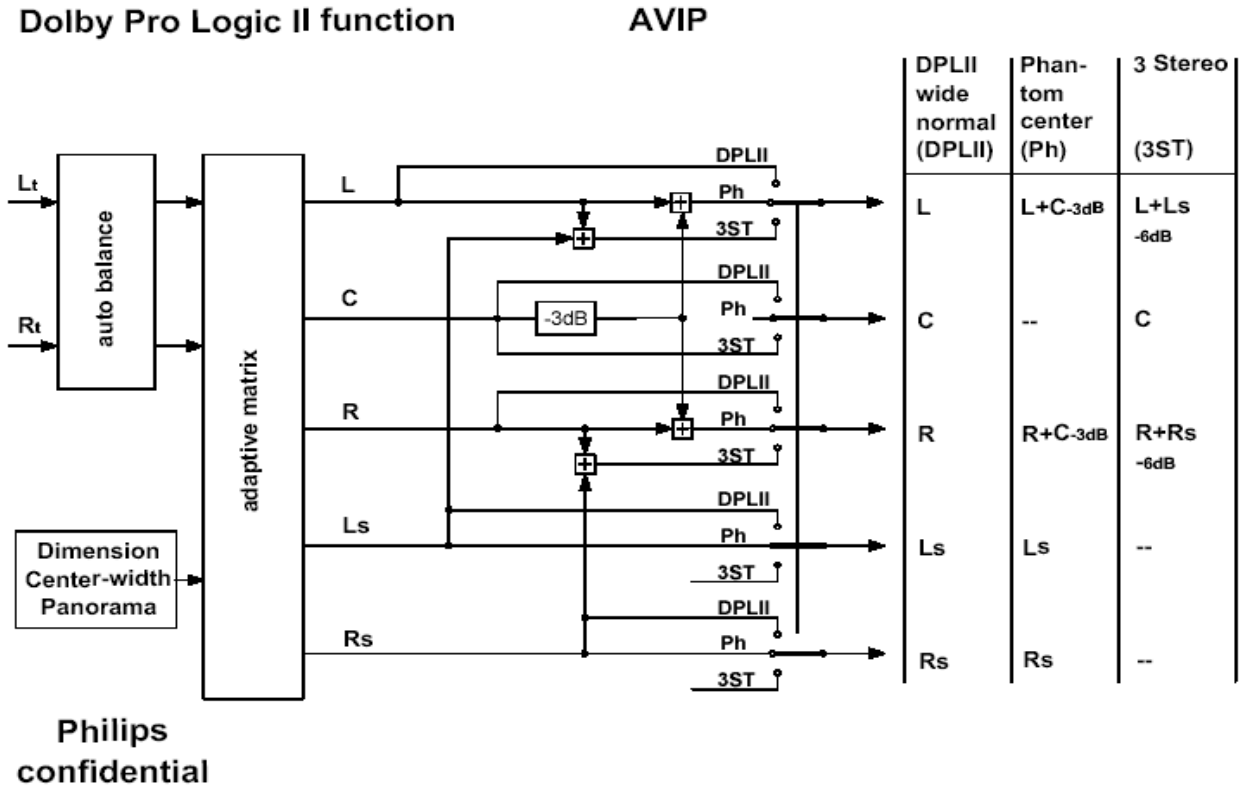


Figure 16: Dolby® Pro Logic® II Function

7.9.3.6 Bass / Treble

Bass and treble functions are implemented in all 5 main signal paths (L, R, C, Ls, Rs) and in the AUX1/HP. The user is able to attenuate or boost the bass and high frequency signals independently within a range of -16dB to +15dB. The external resolution (under user control) is defined to 1dB steps, whereas the internal resolution (not under user control, 1/32dB steps) is used to avoid 'pop noise'. The internally used 1/32dB per step leads to a maximum speed of amplitude change, which is defined to 15.625dB/s. The corner frequency of the bass function is fixed at 40 Hz and for the treble function fixed at 14 kHz.

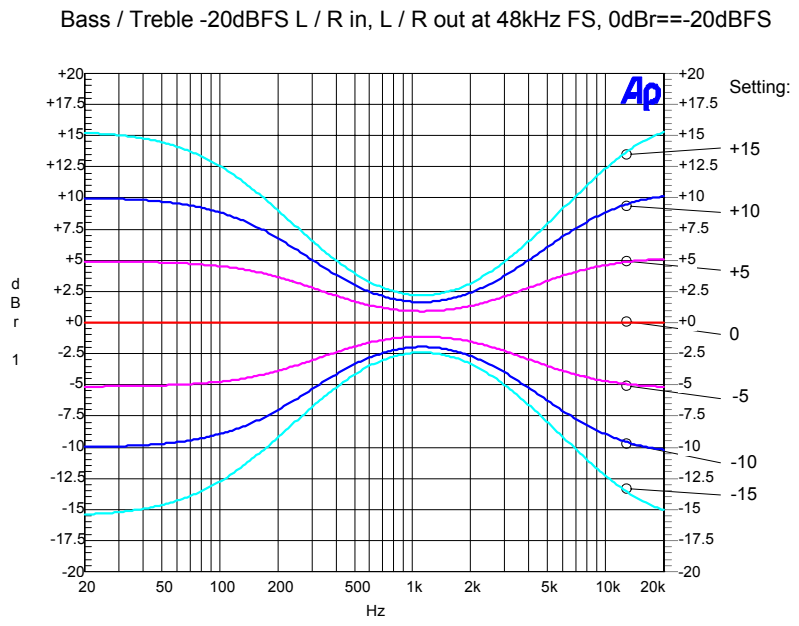


Figure 17: Bass / Treble Function with Equal Settings and Steps of 5dB

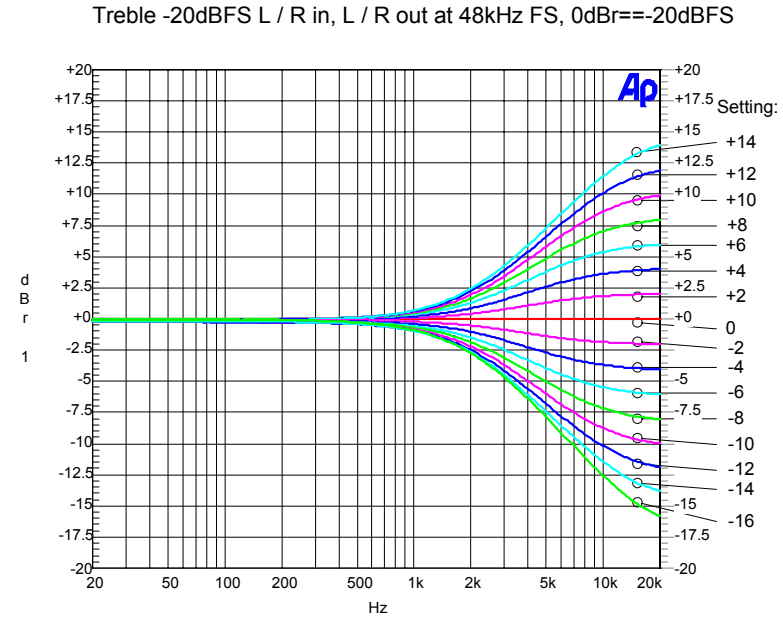


Figure 18: Treble Function within Steps of 2dB. The Bass Control is Set to Flat

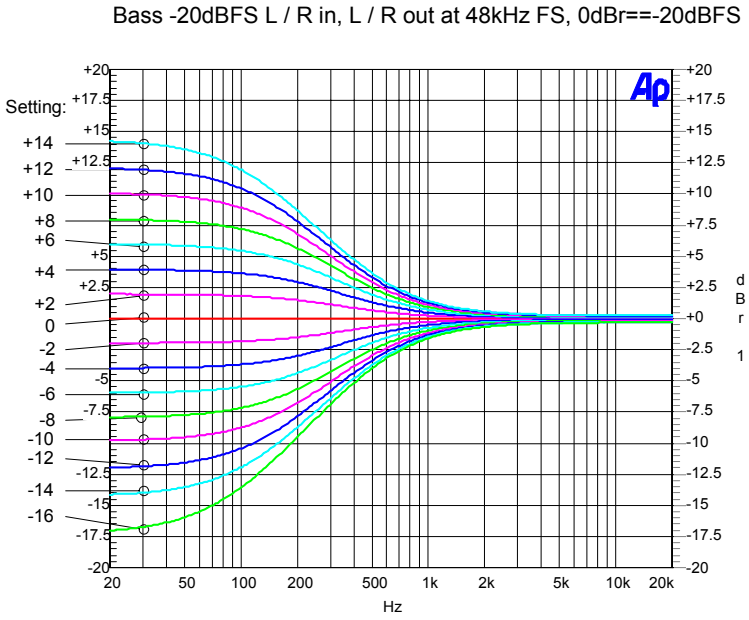


Figure 19: Bass Function within Steps of 2dB. The Treble Control is Set to Flat

7.9.3.7 Loudness

This section describes the PNX2000 loudness function.

The human ear listening curves (Fletcher-Munson loudness contours) show that the ears of a human are less sensitive to low and high frequencies at low sound pressure level (volume level). In general a loudness function can be used to compensate the human ear sensitivity loss at low volume levels.

The supported sample rates are 32 kHz and 48 kHz. Sample rate 48 kHz is used in case 44.1 kHz is required. This results in a 10% shift of the loudness curves.

Within a volume range of 30dB the loudness gain varies with the total gain value of the volume stage. The loudness curves are automatically adjusted to the input volume level, where the allowed input volume steps can be 1/8dB or even smaller to avoid step-noise.

At high volume the resulting loudness curve is flat, because there is no need to boost high and low frequencies at a high sound pressure level. The loudness boost becomes active, if the input volume is reduced below the (adjustable) no attack threshold. The resulting gain depends on the actual input volume level. Within a range of 30dB below the no attack threshold the loudness function gives an increasing boost of low and high frequencies. If the input volume is reduced more than 30dB below the no attack threshold level then the maximum loudness gain is reached and the loudness curve for 30dB remains active. The maximum loudness gain is +18dB at 20 Hz and + 4.5dB at 16 kHz.

The frequency where the gain is not affected by the loudness function is called no attack frequency. This no attack frequency can be adjusted to 500 Hz or 1 kHz. This results in different loudness curves, but the maximum gain at 20 Hz and 16 kHz remains the same. Figure 8 shows loudness curve measurements with a no attack frequency set to 500Hz, as well as one example curve where the no attack frequency is set to 1kHz.

As already mentioned, the no attack threshold of the input volume level (which gives a flat loudness curve) can be adjusted, to allow a flexible selection of the active loudness working range.

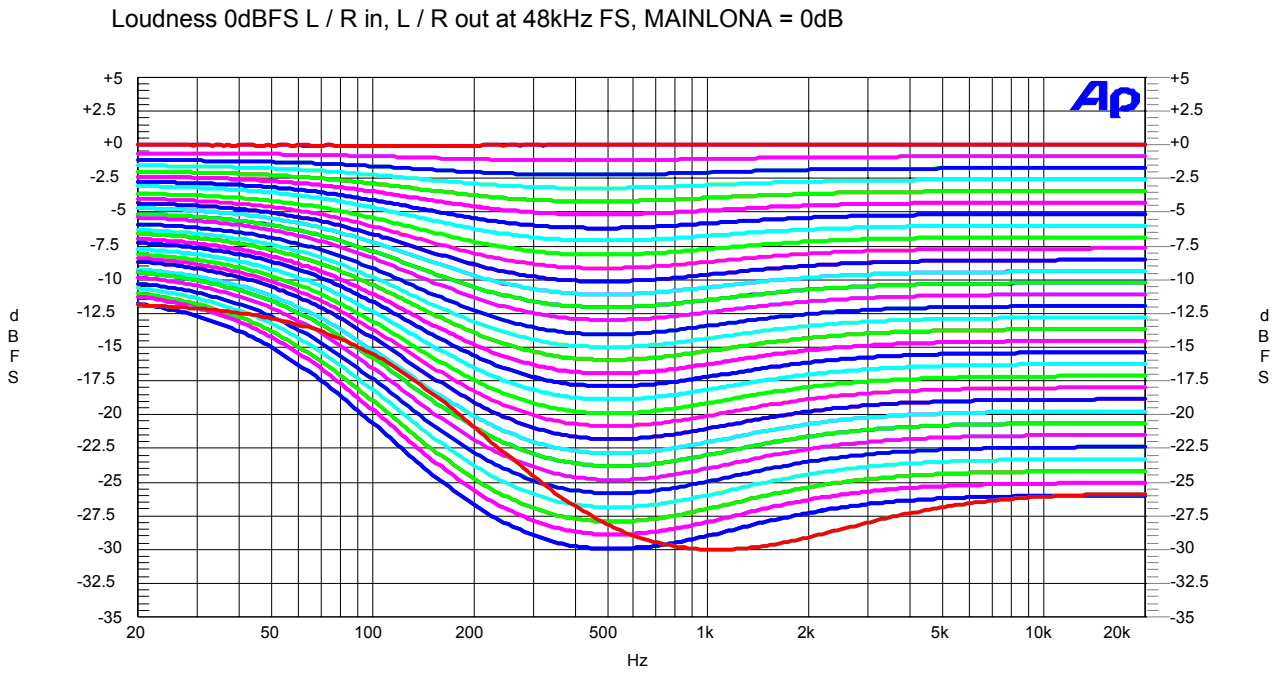


Figure 20: Loudness Curves for a MASTVOL Range of 0 - -30dB (Step Width 1dB)

For the MASTVOL range of 0 - -30dB (upper to lower) the no attack frequency (MAINLOCH) was set to 500Hz.

For the last curve (red) at MASTVOL = -30dB the no attack frequency was set to 1kHz.

7.9.3.8 Incredible Stereo (IStereo)

The IStereo module, also known as Robust Incredible Sound (RIS), is a Stereo Expander. The listener gets the impression of a sound reproduced by 2 virtual speakers, positioned at a larger distance (angle) than the actual speakers. So, the stereo image is expanded by this widening sound effect.

The only parameter controlled by the user is the Stereo Widening Parameter Alfa (a). A register named 'INSOEF' is reserved within the PNX2000 to allow user controlled access. Additionally this feature can be switched ON or OFF controlled by use of the 'INSOMO' register.

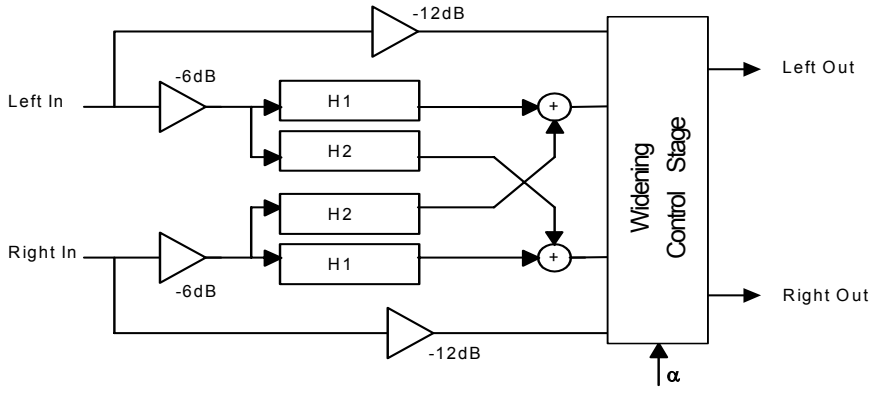


Figure 21: Block Diagram of the IStereo (RIS) Module

Figure 22 shows the IStereo output for a stereo signal with 15dB headroom and left, right with 0° phase [1)]. The second curve is measured under the same conditions, but with -180° phase between left and right [2)].

Remark: All curves are measured with a sample rate of 48kHz. The frequency responses shift with the sample rate

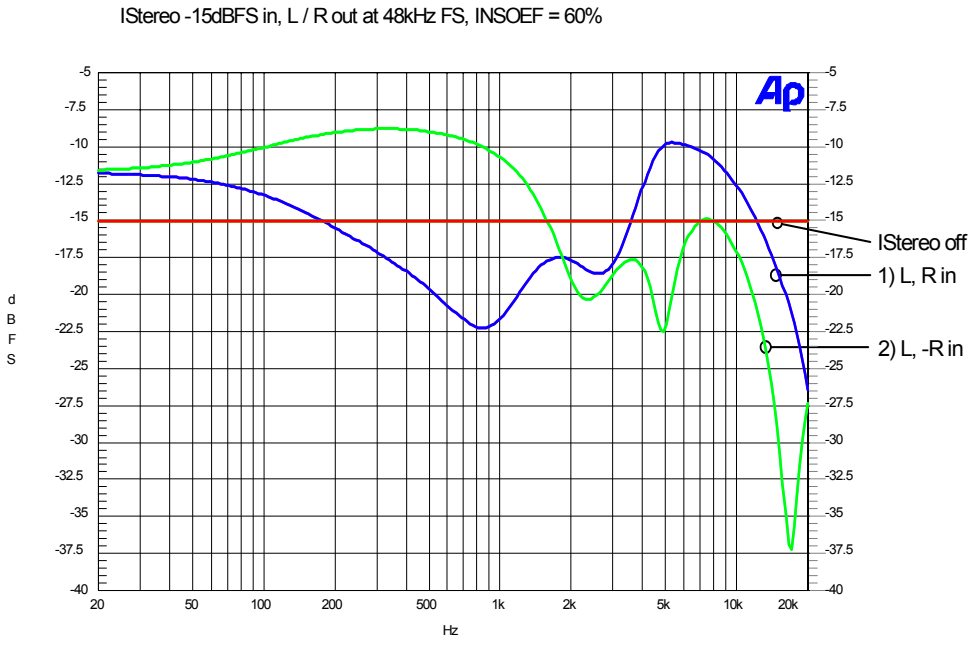


Figure 22: Left/Right Output Signal of IStereo Module (conditions 1 and 2)

7.9.3.9 Incredible Mono (IMono)

The Incredible Mono module (IMono) generates two channels (a stereo signal: Left and Right) from one mono input signal. When the sound of the mono input signal is processed, the listener gets the impression that the sound is reproduced as pseudo-stereo signal with incredible sound.

This module is implemented by a combination of two cascaded stages: the IMONO Decorrelator and the RIS module (IStereo). The RIS module is exactly the same module already described in the previous chapter [IStereo]. All data handling is done internally within PNX2000. The user can control the effect strength via the 'INSOEF' variable being shared between the IStereo and the IMono module. It can be switched ON or OFF, by use of the 'INSOMO' register. There is no user control for ScaleML/MR.

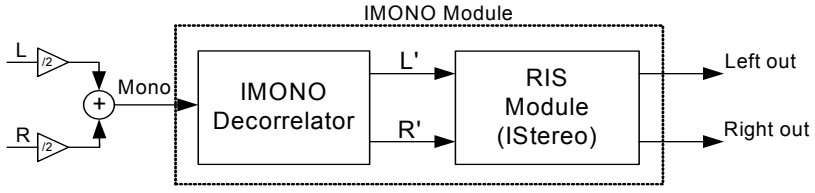


Figure 23: Block Diagram of IMono Module

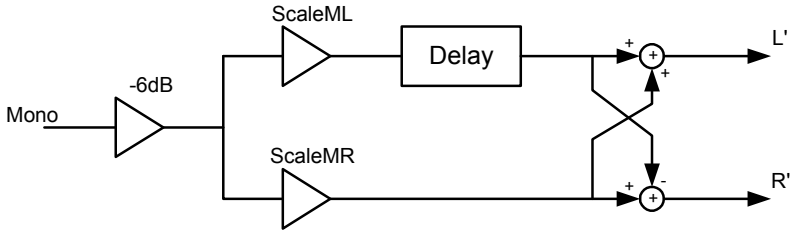


Figure 24: Block Diagram of the IMONO Decorrelator Module

Remark: Delay is a delay line of 4 samples.

In Figure 25 the output signal of the IMono module is shown. The input is connected to a source with 15dB headroom and the left, right output signal is measured at a sample rate of 48kHz.

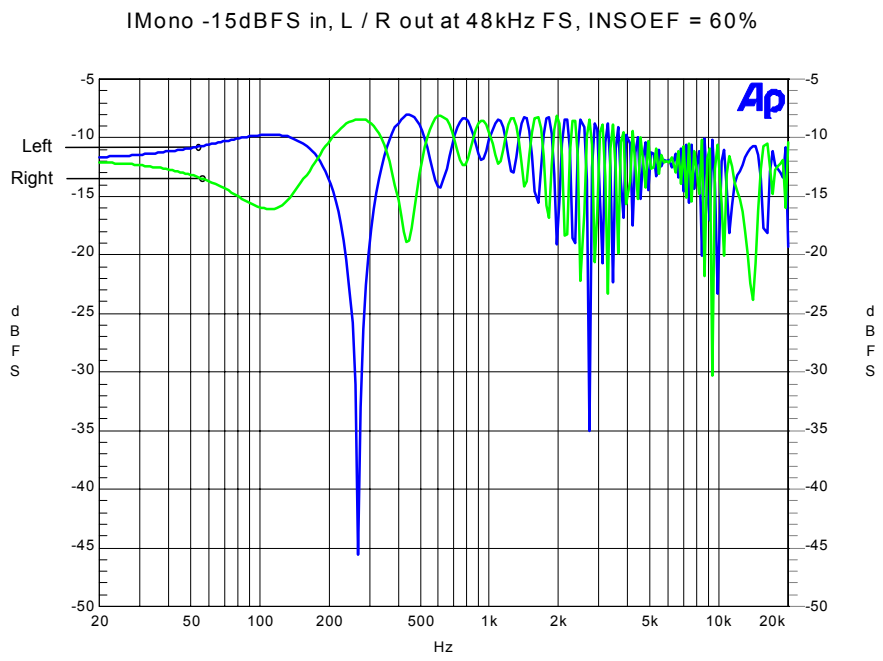


Figure 25: Left and Right Output Signal of the IMono Module

7.9.3.10 Dynamic Ultra Bass (DUB)

In general the DUB function is used in small TV-Sets without full range speakers that cannot reproduce deep bass signals. The effect is caused by producing harmonics of the low frequency content. It gives the impression of deep bass reproduction although the fundamentals are missing. The level of harmonics added to the original signal is made dependent from the total signal level at the output. The dynamic behaviour allows a strong amplification of the harmonics for small volume signals, but only small amplification for high volume signals. Maximum gain and the target output level can be set. The acoustical behaviour of this feature has to be tuned to the TV's internal loudspeaker set. Therefore a certain set of filter coefficients has to be found for each used TV-set. This is done by use of the loudspeaker characteristics as well as by listening tests. This coefficient set has to be loaded into the PNX2000 once after power on reset. During the coefficient download the DUB must be turned off and afterwards it can be turned on. A method to calculate the coefficients will be available.

DUB is applied to the left and right speakers or alternatively with different coefficients to the subwoofer signal to enhance the bass reproduction. When using DUB it is not possible to apply DBE.

The DUB coefficient RAM layout can be found in Appendix 1 Register Map of DEMDEC DSP.

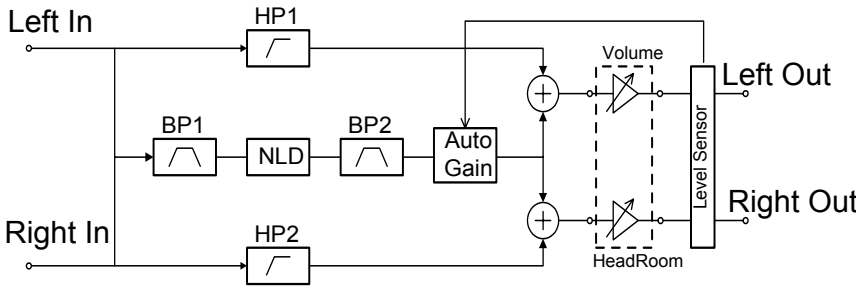


Figure 26: Block Diagram of the DUB Function

The following download procedure shows how to write the coefficients into the DUB and DBE module.

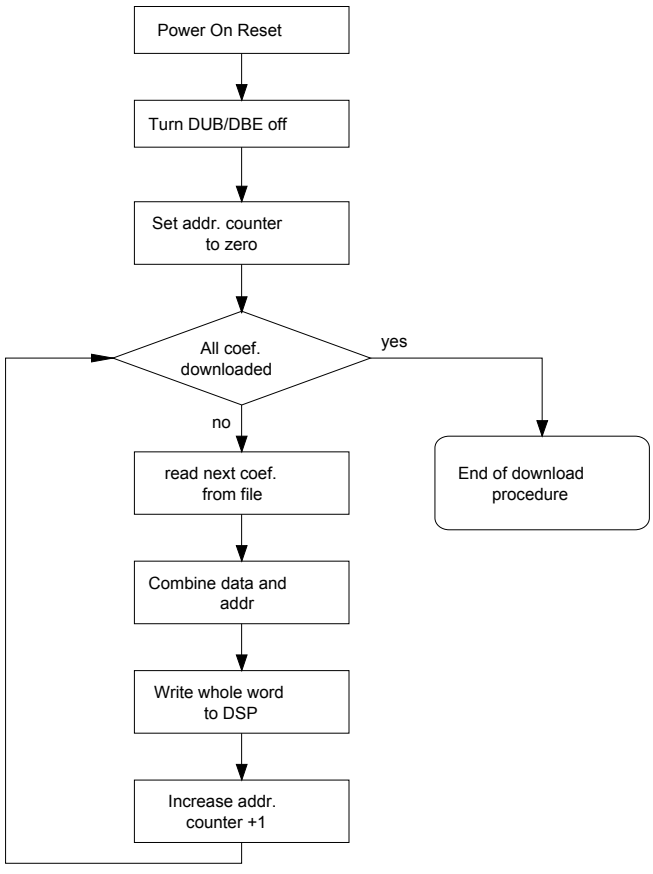


Figure 27: Download Procedure for DUB and DBE Coefficients

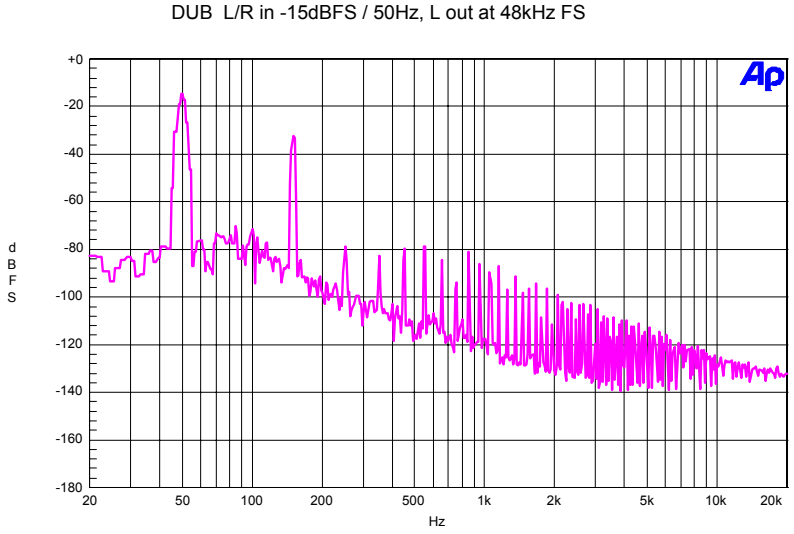


Figure 28: DUB Spectrum Plot

7.9.3.11 Dynamic Bass Enhancement (DBE)

The DBE function is used in TV-sets equipped with large speakers or a subwoofer system. This feature produces a level dependant bass boost. The dynamic behaviour allows a strong bass amplification for small volume signals, but only small bass amplification for high volume signals. This function has to be tuned to the speakers used within a certain TV-set. The coefficients for the filters as well as the parameters for the bass boost control have to be stored into the PNX2000 once after power on reset. A method to find the best coefficients and parameters for a certain TV-set will be available. During the coefficient download the DBE must be turned off and afterwards it can be turned on.

DBE is applied to the left and right speakers or alternatively with different coefficients to the subwoofer. When using DBE it is not possible to provide DUB.

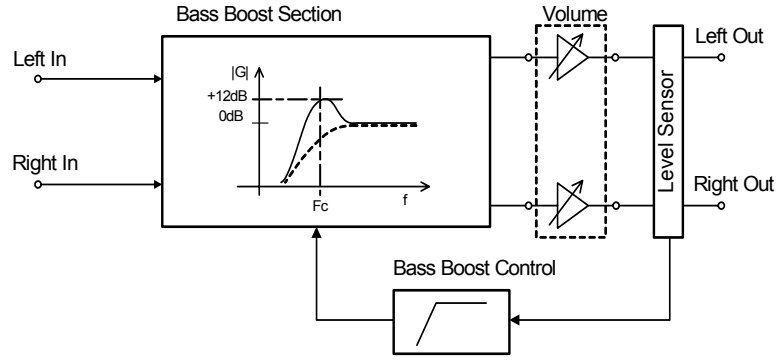


Figure 29: Block Diagram of the Dynamic Bass Enhancement (DBE)

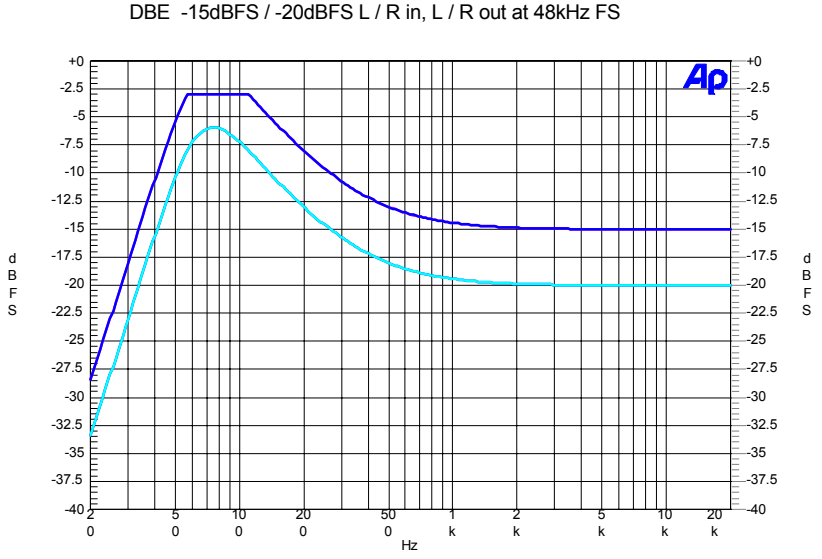


Figure 30: DBE Response Curves for two different Input Levels

For the coefficient download procedure see Section 7.9.3.15.

The DBE coefficient RAM layout can be found in Appendix 2 DUB/DBE.

7.9.3.12 BBE®

BBE® is a sound feature which invented by, and used under licence from, BBE Sound Incorporated. BBE® is intended to enhance the bass and treble of the original sound, as well as to carry out a frequency dependent phase shift from about -180 degrees at 20 Hz to +180 degrees at 20 kHz. As announced by BBE Sound, Inc., BBE® is said to lead to a "clear sound with a much higher speech/voice transparency".

The BBE® function used within the PNX2000 has to be tuned to different TV-sets to produce the desired clear and full sound. The two control coefficients BBECONTOUR (bass) and BBEPROCESS (treble) have to be adjusted depending on the taste of the TV-set manufacturer in combination with the used speakers of a certain TV-set. These control parameters have to be stored into the PNX2000 once after power on reset. During the coefficient download the BBE® must be turned off and afterwards it can be turned on.

BBE® is applied to the left and right speakers. When using BBE® it is not possible to use loudness in parallel.

Remark: The recommendations by BBE Sound Inc. for min. signal frequency boost have to be achieved. Contact BBE Sound Inc. for the specification.

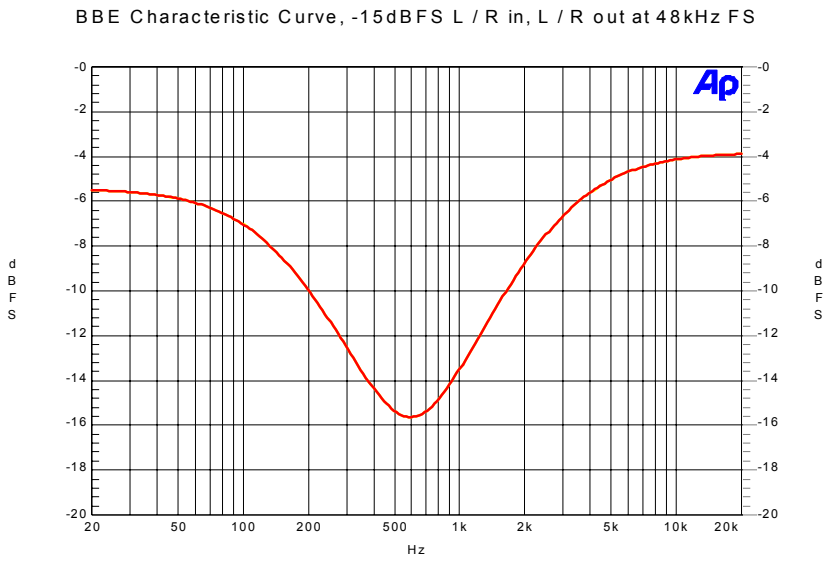


Figure 31: Response Curve - Contour +9dB @ 100Hz and Process +12dB @ 10kHz

7.9.3.13 Bass Management

Every multi-channel reproducing sound IC, which has to be licensed by Dolby® Laboratories, must include a Bass ManagemenT BMT (also called bass redirection). The PNX2000 bass redirection fulfils the different configuration modes asked by Dolby® Laboratories. Within this chapter the functional description of the PNX2000 bass redirection function is given.

In general the bass redirection is used to redirect the low frequency components of the audio signal to loudspeakers (large speakers), being capable to reproduce them. In audio equipment all speakers may be large, but in TV-sets either, the L and R speakers are large or a subwoofer is applied.

Thus a bass redirection can be done to the L and R large speakers or to the subwoofer. The low frequency components are cut out of the audio signals, which are directed to satellite loudspeakers (small speakers); on the other hand, the high frequency components are cut out of the audio signals, which are redirected to the subwoofer.

The corner frequency of the high and complementary low pass filters can be selected, to allow specific adjustments with respect to the loudspeakers in use. The corner frequency of the LP / HP- filters is adjustable within a range from 50 Hz to 400 Hz. There are 16 different corner frequencies to choose from: 50Hz, 60Hz, 70Hz, 80Hz, 90Hz, 100Hz, 110Hz, 120Hz, 130Hz, 140Hz, 150Hz, 200Hz, 250Hz, 300Hz, 350Hz and 400Hz. This implemented bass redirection covers sample rates of 32 kHz and 48 kHz. The 48 kHz sample rate is also used, if 44.1 kHz is active. This results in a 10% shift of the low and high pass filter curves.

The BMT in this device has been implemented on the basis of the BMT for Dolby® Digital Implementations. The bass redirection (BMT) covers four different configuration modes:

1. BMT1 covers the bass management described as configuration 1 (see Dolby® Licensee Information Manual for Dolby® Digital Consumer Decoder). The BMT1 mode is used to redirect the low frequency components of all five channels (L, R, C, Ls and Rs) together with the LFE to a separate subwoofer.
2. BMT2 is equivalent to the bass management described as configuration 2 (see Dolby® Licensee Information Manual for Dolby® Digital Consumer Decoder). The BMT2 mode is used to redirect the low frequency components of the center and the surround channels to the full-range main loudspeakers (large left and right speakers). Additionally a separate subwoofer can be used in this configuration.

Remark: The low frequency components of the surround channels must not be redirected if DPLII (or DPL) is active.

3. BMT3 represents the normal center mode described as configuration 3 (see Dolby® Licensee Information Manual for Dolby® Digital Consumer Decoder). The BMT3 mode is used to redirect the low frequency components of the center to the full-range main loudspeakers (large left and right speakers). If an external subwoofer is used, then another variation of configuration 3 can be used (see Figure 32).
4. BMT4 is equivalent to the bass management described as car configuration2 (see Dolby® Additional Bass Management Configurations). The BMT4 mode is used to redirect the low frequency components of the left, right, center and LFE to the full-range surround loudspeakers (large Ls and Rs speakers). The external subwoofer is always disabled.

Remark: The low frequency components of the surround channels must not be redirected if DPLII (or DPL) is active.

The BMTOFF mode is used if no redirection of the low frequency components is needed, in case of all five loudspeakers (left, right, center, left surround and right surround) are large loudspeakers and a subwoofer (used for LFE) is applied.

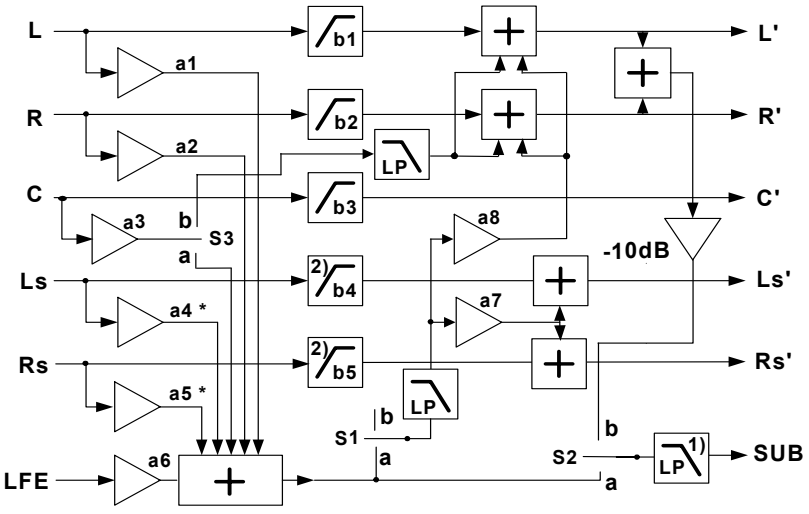
Remark: There is an option to switch off the low pass filter, which is located in the subwoofer output path. This non-processed sub-woofer mode can be used for BMT1 and BMT2, and gives the possibility to use an external subwoofer filter.

In BMT3 this switch is used to select between the two different configuration 3 variants.

The following diagrams represent a general overview about the PNX2000 bass redirection (BMT); and a detailed view on the different implemented BMT configurations.

AVIP Bass Redirection

BMT1, single woofer system with improved filtering : small speakers for L, R, C, Ls, Rs; extra SUB (subwoofer)
BMT2, normal center mode with bass splitter: large speakers for L, R; small speakers C, Ls, Rs ; SUB optional
BMT3, normal center mode: large speakers for L, R, Ls, Rs; small speaker C; SUB optional
BMT4, car configuration: large speakers for Ls, Rs; small speakers L, R, C ; no subwoofer



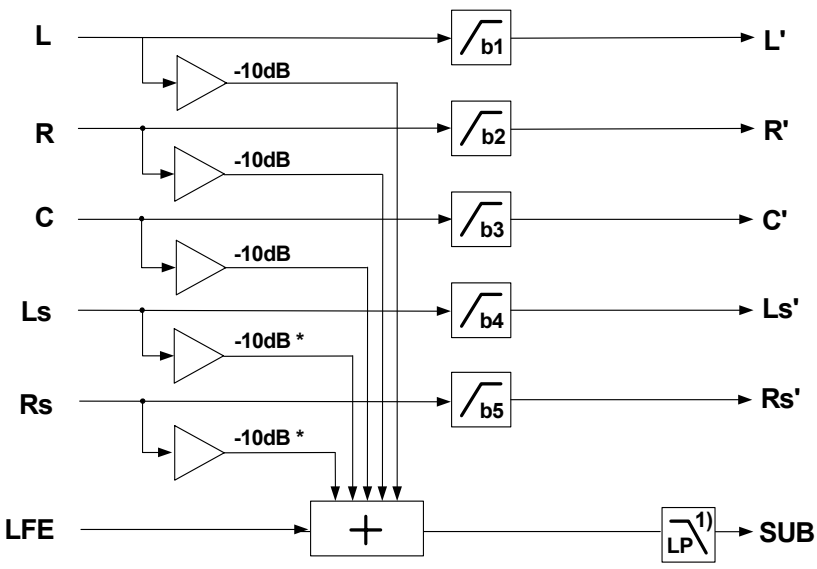
	BMT 1	BMT 2	BMT 3	BMT 3a	BMT 4
Gain	[dB]	[dB]	[dB]	[dB]	[dB]
a1	-10	-100	-100	-100	-4.5
a2	-10	-100	-100	-100	-4.5
a3	-10	-4.5	-4.5	-4.5	-4.5
a4	-10	-4.5	-100	-100	-100
a5	-10	-4.5	-100	-100	-100
a6	0	+5.5	0	+1	+5.5
a7	-100	-100	-100	0	0
a8	-100	0	-100	0	-100
Switch					
S1	b	a	b	a	a
S2	a	b	a	open	open
S3	a	a	b	b	a
Filter					
b1	HP	flat	flat	flat	HP
b2	HP	flat	flat	flat	HP
b3	HP	HP	HP	HP	HP
b4	HP	HP	flat	flat	flat/HP ²)
b5	HP	HP	flat	flat	flat/HP ²)

1) LP filter can be switched flat, to allow the use of external subwoofer filtering.

2) BMT4 only: HP filter is active if DPL or DPLII mode is selected; otherwise HP is switched to flat.

***) Low frequency content of Ls and Rs must not be redirected in DPL or DPLII mode; only in Dolby Digital mode**

Figure 32: Overview of the PNX2000 Bass Redirection



1) LP filter can be switched flat, to allow the use of external subwoofer filtering.

*) low frequency content of Ls and Rs must not be redirected in DPL or DPLII mode; only in Dolby Digital mode

Figure 33: PNX2000 Bass Redirection in Configuration 1

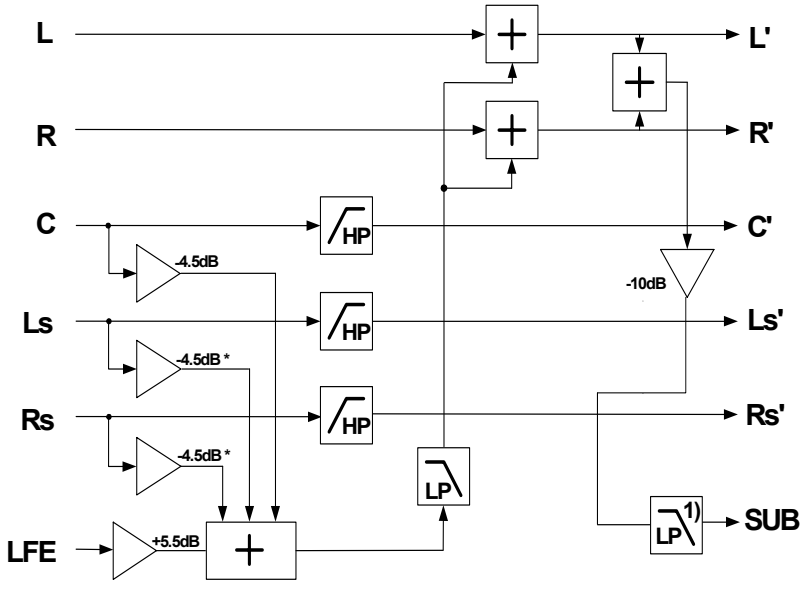
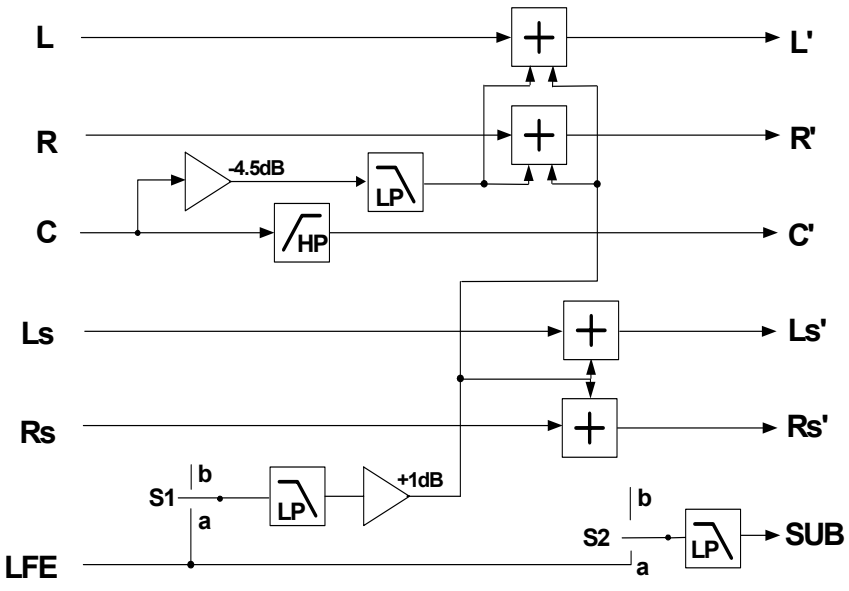


Figure 34: PNX2000 Bass Redirection in Configuration 2



Remark: Switch positions are: S1->b ; S2->a for external subwoofer; S1->a; S2->b if no subwoofer is present

1) LP filter can be switched flat, to allow the use of external subwoofer filtering.

*) low frequency content of Ls and Rs must not be redirected in DPL or DPLII mode; only in Dolby Digital mode

Figure 35: PNX2000 Bass Redirection in Configuration 3

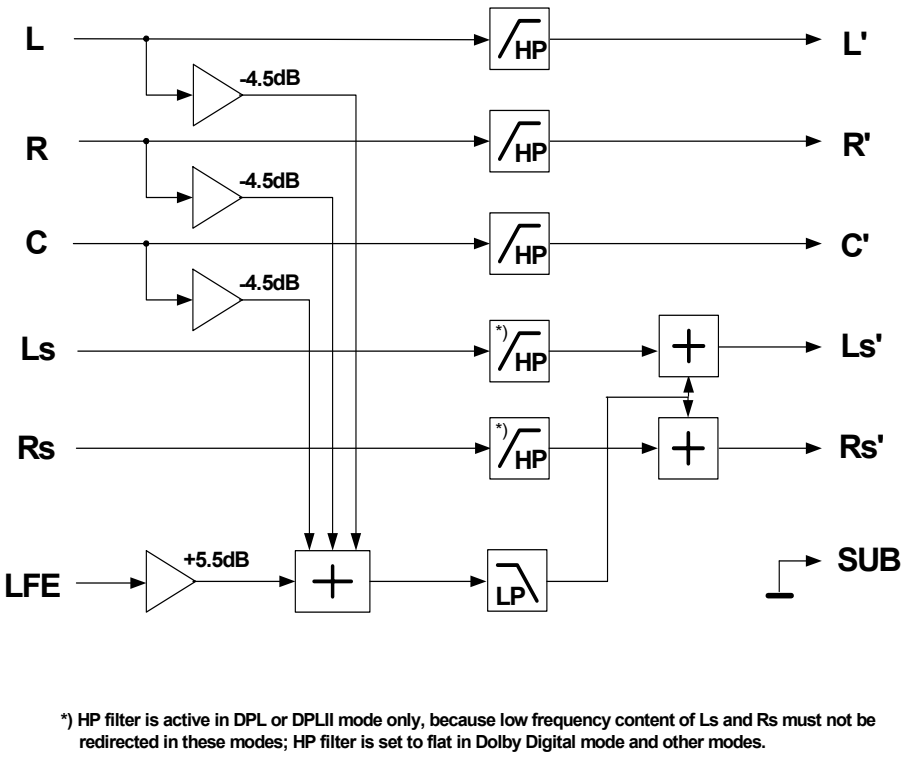


Figure 36: PNX2000 Bass Redirection in Configuration 4 (car application)

Figure 37: PNX2000 Bass Redirection switched off

7.9.3.14 Acoustical Compensation

For issues with acoustic compensation the PNX2000 provides two cascaded second order IIR filters in the front channels (Main L/R, and Center).

The filters can be used for all kind of filter purposes, e.g. notches. All kinds of different filter shapes can be implemented. It is only limited to the filter order and the resolution of the 12bit wide coefficients. The coefficients (a2, b2, c2 and d2) are in a range from +1 to -1 and the coefficients (a0, a1, b1, c0, c1 and d1) in a range from +2 to -2.

In Figure 38 the block diagram shows a one filter cascade as an example.

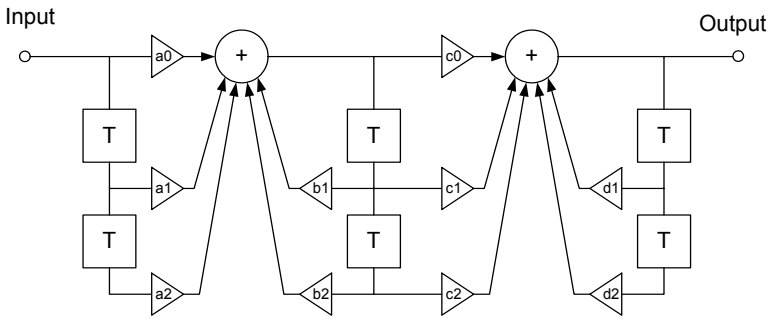


Figure 38: Block Diagram Acoustical Compensation Filter

The coefficients can be loaded via two control registers. One register for main left and right and one register for center channel. So it is not possible to implement two different filter shapes in main left and right. See Table 39.

7.9.3.15 Equalizers

The PNX2000 provides the choice between a fixed graphic equalizer and a parametric equalizer. The decision for graphic or parametric equalizer can be made independently for every band.

The fixed frequency bands used for the graphic equalizer can be easily controlled by gain settings, whereas the coefficients for the parametric equalizer must be downloaded. The two lower bands can be applied in the frequency range below 1kHz and the upper bands above 1kHz. A method to calculate the needed coefficients used for the parametric equalizer will be given later.

The implemented center frequencies of the graphic equalizer bands (second order filters) are 100, 300, 1000, 3000 and 8000Hz. The gain of each band is adjustable within the range of -12dB to +12dB in 1dB steps.

Measurements of the equalizer in graphic mode can be found on the next pages (see Figure 40 to Figure 43).

The equalizer can only be used alternatively to the 'bass / treble' section. The provided 'bypass / enable' switch allows to disable (bypass) or enable the equalizer.

Figure 39 shows the coefficient download procedure for the parametric equalizer:

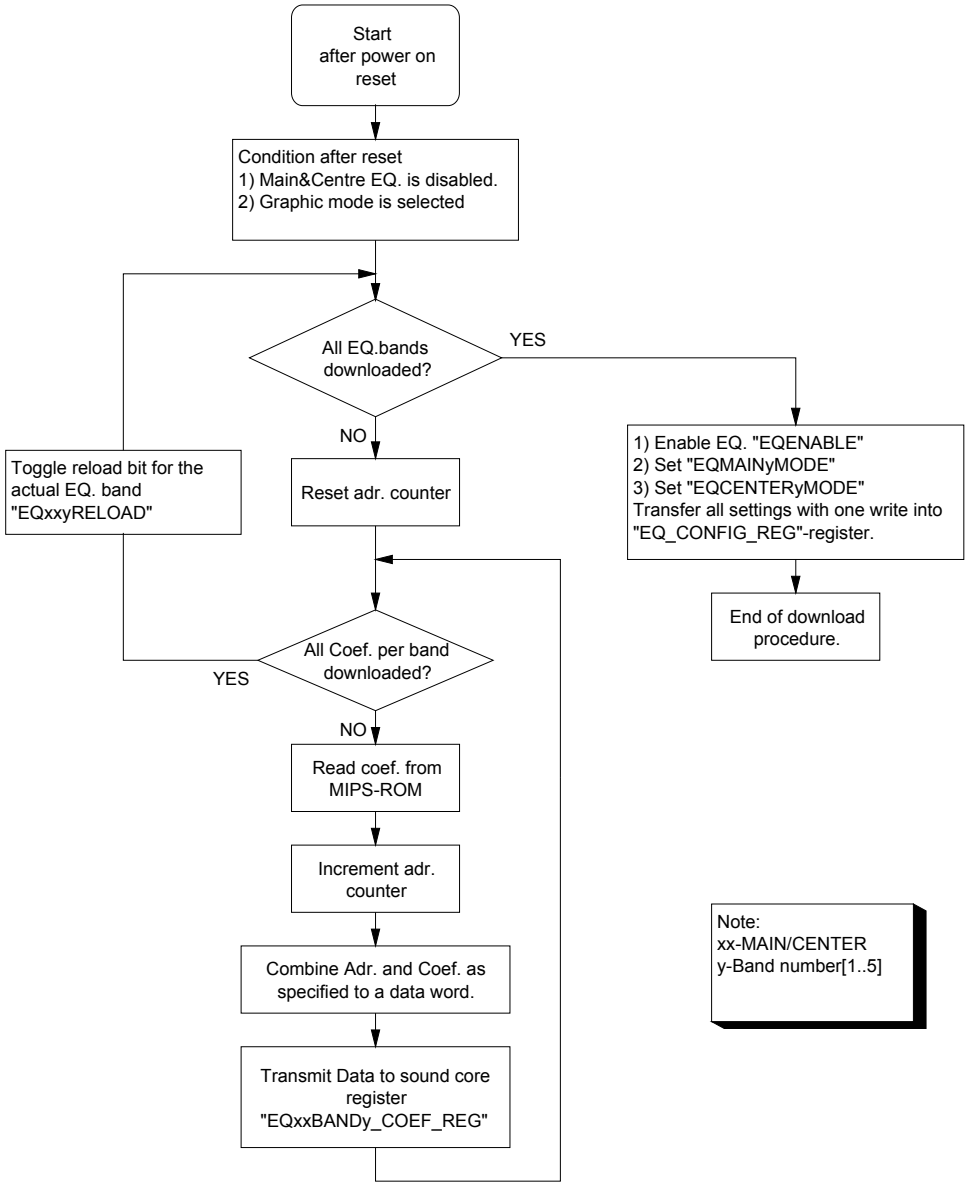


Figure 39: Download Procedure - Equalizer Coefficients after Power On Reset

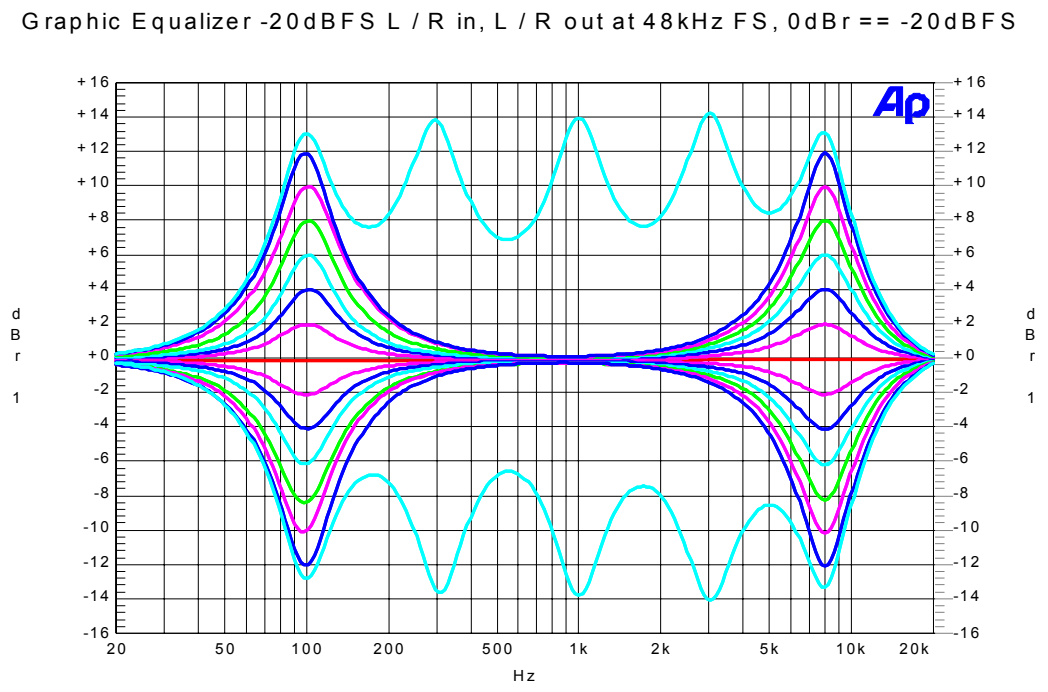


Figure 40: Graphic Equalizer: 100Hz and 8kHz Band (2dB Steps) and Envelope for Max./Min. Gain

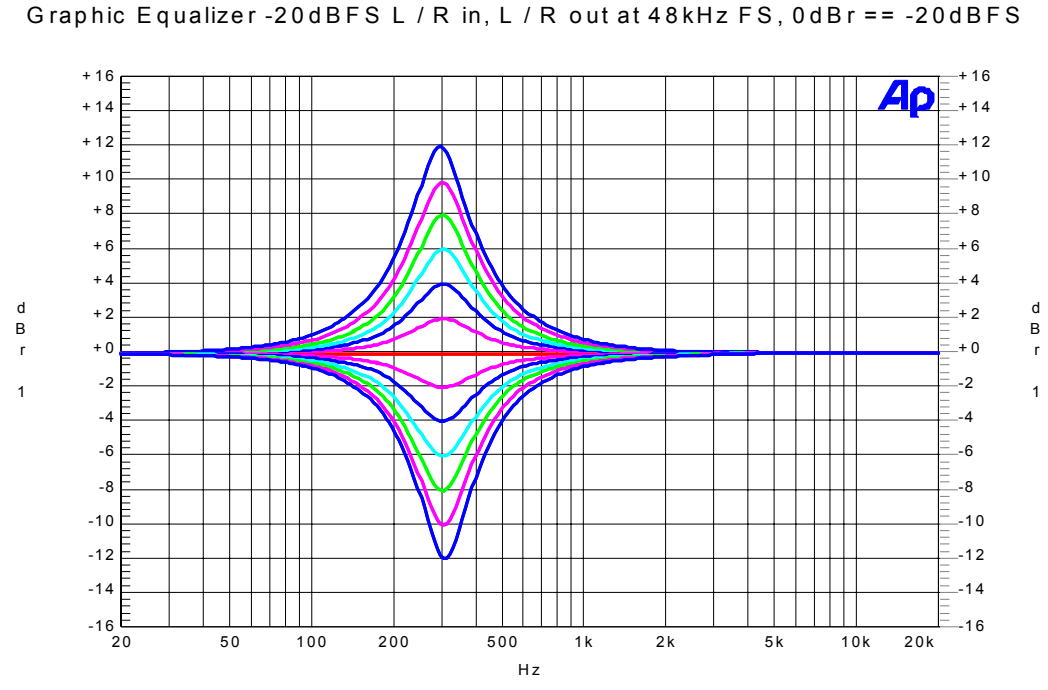


Figure 41: Graphic Equalizer: 300Hz Band (2dB Steps)

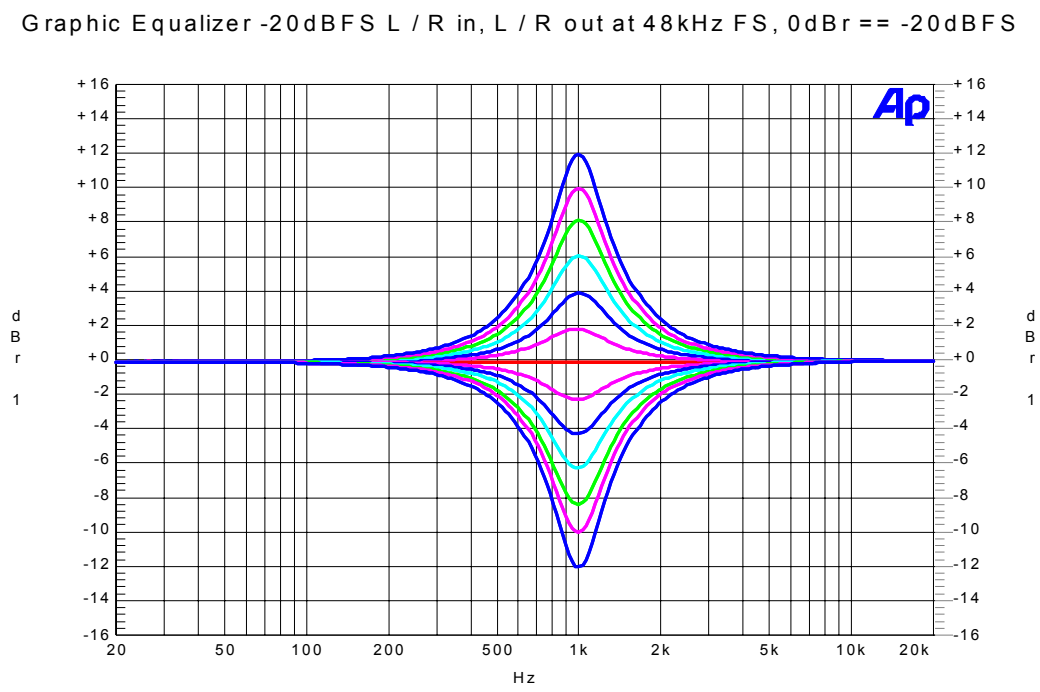


Figure 42: Graphic Equalizer: 1kHz Band (2dB Steps)

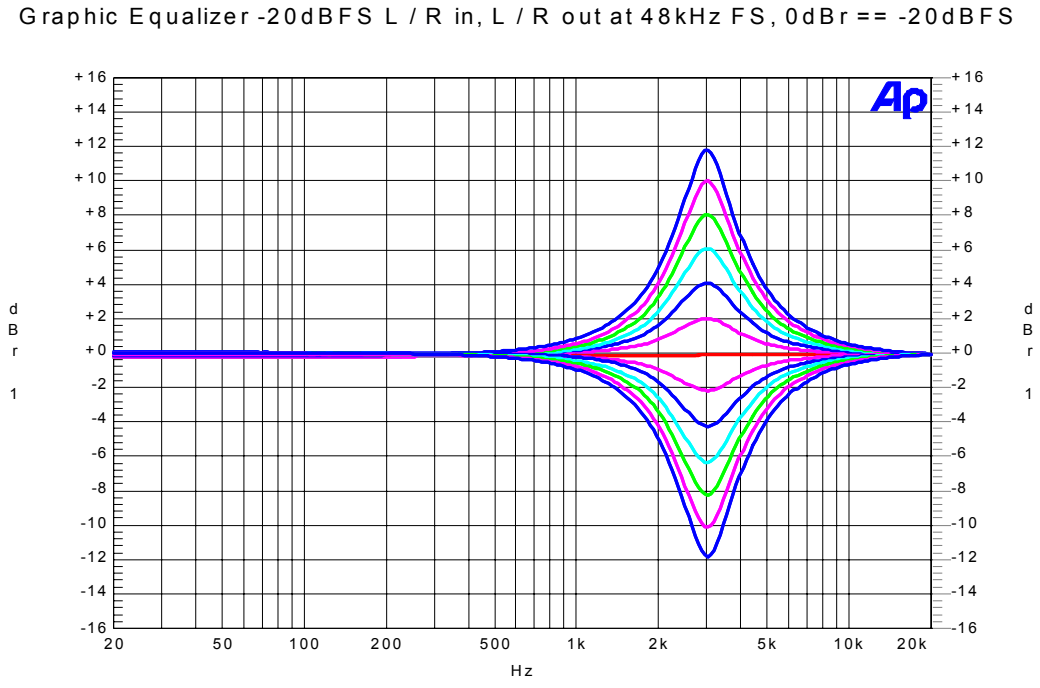


Figure 43: Graphic Equalizer: 3kHz Band (2dB Steps)

7.9.3.16 Volume and Trim

Stereo channels have separate gain elements for the left and right branch. In the MAIN channel the L,R Trims are used. Shift to the right is done by attenuation of the L Trim, shift to the left by attenuation of the R Trim.

For the AUX channels the same operation is performed by using Volume Left and Right. This needs to be programmed by the set manufacturer.

7.9.3.17 Beeper

The Beeper is a sine wave generator for frequencies from 200Hz to 12.5kHz at a sample rate of 32kHz and 48kHz. For a sample rate of 44.1kHz the coefficient set of 48kHz is used. This will end up with a 10% shift of the selectable frequencies. The level can be set between 0dBFS and -83dBFS. A Mute/Off step is available. The signal is mixed into the MAIN Left, Right, Center and the AUX1/HP channel.

If the Beeper is not used it needs to be set into the Mute/Off stage.

7.9.3.18 Mono Signal for Cancellation in the Voice Control IC

The L and R output signals of the Main channel are added before entering the Digital Output Crossbar giving (L+R)/2. This signal can be provided to the I2S output and passed to a voice control IC.

7.9.3.19 Audio Monitor

The audio monitor can monitor the level of the sum (A+B)/2, left or right signal of all input channels of the Digital Input Crossbar. Using the OUTCOPY feedback any input to the Output Crossbar is accessible. A special setting is the (A-B)/2 mode in the Digital Matrix that offers the possibility to identify a signal as mono or stereo.

The audio monitor provides three different modes:

- Last sample: in this mode the level of the last sample from the selected input is stored in the monitor register.
- Peak detection: in this mode the peak level after the last read command is stored in the monitor register.
- Quasi-peak detection: a quasi-peak detector with an attack time of 4ms and a decay time of 1s is applied.

If the monitor is used for mono / stereo detection the quasi-peak mode should be selected. The transfer rate via control bus is limited to about 15kHz.

7.9.3.20 Digital Output Crossbar

The Digital Output Crossbar provides 24 selectors 'one out of 20'. That means each of the outputs e.g. DAFO1 or I2S1L can be connected to each of the inputs e.g. MAIN L or C etc.

Using this the set manufacturer can freely assign outputs DAFO1 to DAFO8 to any of the L, R, SUB, C, Ls, Rs speaker or headphones. It allows the set manufacturer to avoid crossovers in the chassis layout and to place the audio power amplifiers in the optimal location. The headphone outputs should be connected to AUX1.

7.9.3.21 Clip Management

Great care has to be taken when applying gain to large input signals in order not to exceed the clipping level. For nominal modulation ratios and levels of the various input signals the level at the digital input crossbar is -15dBFS.

Internal clipping in the chain of bass, treble and equalizer stages with a total maximum gain of 27dB can be avoided by implementation of level shifts of -12dB in front of the bass treble stage and -6dB in front of the equalizer. Thus the headroom is still 6dB in front of master volume. If the loudness function is switched on another level shift of -18dB is done in front of it. The level shift (in total -18dB or -36dB) is compensated behind the master volume/trim stage. Clipping behind all gain elements can be avoided by limiting the maximum volume/trim gain and/or the bass, treble and equalizer gain.

To prevent clipping different strategies in handling the gain settings of bass, treble, equalizer and master volume/trim are possible. The set manufacturer can implement such strategies by his own micro controller programs. Or the integrated clip management can be used, which offers four different modes.

- Static Volume Mode" - In this mode the master volume setting is limited to a maximum gain of -30dB. The trim and the volume/balance in the Aux1-6 are not effected.
- Static Control Mode" - In this mode the bass, treble and equalizer setting is limited to a maximum of +8dB. The Volume plus Trim setting is limited to -1dB.
- Dynamic Control Mode" - In this mode the master volume and trim setting is limited to +3dB. If the master volume plus trim setting exceeds +3dB the bass and treble are reduced until the amplification is less then +3dB. Every 1dB more master volume plus trim results in 1dB less bass and treble.
- Dynamic Volume Mode" - In the dynamic volume mode the main left and right signal is measured. If the internal signal exceeds a limit of -3dBFS for a longer time, the master volume is reduced automatically until the measured signal is lower -3dBFS

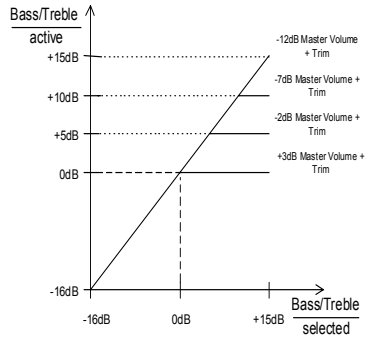
Clip Management	Master Volume	Bass	Treble	Loudness	EQb1& EQb2	EQb4& EQb5
Static Volume Mode	limited to -30dB	not effected	not effected	not effected	not effected	not effected
Static Control Mode	limited to -1dB	limited to +8dB	limited to +8dB	none attack level 0dB	limited to +8dB	limited to +8dB
Dynamic Control Mode	limited to +3dB			none attack level 0dB	not effected	not effected
Dynamic Volume Mode	Reduced / limited until the signal is smaller then -3dBFS	not effected	not effected	none attack level 0dB	not effected	not effected

Figure 44: Clip Management

7.9.3.22 Power On / Reset Specification

After a power on or reset condition the whole DSP-RAM is cleared. Afterwards all module defined memory cells are initialized and the Control-Registers are set to their default values. These values are defined as 'Default@INIT' within the control table.

7.9.4 Audio Feature Specification

In the following sections all sound features of the PNX2000 sound processor are described, with inputs / outputs, functionality, sample rate and the control bits. The row 'Control Mechanism' shows the control bits with the 'variable name' from the register map. The control bits are split into 'Set once during start up' and 'Change during operation' in the subsequent tables.

'Set once during start up' means that these bits are not under end-user control, they are only used in procedures written by the set manufacturer for the start-up configuration of a set.

'Change during operation' means that these bits are under end-user control, they are used in procedures for the operation of a set.

The row 'Sample Rate' shows the sample rates, which are provided by this module. If a sample rate is missing, e.g. 44.1kHz the sample rate depending coefficients of the best fitting sample rate is used - for this example 48kHz.

7.9.4.1 Automatic Volume Levelling (AVL)

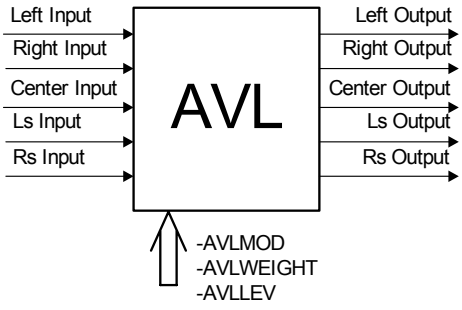
Functional Description	The AVL reduces the audio input signal to a settable maximum output signal. The processing can be done linear over the frequency range or weighted by a CCIR468 filter characteristic.
Block Diagram	
Application	The AVL is processed on the front channels (L,R,C,Ls,Rs). Depending on the bass redirection mode, also the subwoofer channel will be effected.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) The reference level ('AVLLEV') is settable in 2dB steps. A control range of 32dB is available. ('AVLLEV': '0000' -> -6dB, '0001' -> -8dB, ... '1111' -> -36dB 2) Switchable weighting filter ('AVLWEIGHT': '0' -> Off, '1' -> On) Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	3) Switchable decay time ('AVLMOD': '000'-> Off, '001'-> 20ms, '010'-> 2s, '011'-> 4s, '100'-> 8s '101'-> 16s '110'...'111' ->Reserved)
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 45: AVL (Automatic Volume Levelling)

7.9.4.2 Dolby® Pro Logic® II (DPLII)

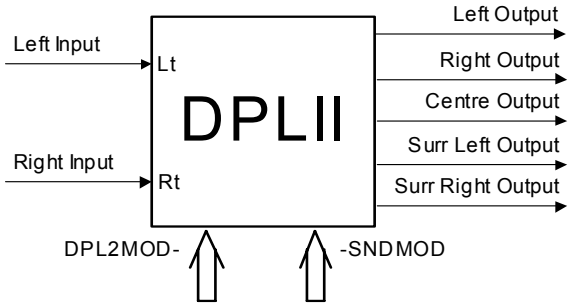
Functional Description	Dolby Licensee Information Manual: Dolby Pro Logic II'.
Block Diagram	
Application	Processed on Main channels (L/R). The Main, Centre, Left Surround and Right Surround channels are reproduced by the Dolby Pro Logic II decoder from an DPL encoded input signal. Note: 1) During the different operation modes digital silence is available on the not used outputs (e.g. in 3Stereo mode the surround channel is carrying digital silence) 2) The input and output levels are specified by Dolby Labs. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) The Dolby Mode Control field: 'SNDMOD': $3 -> Dolby Wide Centre. $4 -> Dolby 3Stereo. $5 -> Dolby Phantom Centre.
	2) The Dolby Decoder Mode Control field: 'DPL2MOD': $0 -> Movie mode $1 -> Matrix mode $2 -> Music mode $3 -> Pro Logic Emulation mode $4 -> Virtual mode
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 46: DPLII (Dolby® Pro Logic® II)

7.9.4.3 Virtual Dolby® Surround (VDS)

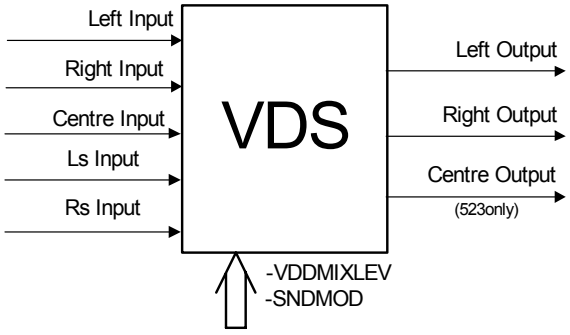
Feature Description	1) VDS(522) re-directs the centre and surround channel information to the main channels (front speakers). This feature is used in two speaker applications. 2) VDS(523) re-directs the surround channel information to the main channel. The centre channel information is reproduced by a separate centre speaker, therefore this feature is used in three speaker applications.
Block Diagram	
Application	The VDS needs a 5 channel input source (L,R,C,Ls,Rs). Note: 1) The DPLII decoder is set in Wide Centre mode. 2) in VDS522 the centre channel is muted. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Switchable via VDS Mode between VDS522 and VDS523 'SNDMOD': $6 ->VDS522 $7 ->VDS523
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	2) Selectable intensity in percentage 'VDDMIXLEV': '000'-> 0% (minimum effect) '001'-> 20% .... '101'-> 100% (maximum effect) '110'&'111' ->Reserved
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 47: VDS (Virtual Dolby® Surround)

7.9.4.4 Virtual Dolby® Digital (VDD)

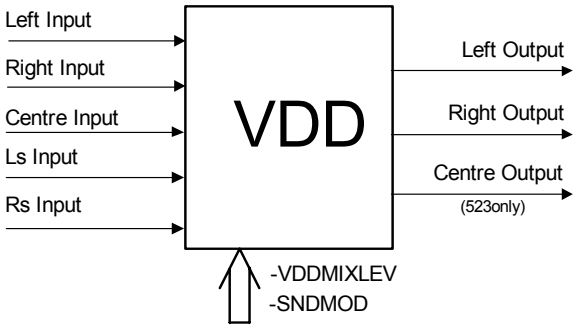
Feature Description	1) VDD(522) re-directs the centre and surround channel information to the main channels (front speakers). This feature is used in two speaker applications. 2) VDD(523) re-directs the surround channel information to the main channel. The centre channel information is reproduced by a separate centre speaker, therefore this feature is used in three speaker applications.
Block Diagram	
Application	The VDD needs a 5 channel input source (L,R,C,Ls,Rs). Note: 1) An external Dolba Digital Decoder must be used in combination of VDD. 2) in VDD522 the centre channel is muted. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Switchable via VDS Mode between VDD522 and VDD523 'SNDMOD': $8 ->VDD522 $9 ->VDD523
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	2) Selectable intensity in percentage 'VDDMIXLEV': '000'-> 0% (minimum effect) '001'-> 20% .... '101'-> 100% (maximum effect) '110'&'111' ->Reserved
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 48: VDD (Virtual Dolby® Digital)

7.9.4.5 Incredible Stereo (IStereo)

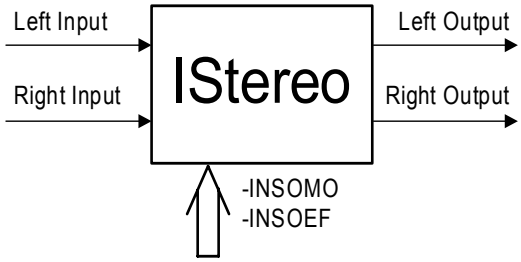
Feature Description	When the main signal (stereo signal) is processed by the IStereo module, the listener gets the impression that the signal is reproduced by 2 virtual speakers. It gives the impression that the main channel speakers are positioned at a greater distance (angle) than the actual speakers are. The stereo image is expanded.
Block Diagram	
Application	The IStereo module can be used for a main stereo signal. This is useful, if the distance of the speakers is low compared to the distance between speakers and listener. Note: 1) On/Off switching with an intensity of 100% will cause no signal level shift. 2) During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) The intensity can be changed in percentage 'INSOEF': '000'-> 0%, '001'-> 20%, … '101'-> 100%, '110' & '111' ->Reserved. Note: This bit field is used for both Incredible sound features (IMono and IStereo).
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	2) Turn effect On/Off 'INSOMO': '00' ->OFF, '01' ->IStereo On Note: This bit field is used for both Incredible sound features (IMono and IStereo).
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 49: IStereo (Incredible Stereo)

7.9.4.6 Incredible Mono (IMono)

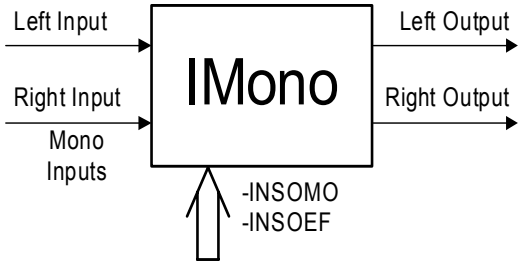
Feature Description	The Incredible Mono (IMONO) module reproduces a pseudo stereo signal (Left and Right) from a mono input signal. The mono input signal is split into frequency bands and afterwards re-directed to the left and right speaker.
Block Diagram	
Application	The IMono module is used for the main channel signal, if the received signal is mono and a pseudo stereo impression is preferred. Note: 1) On/Off switching with an intensity of 100% will cause no signal level shifts. 2) During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) The intensity can be changed in percentage 'INSOEF': '000'-> 0%, '001'-> 20%, … '101'-> 100%, '110' & '111' ->Reserved. Note: This bit field is used for both Incredible sound features (IMono and IStereo).
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Switchable On/Off 'INSOMO': '00' ->OFF, '10' ->IMono ON Note: This bit field is used for both Incredible sound features (IMono and IStereo).
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 50: IMono (Incredible Mono)

7.9.4.7 Dynamic Ultra Bass (DUB)

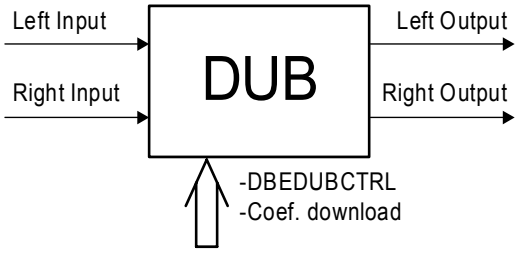
Feature Description	In principle the DUB algorithm shifts the bass signal band (30Hz-70Hz) to higher frequencies (70Hz-140Hz). The original bass spectra is removed from the signal. The filter characteristics must be optimised for the TV set. Only with this optimisation it is possible to reach the best or maximum effect. This feature makes it possible to reproduce deep bass image with smaller speakers.
Block Diagram	
Application	The DUB module is used in the main or subwoofer channel for application with smaller speakers, which are not able to reproduce the frequency range of 30Hz to 70Hz. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Use default setting or overwrite the coefficients via DUB coef. Download register. 2) Switch On/Off and select the active channel Main/Subwoofer.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Switchable On/Off and Main/Subwoofer channel (Combined control field for DBE and DUB) '000' -> DBE and DUB OFF, '001' -> DBE main channel ON '010' -> DUB main channel ON '011' -> DBE subwoofer channel ON '100' -> DUB subwoofer channel ON)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 51: DUB

7.9.4.8 Dynamic Bass Enhancement (DBE)

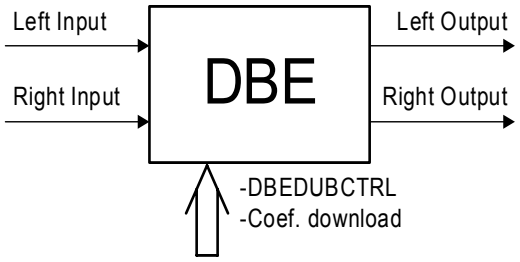
Feature Description	In principle the DBE algorithm boost the bass signal (60Hz) with a maximum gain of +12dB. This boost depends on the signal output level of the DBE module. The frequency (60Hz) and the maximum gain must be adjusted and optimised for every TV set.
Block Diagram	
Application	Is used in the main or subwoofer channel to generate a bass boost depending on the signal output level. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Use default setting or overwrite the coefficients via DBE coef. Download register. 2) Switch On/Off and select the active channel Main/Subwoofer.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Switchable On/Off and Main/Subwoofer channel (Combined control field for DBE and DUB) '000' -> DBE and DUB OFF, '001' -> DBE main channel ON '010' -> DUB main channel ON '011' -> DBE subwoofer channel ON '100' -> DUB subwoofer channel ON)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 52: DBE

7.9.4.9 Loudness

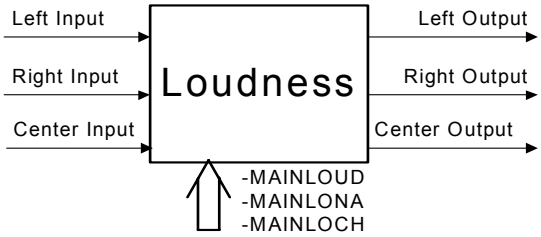
Feature Description	The Loudness function boosts the low and high frequency parts of the main signal. The low frequency parts with a maximum gain of +18dB and the high frequency parts with a maximum gain of +4,5dB. The gain for the low and high frequency parts depends on the volume level. This characteristic is used for signal correction if the output volume is low. This depends on the hearing characteristic of the human ear.
Block Diagram	
Application	Is built in the main and centre channel to correct the signal characteristic when the reproduced signal amplitude is low. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Settable none attack level in 3dB steps ('MAINLONA': '000' ->Volume -15dB, '001' ->-12dB, '010' ->-9dB, ... '111' ->+6dB). 2) Settable none attack frequency ('MAINLOCH': '00' ->Standard, '01' -> extra bass, '10', '11' -> Reserved)
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	3) Switchable On/Off ('MAINLOUD': '0' ->OFF, '1' ->ON)
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 53: Loudness

7.9.4.10 BBE®

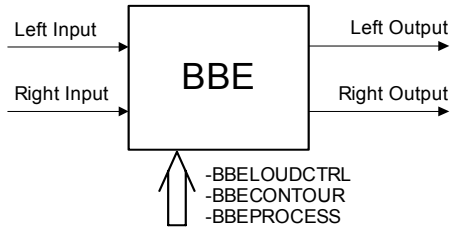
Block Diagram	
Application	The BBE function is built in the main channels to achieve a better signal and speech clearity. The settings of BBECONTOUR and BBEPROCESS have to be adjusted depending on the different loudspeakers used in the TV application. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Settable low frequency boost ('BBECONTOUR': '0000' -> 0dB, ... '1111' -> + 14dB). 2) Settable high frequency boost ('BBEPROCESS': '0000' -> 0dB, ... '1111' -> + 13dB)
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	3) Switchable On/Off ('BBELOUDCTRL': '00' ->OFF, '10' ->ON)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 54: BBE®

7.9.4.11 Bass and Treble

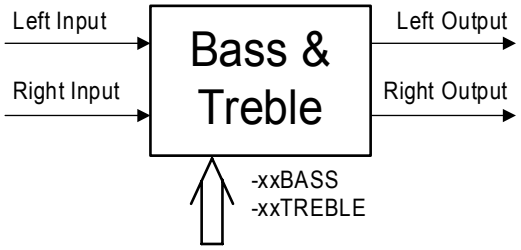
Feature Description	Independent low and high frequency cut and boost controlled by the user. The external resolution is defined in 1dB steps. The internal resolution 1/32dB steps are used to avoid DC plops. The maximum of change is 15.625dB/s.
Block Diagram	
Application	Implemented in Main, Center, Left and Rigth Surround and AUX1 (Headphone) channels.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) A five bit wide control field. The bit field is interpreted as a 2's complement value: xx -> 'MAIN', 'CENTRE', 'SURROUND', 'AUX1' ('xxBASS': '01111' ->+15dB, ... '00000' ->0dB, '11111' ->-1dB) .... '10001' ->-15dB) '10000' ->-16dB) ('xxTREBLE': '01111' ->+15dB, ... '00000' ->0dB, '11111' ->-1dB) .... '10001' ->-15dB) '10000' ->-16dB)
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 55: Bass & Treble

7.9.4.12 Bass Management

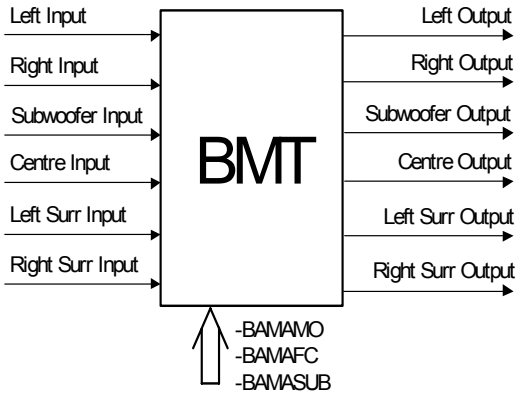
Feature Description	The task of the Bass Management is the re-direction of the bass signal. This is necessary if the loudspeakers are no full range speakers. The structure of the BMT module is defined by Dolby specifications: 1) 'Licensee Information Manual: Dolby Digital Consumer Decoder 2) Dolby Pro Logic II - 'Dolby Licensee Information Manual: Dolby Pro Logic II'.
Block Diagram	
Application	Main, Centre, Left surround and Right surround channels are fed through the BMT module to re-direct the bass information depending on the speaker set used. The subwoofer signal is generated by the BMT module. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Mode field ('BAMAMO': '00'-> Off, '01'-> Type1, '10'-> Type2, '11'-> Type3) 2) Control field for the cut-off frequency ('BAMAFC': '0000'->50Hz, '0001'->60Hz, ... '1010'->150Hz, '1011'->200Hz, ... '1111'->400Hz) 3) Subwoofer filter control ('BAMASUB': '0-> Off (flat), '1-> On)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 56: Bass Management

7.9.4.13 Delay Line Unit

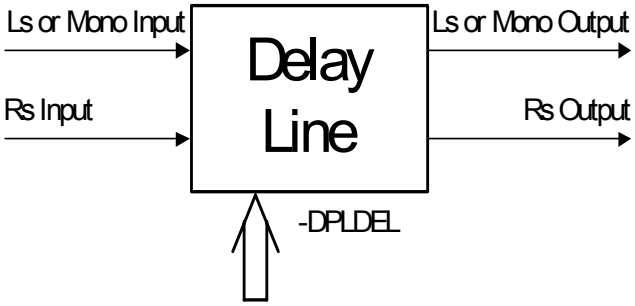
Feature Description	Delays a mono signal between 0ms and 50ms depending on the 'DPLDEL' value. This can be used for Hall or Matrix effect. Delays a stereo signal between 0ms and 25ms depending on the 'DPLDEL' value. This can be used for DPLII or Dolby Digital. Mono or stereo delay line depends on the selected sound mode.
Block Diagram	
Application	Is required by the Dolby specification for the surround channels. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Delay line length from 0ms up to 25ms for stereo or 0ms up to 50ms for mono. ('DPLDEL': Stereo / Mono '00000' ->OFF / OFF, '00001' ->1ms / 2ms, '00010' ->2ms / 4ms, ... '11001' ->25ms / 50ms '11010'...'11111' -> Reserved)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 57: Delay Line Unit

7.9.4.14 Pseudo Hall / Matrix

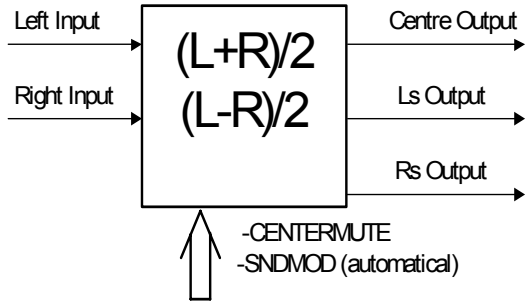
Feature Description	This module producess always mono signal (L+R)/2 for the center channel. For the surround channels in 'Pseudo Hall Mode' the mono signal is used or in 'Pseudo Matrix Mode' the difference signal (L-R)/2. The center output can be switched off independent from the mode (Hall or Matrix)
Block Diagram	
Application	Is built in the main channel to generate output signals for the center and surround channels, when no multi channel signal is available. Note: During On/Off switching a short 'pop' noise will be audible.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	This module can be switched between 'Pseudo Hall', 'Pseudo Matrix' or 'Off' via the Sound Application Mode Table. 1) Via "Sound Application Mode" $0 = Mono/Stereo (Off) $1 = Mono/Stereo (Pseudo Hall) $2 = Mono/Stereo (Pseudo Matrix) 2) 'CENTERMUTE': $0 = Center On $1 = Center Off
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 58: Pseudo Hall / Matrix

7.9.4.15 Master Volume & Trim

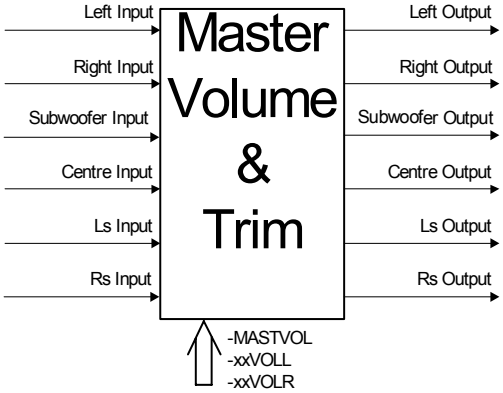
Feature Description	A three-stage gain element (Master Volume/Trim control) with a dynamic range from +24dB down to -83dB is implemented. Master Volume can be set in steps of 1/8dB. Trim can be set in steps of 1dB - internal 0.125dB steps are processed to avoid DC plops. The maximum speed of change is 62,5dB/s. Therefore a complete transition from mute to +24dB will take 1.7sec. This gain element is controlled via two control registers - Master Volume and Trim register. The values of these both registers are added, clipped to the max. range from +24dB down to -83dB and afterwards transferred to the three-stage gain element per channel.
Block Diagram	
Application	Master volume and trim is built in the Main, Subwoofer, Center, Left and Rigth Surround channels.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) An eleven bit wide Master Volume control field ('MASTVOL': '192dec' ->+24dB, '191dec' ->23.875dB, ... '0dec' ->0dB, ... '-671dec' ->-83.875dB, '-672dec' ->Mute) 2) An eight bit wide Trim control value for every channel (2's complement) xx -> MAIN, SW, C, S ('xxVOLL', 'xxVOLR', 'xxVOL': '24dec' ->+24dB, '23dec' ->+23dB, ... '0dec' ->0dB, ... '-84dec' ->Mute)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 59: Master Volume & Trim

7.9.4.16 Volume and Balance for Auxiliary Channels

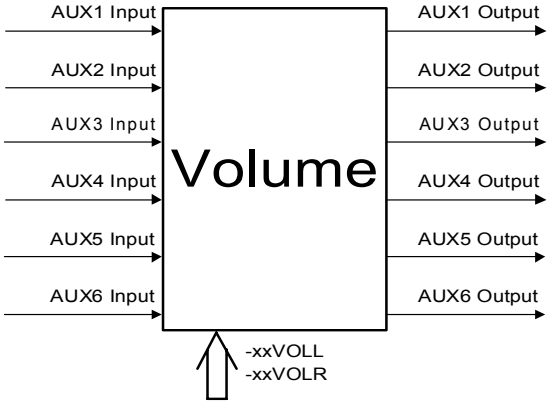
Feature Description	A three-stage gain element (Volume control) with a dynamic range from +24dB down to -83dB is implemented. Volume left and right are settable in steps of 1dB - internal 0.125db steps are processed to avoid DC plops. The maximum of change is 62,5dB/s. Balance can be done by independent control of volume left and volume right (by microcontroller program).
Block Diagram	
Application	Volume is built in the AUX-Channels.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) An eight bit wide Volume contol value for every channel (2's complement) xx -> AUX1, AUX2, AUX3, AUX4, AUX5, AUX6 ('xxVOLL', 'xxVOLR': '24dec' ->+24dB, '23dec' ->+23dB, ... '0dec' ->0dB, ... '-84dec' ->Mute)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 60: Volume and Balance for Auxiliary Channels

7.9.4.17 Level Adjust

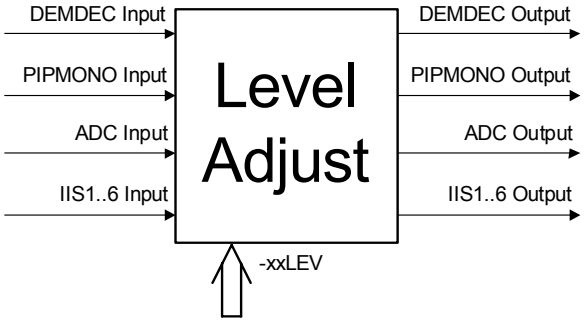
Feature Description	A single stage gain element with a maximum gain of +15dB and a cut-down of -15dB. The mute position is defined at -16.
Block Diaram	
Application	Is built in all signal sources - DemDec, PIPMONO, IIS1..6 and ADC.
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) A five bit wide control field. The value is interpreted as a 2's complement value. xx ->'DEC', 'MONO', 'SAP', 'PIPMONO', 'ADCL/A', ADCR/B' and 'IIS' ('xxLEV': '01111' ->+15dB, ... '00000' ->0dB, ... '10001' ->-15dB, '10000' ->Mute)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 61: Level Adjust

7.9.4.18 Main Equalizer

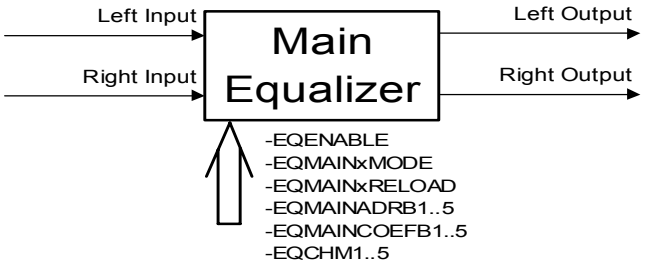
Feature Description	A five band parametric stereo or graphic stereo equalizer with pre-defined bands.
Block Diagram	
Application	Built in the Main channels. Can be used in two different modes: 1) Parametric equalizer with two bands(1&2) useable in the whole frequency range and three bands(3,4&5) useable in a range from 500Hz to maximum. 2) Graphic equalizer with pre-defined bands (100Hz, 300Hz, 1kHz, 3kHz, 8kHz).
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Switchable On/Off (EQENABLE': '0' -> Off, '1' ->On) 2) Setable as parametric or graphic equalizer per band[x] ('EQMAINxMODE': '0' ->Graphic Mode, '1' ->Parametric Mode)
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	3) In graphic mode a five bit wide control field is defined for every band. The field is interpreted as a 2's complement value. Values larger then +12dB and lower then -12dB are clipped to +/-12dB. ('EQCHM1': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 100Hz Band1 ('EQCHM2': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 300Hz Band2 ('EQCHM3': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 1kHz Band3 ('EQCHM4': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 3kHz Band4 ('EQCHM5': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 8kHz Band5 4) In parametric mode one control register is defined for every band. The higher 12 bits are interpreted as the coefficient and the lowest three bits are interpreted as the address of the coefficient. Coefficient: ('EQMAINCOEFB1': '12 bit 2's complement') Band1 ('EQMAINCOEFB2': '12 bit 2's complement') Band2 ('EQMAINCOEFB3': '12 bit 2's complement') Band3 ('EQMAINCOEFB4': '12 bit 2's complement') Band4 ('EQMAINCOEFB5': '12 bit 2's complement') Band5 Address: ('EQMAINADRB1': '5 bit coefficient address') Band1 ('EQMAINADRB2': '5 bit coefficient address') Band2 ('EQMAINADRB3': '5 bit coefficient address') Band3 ('EQMAINADRB4': '5 bit coefficient address') Band4 ('EQMAINADRB5': '5 bit coefficient address') Band5 5) In parametric mode a copy bit is defined to enable the new coefficients per band[x]. This enable process is started by the transition from '0' to '1'. Afterwards it should be set to zero again by the micro controller. ('EQMAINxRELOAD': '0' -> '1' =>activate new coefficients)
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 62: Main Equalizer

7.9.4.19 Central Equalizer

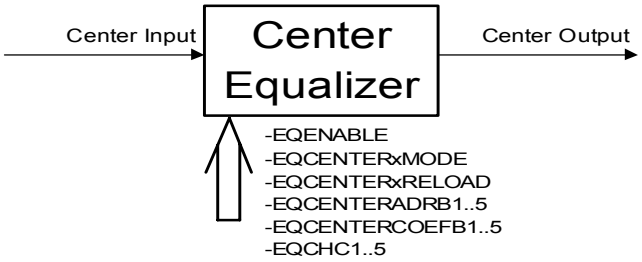
Feature Description	A five band parametric mono or graphic mono equalizer with pre-defined bands.
Block Diagram	
Application	Built in the Center channel. Can be used in two different modes: 1) Parametric equalizer with two bands(1&2) useable in the whole frequency range and three bands(3,4&5) useable in a range from 500Hz to maximum. 2) Graphic equalizer with pre-defined bands (100Hz, 300Hz, 1kHz, 3kHz, 8kHz).
Control Mechanism [Set during start up]	1) Switchable On/Off ('EQENABLE': '0' -> Off, '1' ->On) 2) Setable as parametric or graphic equalizer per band[x] ('EQCENTERxMODE': '0' ->Graphic Mode, '1' ->Parametric Mode)
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	3) In graphic mode a five bit wide control field is defined for every band. The field is interpreted as a 2's complement value. Values larger then +12dB and lower then -12dB are clipped to +/-12dB. ('EQCHC1': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 100Hz Band1 ('EQCHC2': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 300Hz Band2 ('EQCHC3': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 1kHz Band3 ('EQCHC4': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 3kHz Band4 ('EQCHC5': '01100' ->+12dB, '00000' ->0dB, '10100' ->-12dB) for 8kHz Band5 4) In parametric mode one control register is defined for every band. The higher 12 bits are interpreted as the coefficient and the lowest three bits are interpreted as the address of the coefficient. Coefficient: ('EQCENTERCOEFB1': '12 bit 2's complement') Band1 ('EQCENTERCOEFB2': '12 bit 2's complement') Band2 ('EQCENTERCOEFB3': '12 bit 2's complement') Band3 ('EQCENTERCOEFB4': '12 bit 2's complement') Band4 ('EQCENTERCOEFB5': '12 bit 2's complement') Band5 Address: ('EQCENTERADRB1': '5 bit coefficient address') Band1 ('EQCENTERADRB2': '5 bit coefficient address') Band2 ('EQCENTERADRB3': '5 bit coefficient address') Band3 ('EQCENTERADRB4': '5 bit coefficient address') Band4 ('EQCENTERADRB5': '5 bit coefficient address') Band5 5) In parametric mode a copy bit is defined to enable the new coefficients per band[x]. This enable process is started by the transition from '0' to '1'. Afterwards it should be set to zero again. ('EQCENTERxRELOAD': '0' -> '1' =>activate new coefficients)
Sample Rate	32kHz and 48kHz

Figure 63: Center Equalizer

7.9.4.20 Soft Mute

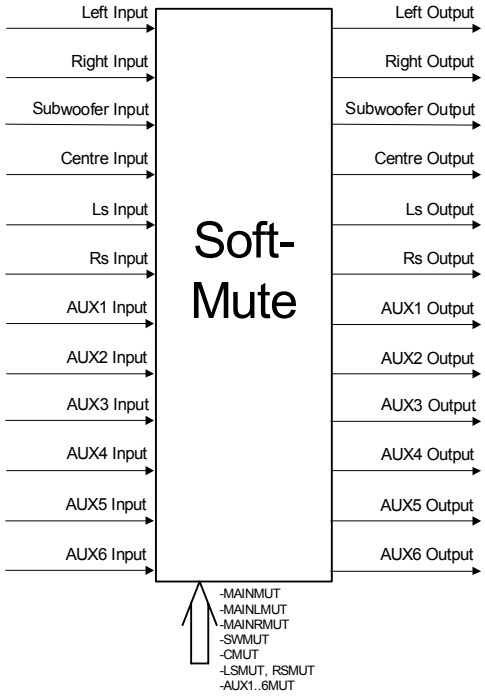
Feature Description	A single stage gain element with a 32 step wide cosine curve from full scale to zero. After starting a mute or un-mute every 2 ms the gain is increased or decreased, therefore a whole mute or un-mute takes 64ms.
Block Diagram	
Application	Built in Main, Center, Subwoofer, Left and Rigth Surround and Aux1..6 channels. All softmutes can be controlled independently.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Switchable On/Off ('MAINMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ***1)*** ('MAINLMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ***1)*** ('MAINRMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ***1)*** ('SWMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('CMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('LSMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('RSMUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('AUX1MUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('AUX2MUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('AUX3MUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('AUX4MUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('AUX5MUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ('AUX6MUT': '0' ->Off - signal available, '1' ->On - no signal) ***1)*** MAINMUT, MAINLMUT and MAINRMUT are combined in the following way: 'MAINMUTE' 'MAINLMUTE' 'MAINRMUTE' 'Left-channel' 'Right-channel' Off Off Off un-muted un-muted Off Off On un-muted muted Off On Off muted un-muted Off On On muted muted On don't care don't care muted muted
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 64: Soft Mute

7.9.4.21 Digital Input Crossbar

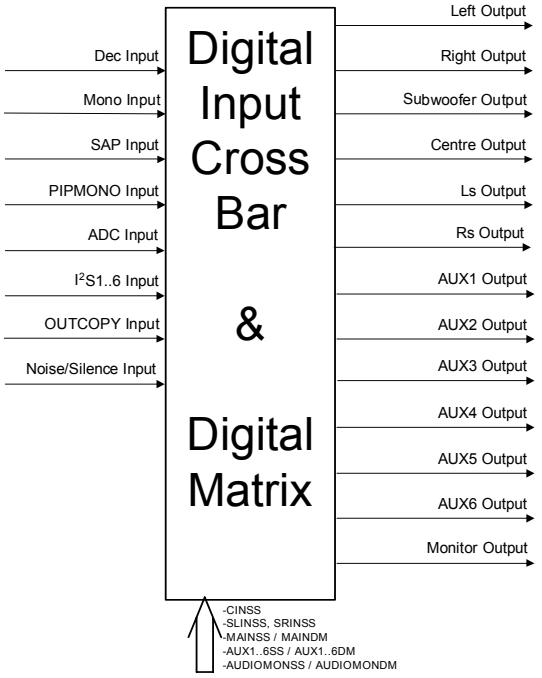
Feature Description	A general cross bar where all output channels can be connected to every input source. For main, Aux1..6 and monitor channels. Also a digital matrix is implemented. The digital matrix provides a special mode - the (A-B)/2 mode. This mode should be used for the audio monitor, to have an identification help for the decision if the incoming signal is mono or stereo. This could be used, if the signal is coming from an external source, which doesn't provide an identification.
Block Diagram	
Application	Built in Main, Center, Left and Rigth Surround, Aux1..6 and Monitor channel.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Digital Cross Bar xx -> 'CIN', 'SLIN', 'SRIN', 'MAIN', 'AUX1..6', 'AUDIOMON' ('xxSS': '00000' ->Dec) ('xxSS': '00001' ->Mono) ('xxSS': '00010' ->SAP) ('xxSS': '00011' ->PIPMONO) ('xxSS': '00100' ->ADC) ('xxSS': '00101' ->Noise/Silence) ('xxSS': '00110' ->OUTCOPY) ('xxSS': '00111'...'11111' ->IIS1..6) 2) Digital Matrix yy -> 'MAIN', 'AUX1..6', 'AUDIOMON' ('yyDM': '000' ->AB [Stereo]) ('yyDM': '001' ->(A+B)/2 [Mono]) ('yyDM': '010' ->AA [Lang.A]) ('yyDM': '011' ->BB [Lang.B]) ('yyDM': '100' ->BA [Swap]) ('yyDM': '101' ->(A-B)/2) ('yyDM': '110' ->Auto Lang.A) ('yyDM': '111' ->Auto Lang.B)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 65: Digital Input Crossbar

7.9.4.22 Digital Output Crossbar

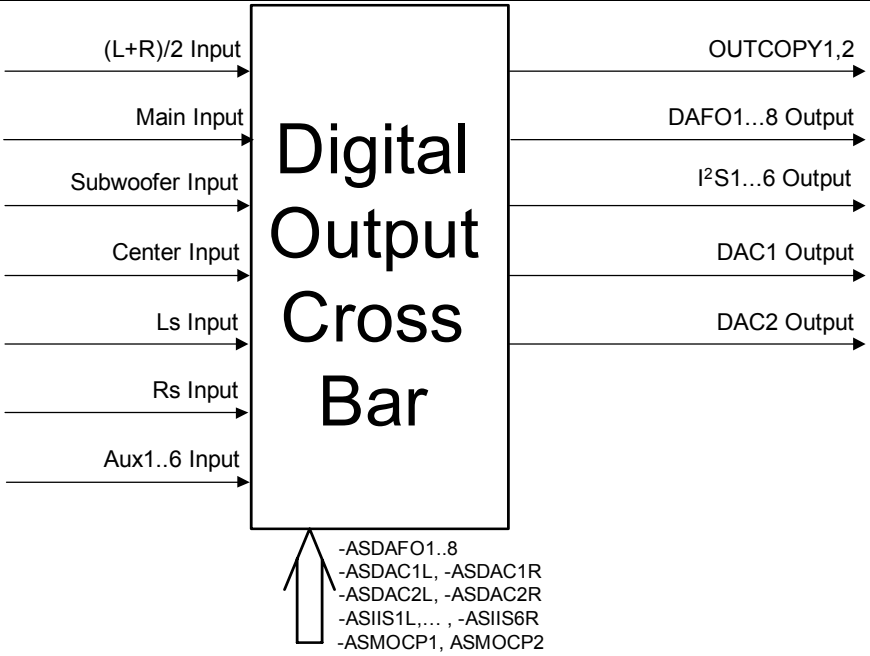
Feature Description	A general cross bar were all output channels can be connected to every input source.
Block Diagram	
Application	Built in for all DAFO1..8, OUTCOPY, I2S1..6 and DAC1..2 channels.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Digital Output Cross Bar xx -> 'DAFO1..8', 'DAC1L', 'DAC1R', 'DAC2L', 'DAC2R', 'IIS1..6L', 'IIS1..6R', 'ASMOCP1', 'ASMOCP2' ('xx': '00000' ->MAIN/L) ('xx': '00001' ->MAIN/R) ('xx': '00010' ->SW) ('xx': '00011' ->C) ('xx': '00100' ->Ls) ('xx': '00101' ->Rs) ('xx': '00110' ->AUX1L) ('xx': '00111' ->AUX1R) ('xx': '01000' ->AUX2L) ('xx': '01001' ->AUX2R) ('xx': '01010' ->AUX3L) ('xx': '01011' ->AUX3R) ('xx': '01100' ->AUX4L) ('xx': '01101' ->AUX4R) ('xx': '01110' ->AUX5L) ('xx': '01111' ->AUX5R) ('xx': '10000' ->AUX6L) ('xx': '10001' ->AUX6R) ('xx': '10010' ->Main Sum)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 44.1kHz and 48kHz

Figure 66: Digital Output Crossbar

7.9.4.23 Audio Monitor

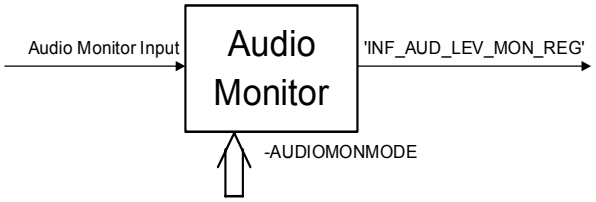
Feature Description	The audio monitor is able to monitor the sum (A+B)/2, left or right signal of all input channels of the digital cross bar. Via the "OUTCOPY" loop also every output channel of the output cross bar can be monitored. A special setting is the (A-B)/2 mode in the digital matrix. With this setting it is possible to identify a signal as a mono or stereo signal. If the audio monitor is used as a mono/stereo detector the quasi peak detection mode should be selected. The audio monitor provides three different modes: 1) Last sample, in this mode the last signal sample from the selected input is read out from the monitor register. 2) Peak detection, in this mode the highest signal sample since the last read command is read from the monitor register. 3) Quasi peak detection, in this mode a quasi peak detector is combined with the monitor. The quasi peak detector has an attack time of 4ms and a decay time of 1sec.
Block Diagram	
Application	The audio monitor is located in a seperat monitor channel, the output of the measurement can be read from the register 'INF_AUD_LEV_MON_REG' as a 24 bit wide 2's complement value.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Monitor mode ('AUDIOMONMODE': '00' ->Last sample, '01' ->Peak detection, '10' ->Quasi peak detection '11' ->Reserved)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 48kHz

Figure 67: Audio Monitor

7.9.4.24 Beeper

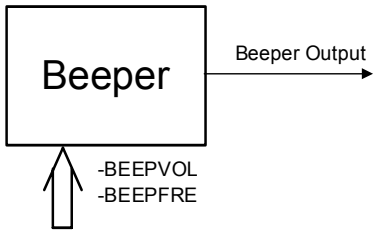
Feature Description	Sine wave generator with adjustable amplitude in 1dB steps. The frequency is selectable in a range from 200Hz up to 12.5kHz.
Block Diagram	
Application	The beeper signal is added to the Main, Center and AUX1 channel.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) An eight bit wide control field for the volume setting. The value is interpreted as a 2's complement number. ('BEEPVOL': '0dec' ->0dBFS, ... '-83dec' ->-83dBFS, '-84dec' ->Mute/Off) 2) For the selectable frequencies a three bit wide control field is defined. ('BEEPFRE': '000' ->200Hz, '001' ->400Hz, '010' ->1000 Hz, '011' ->2000 Hz, '100' ->3000 Hz, '101' ->5000 Hz, '110' ->8000 Hz, '111' ->12.5kHz)
Sample Rate	32kHz, 48kHz

Figure 68: Beeper

7.9.4.25 Noise Generator

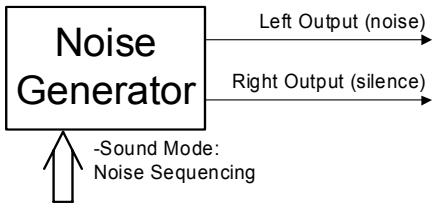
Feature Description	The Generator is producing bandpass weighted noise, with a center frequency of 500Hz (Fs=32kHz). This generator is defined by Dolby Labs. It is used for the level trim for Dolby.
Block Diagram	
Application	It is built in as a independent signal source, which can be selected by every processing channel via the digital cross bar. The trim procedure has to be provided by the micro controller sw.
Control Mechanism [Change during operation]	1) Controlled by Sound Mode
Sample Rate	32kHz

Figure 69: Noise Generator

Appendix 2 DUB/DBE

Table 36: DUB - Coefficient

Address	Content	Remark
1-20	LP filter coef. 1-20	
21-40	BP filter coef. 1-20	Filter Coefficient for 32kHz
41-60	HP filter coef. 1-10	
61-80	LP filter coef. 1-20	
81-120	BP filter coef. 1-20	Filter Coefficient for 44.1kHz
121-130	HP filter coef. 1-10	
131-151	LP filter coef. 1-20	
151-170	BP filter coef. 1-20	Filter Coefficient for 48kHz
171-180	HP filter coef. 1-10	
181	AUB2_Headroom	read only
182	AUB2_KMLsb	
183	AUB2_KMMsb	
184	AUB2_KPLsb	
185	AUB2_KPMsb	
186	AUB2_ClippingLevel	
187	AUB2_AGCGainLsp	
188	AUB2_AGCGainMsp	
189-255	Reserved	

Table 37: DBE - Coefficient

Addr.	Content	Remark	Addr.	Content	Remark
1	GainDecrement Low	Control Variables	33	Boost filter coef. 1	Filter Coefficient for 44.1kHz
2	GainDecrement High		34	Boost filter coef. 2	
3	GainIncrement Low		35	Boost filter coef. 3	
4	GainIncrement High		36	Boost filter coef. 4	
5	Headroom (read only)		37	Boost filter coef. 5	
6	Boost Gain		38	Boost filter coef. 6	

Table 37: DBE - Coefficient *...Continued*

Addr.	Content	Remark	Addr.	Content	Remark
7	HP filter coef. 1	Filter Coefficient for 48kHz	39	HP filter coef. 1	Filter Coefficient for 32kHz
8	HP filter coef. 2		40	HP filter coef. 2	
9	HP filter coef. 3		41	HP filter coef. 3	
10	HP filter coef. 4		42	HP filter coef. 4	
11	HP filter coef. 5		43	HP filter coef. 5	
12	HP filter coef. 6		44	HP filter coef. 6	
13	HP filter coef. 7		45	HP filter coef. 7	
14	HP filter coef. 8		46	HP filter coef. 8	
15	HP filter coef. 9		47	HP filter coef. 9	
16	HP filter coef. 10		48	HP filter coef. 10	
17	Boost filter coef. 1		49	Boost filter coef. 1	
18	Boost filter coef. 2		50	Boost filter coef. 2	
19	Boost filter coef. 3		51	Boost filter coef. 3	
20	Boost filter coef. 4		52	Boost filter coef. 4	
21	Boost filter coef. 5		53	Boost filter coef. 5	
22	Boost filter coef. 6		54	Boost filter coef. 6	
23	HP filter coef. 1	Filter Coefficient for 44.1kHz	55	DBE2_Front_Gain	Read Only
24	HP filter coef. 2		56	DBE2_AGCGainMax	Control Variable
25	HP filter coef. 3		57	Reserved	Not Used
26	HP filter coef. 4		58	Reserved	
27	HP filter coef. 5		59	Reserved	
28	HP filter coef. 6		60	Reserved	
29	HP filter coef. 7		61	Reserved	
30	HP filter coef. 8		62	Reserved	
31	HP filter coef. 9		63	Reserved	
32	HP filter coef. 10		64	Reserved	

Table 38: DBE - Coefficients for Maximum Boost

DBE2_AGC GainMax (dB)	Hex value
14	2CF
13	26C
12	21A
11	1D2
10	190
9	156
8	122
7	0F4
6	0CA
5	0A5

Table 38: DBE - Coefficients for Maximum Boost *...Continued*

DBE2_AGC GainMax (dB)	Hex value
4	084
3	067
2	04C
1	034

Table 39: Acoustical Compensation – Coefficient

Addr.	Content	Remark
1	ACC_Main_a0	Main Channel (left & right)
2	ACC_Main_a1	
3	ACC_Main_b1	
4	ACC_Main_b2	
5	ACC_Main_a2	
6	ACC_Main_c2	
7	ACC_Main_c1	
8	ACC_Main_c0	
9	ACC_Main_d1	
10	ACC_Main_d2	
11-255	Reserved	
1	ACC_Center_a2	Center Channel
2	ACC_Center_a1	
3	ACC_Center_b1	
4	ACC_Center_b2	
5	ACC_Center_a2	
6	ACC_Center_c2	
7	ACC_Center_c1	
8	ACC_Center_c0	
9	ACC_Center_d1	
10	ACC_Center_d2	
11-255	Reserved	

Chapter 8: CGU

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

8.1 Clock Generation Unit (CGU)

In the PNX2000 design, a central Clock Generation Unit (CGU) is used to generate all the required clock signals. This approach satisfies the clock requirements of the video, sound, and control subsystems, while minimizing the number of PLLs required. The primary clock input is selectable between an external clock input and an on-chip crystal oscillator. PLLs and frequency dividers are used to generate the various clock signals required by the PNX2000 device.

8.2 PNX2000 Clock Requirements

Table 1 to Table 4 show the clock signals used in the PNX2000, grouped by major subsystem.

Table 1: GTU Clock

Module	Clock name	Frequency MHz	Source	Comments
CGU	xin	27/13.5	external	crystal clock to CGU
	ll_clk			line locked external input
	i2s_sck_sys			clock external I^2S bit clock
PI2DTL	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
GPR	gpr_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	general purpose register clock equal to pi_clk
PMRU	gpr_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	pi_rst_hrd_n clock
	dcu_clk_pmru	13.5	syspll	dcu_resetn clock
	master_clk0_pmru	54	syspll	vid_resetn clock
	i2d_clk_pmru	54	syspll	i2d_resetn clock
	itu_input_clk_pmru	32.4/64.8/ll_pll/ll_clk	syspll/llpll/ext	itu_resetn clock
	pi_clk_pmru	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	snd_clk_por_n clock
	snd_clk27_pmru	27	syspll	snd_reset27 clock
	snd_clk135_pmru	13.5	syspll	snd_reset135 clock
	snd_clk675_pmru	6.75	syspll	snd_reset675 clock

Table 2: Control Subsystem Clock

Module	Clock name	Frequency MHz	Source	Comments
BS2CON	tck	12-15	JTAG port	boundary scan logic clock
PLU	tcb_tck	12-15	JTAG port	TCB and TCB scan register clock
VCB	gpr_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	general purpose register clock equal to pi_clk
	clk_testshell	12-15	JTAG port	CTAG isolation logic clock

Table 2: Control Subsystem Clock

Module	Clock name	Frequency MHz	Source	Comments
I^2C	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
BCU	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
PNX2000	DCLK	all frequencies	all sources	PNX2000 debug output clock
	MPIFCLK	27/13.5	syspll	output clock to PNX3000
	ADAC_CLK	256*fs/128*fs	wspll	output clock to external DACs

Table 3: Video Subsystem Clock

Module	Clock name	Frequency MHz	Source	Comments
I^2D	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
	i2d_clk	54	syspll	module clock
	clk_testshell	12-15	JTAG port	CTAG isolation logic clock
	tst_rail_clk	all frequencies	all sources	test rail and bypass clock
	tcb_tck	12-15	JTAG port	TCB clock
Viddec	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
	rsclk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	redundancy register clock only runs when pi_reset_n is active
	dto_clk	54/27	syspll	viddec system clock
	master_clk0	54	syspll	gated clock based on gen_llclk_y
	gated_llclk0	54	syspll	1FH: gated_llclk0 divided by 2
	gated_llclk1	54/27	syspll	2fh:gated clock based on gen_llclk_y
	gated_llclk2	27/13.5	syspll	gated clock based on gen_llclk_uv
	tst_rail_clk	all frequencies	all sources	CTAG isolation, test rail and bypass clock
	tcb_tck	12-15	JTAG port	TCB's clock
DCU	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
	dcu_clk	13.5	syspll	data capture unit acquisition clock
	dcu_vid_clk	54	syspll	clock used to clock data in from I^2D
	tst_rail_clk	all frequencies	all sources	CTAG isolation, test rail and bypass clock
	tcb_tck	12-15	JTAG port	TCB clock
itu656	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
	itu_input_clk	32.4/64.8/ll_pll/ll_clk	syspll/llpll/ext	CTAG isolation, test rail and bypass clock
	itu_viddec_clk	54	syspll	TCB clock
	tst_rail_clk	all frequencies	all sources	
	tcb_tck	12-15	JTAG port	
mbftime-base	vcr_clk	27	syspll	
	master_clk0	54	syspll	

Table 4: Sound Subsystem Clock

Module	Clock name	Frequency MHz	Source	Comments
Sound System	pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	PI_bus clock
	rsclk	27/13.5/6.75	xtaldiv	redundancy register clock only runs when pi_reset_n is active.
	snd_clk27	27	syspll	DEMDEC receive data clock
	snd_clk135	13.5	syspll	DEMDEC module
	snd_clk675	6.75	syspll	DECI module
	snd_clk128fsa	4.096-6.144	wspll	sample frequency = 32/44.1/48 KHz
	snd_clk128fsd	4.096-6.144	wspll	inverted snd_clk128fsa
	snd_clkep	100-170	turbopll	clock to Sound Core
	i2s_out_sck_mch	32fs/64fs	wspll	multi channel bitclock (32fs/64fs)
	snd_sck_sys	64fs	wspll	system bit clock
	clk_testshell	12-15	JTAG port	CTAG isolation logic clock
	tst_rail_clk	all frequencies	all sources	CTAG isolation, test rail and bypass clock
	tcb_tck	12-15	TAG port	TCB clock

8.3 Crystal Oscillator Specification

The PNX2000 controls an oscillator which can be used with an external crystal or in bypass mode with external clock signal, as shown in Figure 1.

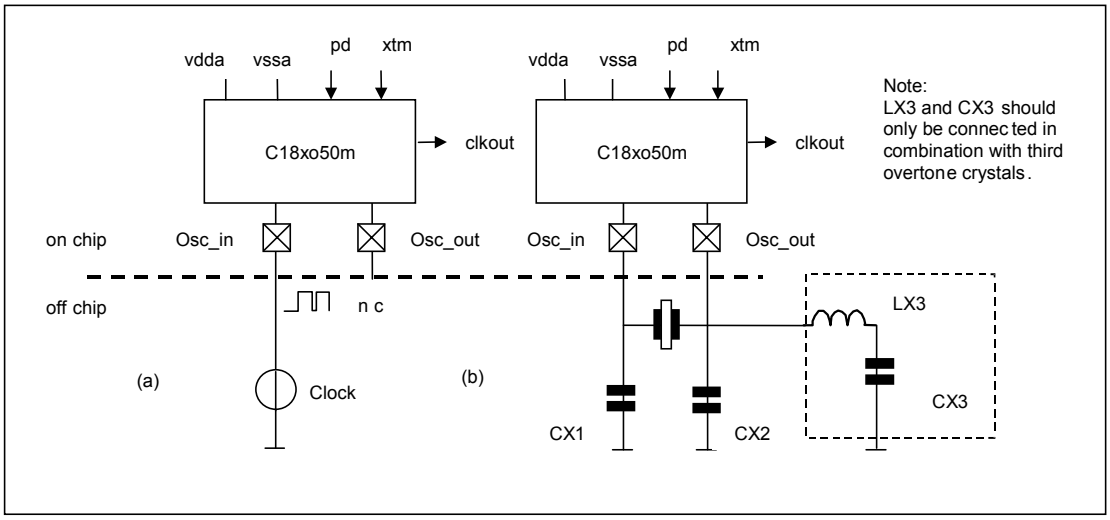


Figure 1: Application Diagram: (a) Slave/Test Mode, (b) Oscillation Mode

The supported crystal/external clock frequencies are 27 MHz and 13.5 Mhz. The crystal oscillator is followed by a selectable divide-by-two frequency divider, giving three available clock frequencies as shown in Table 5.

Table 5: Primary Clock Settings

Clock/Crystal Input	Divider Setting	Clock Frequency
27 MHz	x/1	27 MHz
27 MHz	x/2	13.5 MHz
13.5 MHz	x/1	13.5 MHz
13.5 MHz	x/2	6.75 MHz

Table 6 lists the clock signals that are generated directly from the crystal oscillator.

Table 6: Clocks Derived from Crystal

Output clock	Frequency MHz	Comment
gpr_clk	27/13.5/6.75	only used inside GTU
pi_clk	27/13.5/6.75	
pi_clk_pmru	27/13.5/6.75	only used inside GTU.
rsclk	27/13.5/6.75	

The crystal oscillator output is also used as the clock input to the WSPLL, TURBOPLL, and optionally, the SYSPLL and LLPLL.

8.4 Phase Locked Loops

The PNX2000 contains four programmable PLLs. The output frequency of each PLL is controlled by three programmable frequency dividers, as shown in Figure 2.

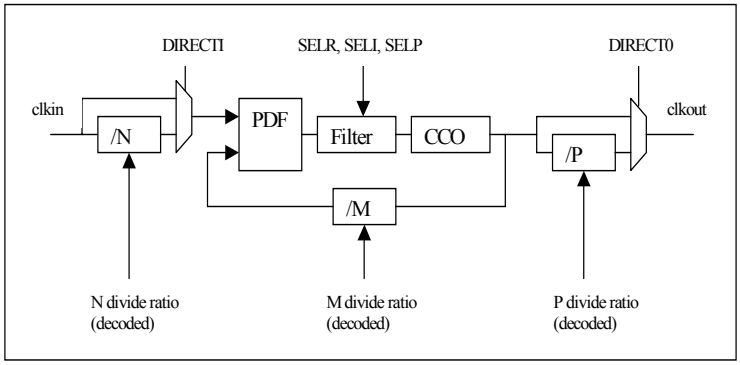


Figure 2: Simplified Schematic of PLL

The input divider (N), output divider (P), and feedback divider (M) have programmable divide ratios. The N and P dividers can optionally be bypassed.

The operation of the PLL is controlled by software-programmable configuration bits in the general-purpose registers. The register locations and recommended settings for each PLL are given in “Clock Configuration and Status Registers”.

Table 7 gives the function of the PLL control signals.

Remark: The divider ratio signals are decoded values, not the direct binary representation of the desired divide ratio.

Table 7: PLL Control Signals

Signal	Description
NDEC	decoded divide ratio for the input frequency divider
PDEC	decoded divide ratio for the output frequency divider
MDEC	decoded divide ratio for the feedback frequency divider
DIRECTI	bypass the input frequency divider
DIRECTO	bypass the output frequency divider
PD	Power down the PLL. The PD bit must be toggled to make changes to the NDEC, PDEC, MDEC, DIRECTI, and DIRECTO bits take effect.
SELR, SELI, SELP	select filter bandwidth

Table 8 presents a summary of the PLLs used in the PNX2000 design.

Table 8: Summary of PLLs

PLL	Description
TURBOPLL	Generates clock for Sound Core DSPs. Frequency 100 – 170 MHz.
WSPLL	Generates the BCLK and WS signals for the sound core I^2S interface master mode. In slave mode, the external BCLK signal is used.
LLPLL	Can optionally be used to generate the ITU output clock.
SYSPLL	Generates a 162 MHz clock, which is synchronously divided down to produce most of the clock signals used in the PNX2000.

The configuration of the PLLs and frequency dividers is illustrated in Figure 3.

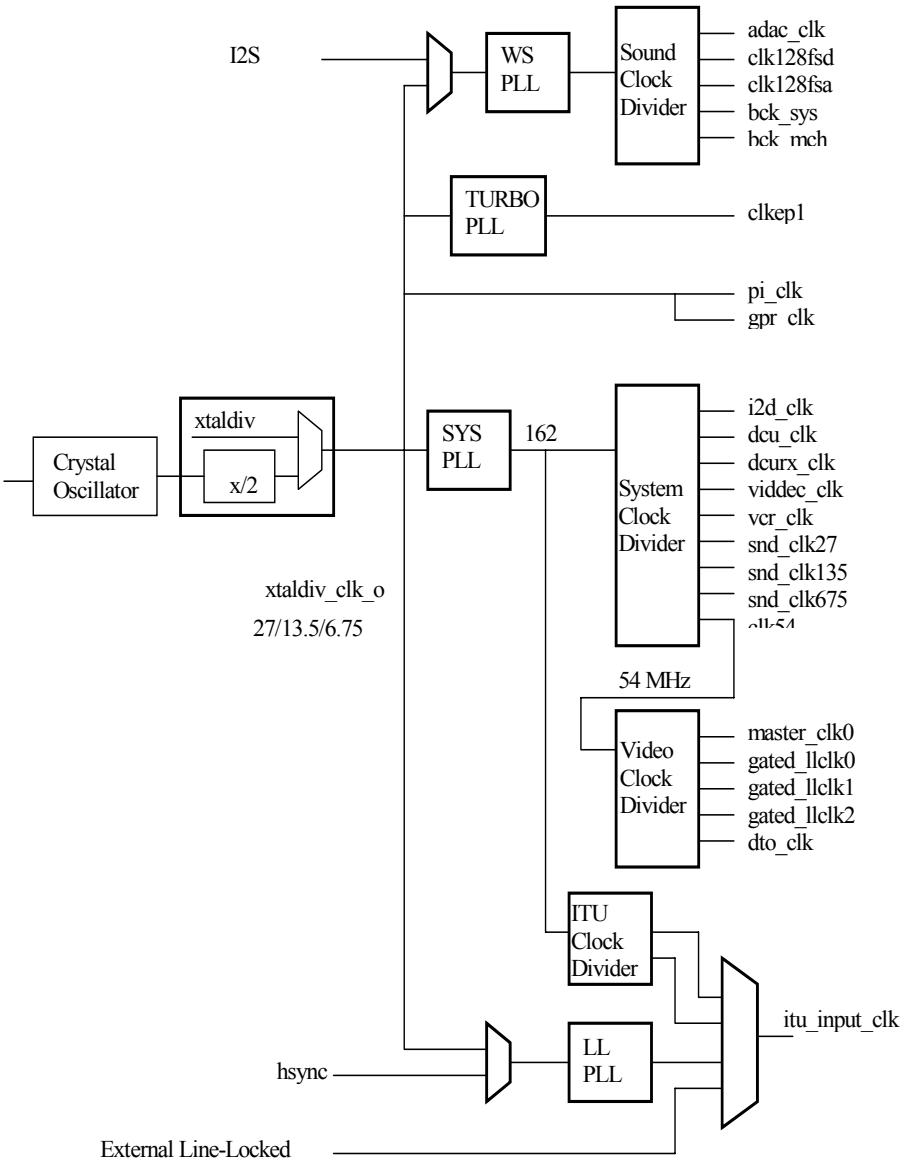


Figure 3: Block Diagram - PNX2000 CGU

8.4.1 Power Saving Mode

The PNX2000 device can be put into a low-power standby mode by disabling all PLLs. In standby mode, the general purpose registers (located in the GTU) are still accessible via the PI bus and I^2C interface. Thus, the PNX2000 can be switched from standby mode to full-power mode by deasserting the PLL power-down bits in the control registers.

8.5 ITU Output Clock Generation

The CGU provides several methods of generating the clock for the ITU656 digital video output interface. The ITU output clock generation is illustrated in the following figure.

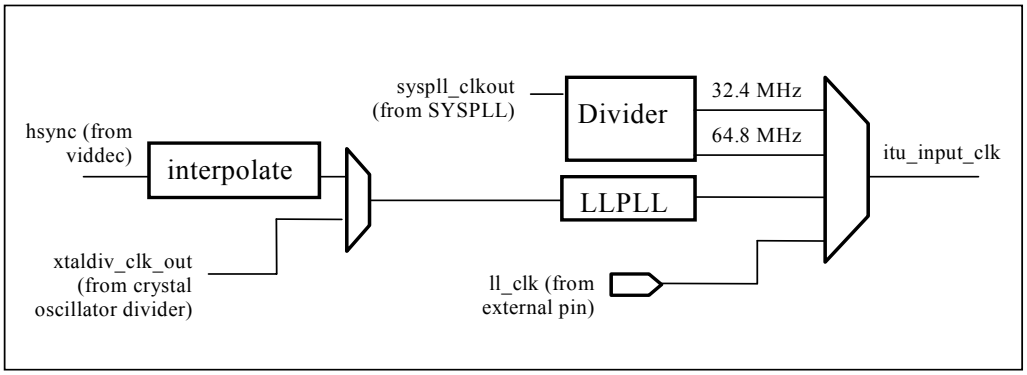


Figure 4: Schematic of ITU Output Clock Generation

In normal operation, the ITU clock will be selected from the 32.4 MHz clock and the 64.8 MHz clock signals from the SYSPLL. Alternatively, an externally generated line-locked clock or the clock generated by the LLPLL may be used. The LLPLL is an experimental feature and not recommended for normal use.

8.6 I^2S Word Select (WS) Clock Generation

The WS PLL and associated logic are used to generate the clock signals for the I^2S audio interface. The I^2S interface can operate in either master mode (I^2S clocks generated internally) or slave mode (locked to external I^2S clock). The I^2S Clock generator (WS PLL and associated clock dividers) supports the following features:

- Automatic sample rate detection
- Automatic bitclock ratio detection
- Automatic fallback to master mode if external I^2S clock signal is absent

The following table summarizes the available WS clock generation modes.

Table 9: WS Clock Generation Modes

Mode	Slave Type	Control Bit Settings	Source for Divider Settings
Master		MASTERENABLE=1 AUTOMASTERENABLE=0 SLAVETYPE=don't care	GP_WSPLLCONTROL GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL
Slave	Microcontroller	MASTERENABLE=0 AUTOMASTERENABLE=0 SLAVETYPE=0	GP_WSSLAVEPLLCONTROL GP_WSPLLSLAVESEL
	Auto	MASTERENABLE=0 AUTOMASTERENABLE=0 SLAVETYPE=1	Internally Generated

Table 9: WS Clock Generation Modes *...Continued*

Mode	Slave Type	Control Bit Settings	Source for Divider Settings
Auto-Master/Slave (external clock present)	Microcontroller	MASTERENABLE=0 AUTOMASTERENABLE=1 SLAVETYPE=0	GP_WSSLAVEPLLCONTROL GP_WSPLLSLAVESEL
	Auto	MASTERENABLE=0 AUTOMASTERENABLE=1 SLAVETYPE=1	Internally Generated
Auto-Master/Master (external clock absent)		MASTERENABLE=0 AUTOMASTERENABLE=1 SLAVETYPE=don't care	GP_WSPLLCONTROL GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL

When in Master mode, the PNX2000 drives the I^2S clock signals, which are generated by the WS PLL, using the crystal oscillator as the reference clock.

In slave mode, the I^2S clock signals are generated externally, and act as inputs to the PNX2000. The I^2S clock generator automatically detects the incoming WS frequency, which may be 32kHz, 44.1kHz, 48kHz, or out of range. The bit clock to WS clock ratio can be detected automatically (Slave Type = Auto) or programmed via configuration registers (Slave Type = Microcontroller). The WS PLL divider settings depend on both the WS frequency and the bit clock frequency, because the bit clock is used as the WS PLL reference clock. The PLL divider settings are generated internally when the slave type is configured to "Auto", and taken from the control registers when the slave type is configured to "Microcontroller".

In Auto-Master mode, the I^2S clock generator will behave as in slave mode, using the slave-mode register settings, as long as an external WS clock is present (and matches one of the known frequencies). If the external WS clock disappears, the I^2S clock generator will switch to master-mode behavior, using the master-mode register settings.

The recommended configuration for normal operation within the Jaguar system is Auto-Master mode, with slave type = "Auto".

The following tables show the WS PLL configuration and status registers.

Table 10: GP_WSSLAVEPLLCONTROL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..17	RSD_31To17	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
16..7	GP_WSNDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x2 n: Pre-divider value for Slave Mode
6..0	GP_WSPDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x17 p: Post divider value for Slave Mode

Table 11: GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..30	RSD_31To30	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
29..26	GP_SELR	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Pins to select bandwidth for Master mode
25..22	GP_SELI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x2 Pins to select bandwidth for Master mode
21..17	GP_SELP	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1f Pins to select bandwidth for Master mode
16..0	GP_MDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x4022 m: Feedback divider for Master mode

Table 12: GP_WSPLLSLAVESEL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..30	RSD_31To30	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
29..26	GP_WSSELR	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Pins to select bandwidth for Slave mode
25..22	GP_WSSELI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x4 Pins to select bandwidth for Slave mode
21..17	GP_WSSELP	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1f Pins to select bandwidth for Slave mode
16..0	GP_WSMDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x2d m: Feedback divider for Slave mode

Table 13: GP_WSPLLCONTROL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..27	RSD_31To27	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
26	GP_TESTMODEENABLE	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Enables a testmode for testing the WS PLL with low frequencies
25	GP_SLAVETYPE	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 '0' Slave uC mode. '1' Slave auto mode (ignored if master mode is active)
24	GP_AUTOMASTERENABLE	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 1 enables automatic change between master/slave mode (Auto-Master mode)
23	GP_MASTERENABLE	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1 1: Master mode; 0: slave mode
22	GP_BYPASS256FS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Bypass incoming 256fs SYSCLKIN (0: PLL; 1: Bypass)
21	GP_BYPASS512FS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Bypass incoming 512fs SYSCLKIN (0: PLL; 1: Bypass)

Table 13: GP_WSPLLCONTROL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
20..11	GP_NDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x2d n: Pre-divider for Master mode
10..4	GP_PDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x17 p: Post divider for Master mode
3	GP_WSPLLDIRECTI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Direct to pin, 1: bypass of pre-divider
2	GP_WSPLLDIRECTO	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Direc to pin, 1: bypass of post-divider
1	GP_WSPLLBYPASS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Bypass pin
0	GP_WSPLLPD	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1 pd pin

Table 14: GP_WSPLLSTATUS

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..5	RSD_31To5	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
4	GP_WSPLLFR	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 fr (freeRunning) status (active high)
3	GP_WSPLLLOCK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 lock status (active high)
2	GP_WSPLLNACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 nack pre divide acknowledge status (actiev high)
1	GP_WSPLLMACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 mack feedback divide acknowledge status (active high)
0	GP_WSPLLPACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 pack post divide acknowledge status (active high)

Table 15: GP_WS_FSCOUNTER

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..9	RSD_31To9	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
8..0	GP_WSPLLFSCOUNT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 Counter to determine WSPLL divider ratio in slave mode

Table 16: GP_WS_SAMPLERATE

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..2	RSD_31To2	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
1..0	GP_SAMPLERATE	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 Detected WS sample rate 00: 32kHz, 01: 44.1kHz, 10:48kHz, 11: out of range

8.7 Clock Selection for 1fh and 2fh Video Modes

The PNX2000 video datapath is designed to support both 1fh and 2fh video modes. Several clock signals must be selected based on the video mode, as shown in the following table. These settings are controlled by registers in the GTU.

Table 17: Clock Selection

Clock Signal	1fh setting	2fh setting
ITU clock	32.4 MHz	64.8 MHz
DTO clock	27 MHz	54 MHz
PNX3000 clock	13.5 MHz	27 MHz

8.8 Clock Configuration and Status Registers

The following registers (located in the GPR section of the GTU) control the operation of the CGU.

Table 18: GP_CLKEN

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..9	RSD_31To9	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
8	GP_MPIFCLKEN	Read/Write	Controls PNX3000 Clock. Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
7	GP_DCUCLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
6	GP_DCURXCLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
5	GP_ITU_CLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
4	GP_I2DCLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
3	GP_VIDDECCLK54_1EN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
2	GP_DECI6P75CLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
1	GP_DEMDEC13P5CLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on
0	GP_DEMDEC27CLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Clock enable '0' off, '1' on

Table 19: GP_CLKSEL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..7	RSD_31To7	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
6	GP_LLPLLREFCLKSEL	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 0':hsync, '1':xtal
5	GP_ADACCLKSEL	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 0':128*fs, '1':256*fs

Table 19: GP_CLKSEL ...Continued

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
4	GP_MPIFCLKSEL	Read/Write	Controls PNX3000 Clock. Reset value: 0x0 '0':13.5MHz, '1':27MHz
3..2	GP_ITUCLKSEL	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 00: 64.8 MHz, 01: 32.4 MHz, 10: Line locked PLL, 11 line locked external input
1	GP_DTOFREQSEL_VID	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 '0': 27 MHz, '1' 54 MHz
0	GP_XTALCLKSEL	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 0' x_in, '1' x_in/2

Table 20: GP_DISTRICONTROL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..8	RSD_31To8	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
7	GP_SOFTRESETEPICS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Active high soft reset (min. two 6.75 MHz periods)
6	GP_SOFTRESET128FS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Active high soft reset 128fs (min. two 6.75 MHz periods)
5	GP_ADAC_CLKEN	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0
4	GP_HALF_MCH	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 HALF_MCH (0: Full MCH speed; 1: Half MCH speed)
3	GP_INV128FSA	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 '1' Inverts CLK128FSA
2	GP_ENBCLK	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 '1' Enable for local bitclock
1	GP_EN128FS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 '1' Enable for CLK128FSD & CLK128FSA
0	GP_ENEP	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 '1' Enable for CLKEP2

Table 21: GP_TURBOPLLSEL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..30	RSD_31To30	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
29..26	GP_TURBOSELR	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Pins to select bandwidth
25..22	GP_TURBOSELI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0xd Pins to select bandwidth
21..17	GP_TURBOSELP	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1f Pins to select bandwidth
16..0	GP_TURBOMDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1006 m: Feedback divider

Table 22: GP_TURBOPLLCONTROL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..21	RSD_31To21	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
20..11	GP_TURBONDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x2 n: Pre-divider
10..4	GP_TURBOPDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x42 p: Post divider

Table 22: GP_TURBOPLLCONTROL ...Continued

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
3	GP_TURBOPLLDIRECTI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 TURBOPLL directi pin. 1: bypass of pre-divider
2	GP_TURBOPLLDIRECTO	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 TURBOPLL directo pin. 1: bypass of post-divider
1	GP_TURBOPLLBYPASS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 TURBOPLL bypass pin
0	GP_TURBOPLLPD	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1 TURBOPLL pd pin

Table 23: GP_TURBOPLLSTATUS

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..5	RSD_31To5	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
4	GP_TUBOPLLFR	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 fr (freeRunning) status (active high)
3	GP_TURBOPLLLOCK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 lock status (active high)
2	GP_TURBOPLLNACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 nack pre divide acknowledge status (active high)
1	GP_TURBOPLLMACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 mack feedback divide acknowledge status (active high)
0	GP_TURBOPLLPACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 pack post divide acknowledge status (active high)

Table 24: GP_SYSPLLSEL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..30	RSD_31To30	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
29..26	GP_SYSSELR	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 Pins to select bandwidth
25..22	GP_SYSSELI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x4 Pins to select bandwidth
21..17	GP_SYSSELP	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x7 Pins to select bandwidth
16..0	GP_SYSMDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x200 m: Feedback divider

Table 25: GP_SYSPLLCONTROL

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..21	RSD_31To21	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
20..11	GP_SYSNDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x302 n: Pre-divider
10..4	GP_SYSPDEC	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x62 p: Post divider
3	GP_SYSPLLDIRECTI	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1 SYSPLL directi pin. 1: bypass of pre-divider
2	GP_SYSPLLDIRECTO	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1 SYSPLL directo pin. 1: bypass of post-divider
1	GP_SYSPLLBYPASS	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 SYSPLL bypass pin
0	GP_SYSPLLPD	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x1 SYSPLL pd pin

Table 26: GP_SYSPLLSTATUS

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..5	RSD_31To5	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
4	GP_SYSPLLFR	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 fr (freeRunning) status (active high)
3	GP_SYSPLLLOCK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 lock status (active high)
2	GP_SYSPLLNACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 nack pre divide acknowledge status (actiev high)
1	GP_SYSPLLMACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 mack feedback divide acknowledge status (active high)
0	GP_SYSPLLPACK	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 pack post divide acknowledge status (active high)

8.9 Power-on and Reset

This section describes the reset mechanism of the PNX2000 device. The Power Management and Reset Unit (PMRU) provides selectable internally and externally generated power-on resets (POR). The PMRU filters out glitches of up to 240 ns and extends reset for 1.2 ms to allow the crystal oscillator and PLLs to stabilize. It also produces individual soft reset signals for each block in the PNX2000 device.

8.9.1 Reset Selection

The operation of the PMRU is controlled by two external pins: select and reset_n. Three modes of operation can be selected, as shown in the following tables. For normal operation, Internal POR Mode or External POR mode should be used.

Table 27: Internal POR Mode (select=1, reset_n=0)

Reset_n	select	Vdd	Output
0	0	0	0 - [From POR with input from reset pin (=0)]
0	1	0	0 - [From internal POR]
0	1	1	1 - [From internal POR]

Table 28: External POR (select=0)

Reset_n	select	Vdd	Output
0	0	0	0 – [From POR with input from reset pin]
0	0	1	0 – [From POR with input from reset pin
1	0	1	1 – [From POR with input from reset pin

Table 29: POR Bypass Mode (select=reset_n)

Reset_n	select	Vdd	Output
0	0	0	0 – [From POR with input from reset pin]
0	0	1	0 – [From POR with input from reset pin]
1	1	1	1 – [Forced high via logic]

8.9.2 Reset Operation and Power Management

This section explains the sequence of power-up from initial power on, power down to standby and power up from standby modes.

8.9.2.1 Power on/External Hard Reset

The PNX2000 device enters a power-on/hard reset state when the internally or externally generated POR is asserted. The reset pulse then passes through the Glitch Filter. The filtered reset signal is extended by 1.2 ms during which the device is in standby mode. In this state all registers are assigned their reset values and all PLLs are switched OFF. The only clock running is the crystal clock. This allows the I^2C, GPR and BCU blocks to function.

The sequence to bring the device from standby to full power mode is as follows:

1. Configure and switch ON all PLLs
2. Enable and select clock frequencies
3. Remove software resets

8.9.2.2 Soft Resets

In addition to the power-on/hard reset, the PMRU also generates soft resets under the control of GPR settings. The following table shows the soft reset control bits:

Table 30: Soft Reset Control Bits

Register	Bit	Function
GP_DISTRICONTROL	GP_SOFTRESETEPICS	Active high soft reset (min. two 6.75 MHz periods) for EPICS DSPs in Sound Core
GP_DISTRICONTROL	GP_SOFTRESET128FS	Active high soft reset 128fs (min. two 6.75 MHz periods)
GP_RESETS	GP_DCU_RESET_N	Reset for DCU. Active low.
GP_RESETS	GP_VID_RESET_VD1_N	Viddec Core Reset. Active low.
GP_RESETS	GP_SND_CLK_POR_N	Sound Core master reset. Only release when clocks stable. Active low.
GP_RESETS	GP_I2D_RESET_N	Active Low I^2D reset
GP_RESETS	GP_SND_RESET27_N	Sound Core reset for 27MHz clock domain. Active low.
GP_RESETS	GP_SND_RESET135_N	Sound Core reset for 13.5MHz clock domain. Active low.
GP_RESETS	GP_SND_RESET675_N	Sound Core reset for 6.75MHz clock domain. Active low.
GP_RESETS	GP_ITU656_RESET_N	ITU656 Formatter Active low.

8.10 Interrupts

The PNX2000 device has a single external interrupt line. Interrupt conditions can be generated by the following modules:

- VIDDEC
- I^2D
- DCU
- BCU
- DEMDEC
- AUDIO

The external interrupt signal is the logical OR of the interrupt signals from all of the cores. A two-level interrupt status and control register scheme is used. The GTU contains top-level interrupt status and control registers that affect all interrupts generated by a given module. Each module that can signal interrupts contains a second level of status and control registers that deal with all the interrupt conditions generated by that module. The following procedure should be used for interrupt handling:

1. Read top-level interrupt status register to determine which module or modules are signaling an interrupt.
2. Select highest priority module (if multiple interrupts are pending).
3. Read module-level interrupt status register to determine which interrupt condition is being signaled.
4. Handle interrupt.

8.10.1 Top-Level Interrupt Status and Control Registers

Table 31: GP_IRQ_STAT.

Interrupt status flag for each module

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..7	RSD_31To7	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
6	GP_ITU656_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for FORMATTER
5	GP_VIDDEC_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for VIDDEC
4	GP_I2D_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for I^2D
3	GP_DCU_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for DCU
2	GP_BCU_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for BCU
1	GP_AUDIO_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for AUDIO DSP
0	GP_DEMDEC_INT	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 interrupt status for DEMDEC DSP

Table 32: GP_IRQ_ENAB

Interrupt enable bits for each module.

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..7	RSD_31To7	Read Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Reads zero
6..0	Gp_irq_enab_b	Read/Write	Reset value: 0x0 enable one or more interrupt requests '0' off, '1' on

Table 33: GP_IRQ_CLR

Top-level interrupt clear bits.

Remark: Note that setting the control bits in this register will not clear the external interrupt signal if the interrupt condition is still being signaled at the module level. Module interrupts must be cleared at the interrupt source i.e. the CLEAR register in the module that generated the interrupt.

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..7	RSD_31To7	Write Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Read returns error
6..0	Gp_irq_clr_b	Write Only	Reset value: 0x0 clear one or more interrupt requests '0' off, '1' on

Table 34: GP_IRQ_SET

Top-level interrupt set bits.

Bits	Name	Access Type	Description
31..7	RSD_31To7	Write Only	Reset value: 0x0 non-existent bits. Read returns error
6..0	Gp_irq_set_t	Write Only	Reset value: 0x0 set one or more interrupt requests '0' off, '1' on

Details of the second-level (module-level) interrupt status and control bits are given in the module documentation.

8.11 Miscellaneous Registers

The GP_MODULE_ID register contains the module ID of the GTU.

The following registers in the GTU are related to debug and/or experimental functions and should not be used in normal operation. These registers should be left at their power-up default values.

GP_DEBUGCFG

GP_VCBFUNC_OUT_H

GP_VCBFUNC_OUT_L

GP_VCBVERSION_OUT

GP_VCBFUNCTIONS_H

GP_VCBFUNCTIONS_L

GP_VCBCONTROL

GP_MTD_M_STAB

GP_DTM_M_STAB

GP_TIMEBASE_2

GP_TIMEBASE_1

RFU_28

RFU_22

GP_NCOUNTVAL

GP_LLPLLSEL

GP_LLPLLCONTROL

GP_LLPLLSTATUS

9.1 Video Standards

Table 1: PAL Standard

Standard	FH	AVIP Output Format	Specification	Jaguar Feature List V8.1	Display Mode
PAL-D/K	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 165 + 160	625i
PAL-I	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 166 + 160	625i
PAL-M	1	720x480@60i 525 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 167 + 160	525i
PAL-N	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 168 + 160	625i
PAL-B/G	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 174 + 160	625i
PAL-H	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 160	625i
PAL443-60	1	720x480@60i 525 lines		Video 160	525i

Table 2: SECAM Standards

Standard	FH	AVIP Output Format	Specification	Jaguar Feature List V8.1	Display Mode
SECAM-D/K	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 169 + 160	625i
SECAM-K1	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 170 + 160	625i
SECAM-L	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 171 + 160	625i
SECAM-L1	1	720x576@50i 625 lines		Video 172 + 160	625i
SECAM-B/G	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 163 + 160	625i
SECAM-H	1	720x576@50i 625 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 160	625i

Table 3: NTSC Standards

Standard	FH	AVIP Output Format	Specification	Jaguar Feature List V8.1	Display Mode
NTSC-M	1	720x480@60i 525 lines	ITU-R BT.470-6	Video 164 + 159	525i
NTSC-N	1	720x576@50i 625 lines		Video 159	625i
NTSC-Japan	1	720x480@60i 525 lines		Video 159	525i
NTSC443-60	1	720x480@60i 525 lines		Video 159	525i
NTSC443-50	1	720x576@50i 625 lines		Video 159	625i

Table 4: ATSC Standards

Standard	FH	AVIP Output Format	Specification	Jaguar Feature List V8.1	Display Mode
1080i@50Hz	2	720x1080@50i 1125 lines	SMPTE274M(6)		1080i@50Hz
1080i@60Hz	2	720x1080@60i 1125 lines	SMPTE274M(4)		1080i@60Hz
1152i@50Hz	2	720x1152@50i 1250 lines	AS4933.1-200x		1152i@50Hz

[4-1] ATSC input source (component video) can be YPrPb (sync on Y) or RGB (sync on external H, V)

Table 5: NI Standards

Standard	FH	AVIP Output Format	Specification	Jaguar Federalist V8.1	Display Mode
NI@50Hz	1	720x576@50i 624 lines			624ni
NI@60Hz	1	720x480@60i 524 lines			524ni

Table 6: Component Video Standards

Standard	FH	AVIP Output Format	Specification	Jaguar Feature List V8.1	Display Mode	Synchronization
YPrPb@50Hz	1	720x576@50i 625 lines			625i	Y or CVBS
YPrPb@60Hz	1	720x480@60i 525 lines	EIA-770.2-A(4)		525i	Y or CVBS
RGB@50Hz	1	720x576@50i 625 lines			625i	G or CVBS
YPrPb@50Hz	2	720x576@50p 625 lines			576p	Y
YPrPb@60Hz	2	720x480@60p 525 lines	EIA-770.2-A(8)		480p	Y
RGB@50Hz	2	720x576@50p 625 lines			576p	External H, V
RGB@60Hz	2	720x480@60p 525 lines	EIA-770.2-A(8)		480p	External H, V

9.2 Data Capture Standards

Table 7: Data Capture Standards

Data Type	FH	Line Captured	Specification	Jaguar Feature List V8.1	Display Mode
WST625	1	6-22, 318-335	ITU-R BT.653, ETS 300 706	UI 124	625i
WST525	1	10-21, 273-284	ITU-R BT.653	UI 124	525i
WSS625	1	23	ETS 300 294 V1.4.1, ITU-R BT.1119-2	UI 218	625i
WSS525	1	20, 283	EIAJ CPX-1204	UI 218	525i
CC625	1	22, 335	EIA 608B		625i
CC525	1	21, 284	EIA 608	UI 209	525i
VPS625	1	16	ETS 300 231	UI 213	625i
VITC525	1	14, 277			525i
VITC625	1	19, 332			625i
NABTS	1	10-21, 273-284			525i

9.3 Audio Standards

Table 8: Audio Standards

Stand.	Ch.1 Freq. MHz	Ch.2 Freq. MHz	Country / Area	DemDec Main O/P	DemDec Mono O/P	DemDec SAP O/P	De-emphasis/ Noise Red.	Stereo / Dual Ident.
B/G A2	5.5 (FM)	5.742 (FM)	Germany, Netherlands, Italy, Austria, Switzerland, Malaysia, Australia, Israel, Saudi Arabia	FM1 / FM2 Dematrix	FM1			Y
B/G NICAM	5.5 (FM)	5.850 (NICAM)	Scandinavia, Spain, Belgium, New Zealand, Singapore	NICAM	FM1 (analogue)			Y
D/K A2 (1)	6.5 (FM)	6.258 (FM)		FM1 / FM2 Dematrix	FM1			Y
D/K A2 (2)	6.5 (FM)	6.742 (FM)		FM1 / FM2 Dematrix	FM1			Y
D/K A2 (3)	6.5 (FM)	5.742 (FM)		FM1 / FM2 Dematrix	FM1			Y
D/K NICAM	6.5 (FM)	5.850 (NICAM)	Eastern Europe, GUS, China	NICAM	FM1 (analogue)			Y
L NICAM	6.5 (AM)	5.850 (NICAM)	France	NICAM	AM1 (analogue)			Y
I NICAM	6.0 (FM)	6.552 (NICAM)	Great Britain, Hong Kong	NICAM	FM1 (analogue)			Y
M Korea	4.5 (FM)	4.742 (FM)	Korea	FM1 / FM2 Dematrix	FM1			Y
M BTSC (NTSC)	4.5 (FM)	MPX demod.	USA, Canada, Mexico, Brazil, Taiwan	FM1 / AM subcarrier dematrix	FM1 (baseband)	FM subcarrier	DBX on Sub or SAP	N/A
M BTSC (PAL)	4.5 (FM)	MPX demod.	Argentina	FM1 / AM subcarrier dematrix	FM1 (baseband)	FM subcarrier	DBX on Sub or SAP	N/A
M EIAJ	4.5 (FM)	MPX demod.	Japan	FM1 / FM subcarrier dematrix	FM1 (baseband)			Y
FM Radio (Europe)	10.7 or program -mable	MPX demod.	Europe	FM1 / AM subcarrier dematrix	FM1 (baseband)		50us	N/A
FM Radio (USA)	10.7 or program -mable	MPX demod.	USA	FM1 / AM subcarrier dematrix	FM1 (baseband)		75us	N/A

9.4 Display Modes

Table 9: Display Modes

Display Mode	625i	525i	576p	480p	1080i/ 50Hz	1080i/ 60Hz	1152i/ 50Hz	624ni	524ni
FH	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	1	1
Field Freq (Hz)	50	59.94	N/A	N/A	50	60	50	50 (typical)	60 (typical)
Frame Freq (Hz)	25	29.97	50	59.94	25	30	25	25 (typical)	30 (typical)
Line Freq (Hz)	15625	15734	31250	31468	28125	33750	31250	15625 (typical)	15734 (typical)
Total Video Lines/ Frame	625	525	625	525	1125	1125	1250	624	524
Active Video Lines/ Frame	576	480	576	480	1080	1080	1152	576	480
Total Pixels/Line	864	858	864	858	2640	2200	1536	864	858
Active Pixels/Line	720	720	720	720	1920	1920	1280	720	720
Pixel Clock (MHz)	13.5	13.5	27	27	74.25	74.25	48	13.5	13.5
Total Pixels/Line (From VIDDEC)	864	858	864	858	990	826	864	864	858
Active Pixels/Line (From VIDDEC)	720	720	720	720	720	720	720	720	720
VBI Lines - inclusive (From AVIP)	1-22 311-335 624-625	1-22 263-285	1-44 621-625	1-45	1-20 561-583 1124-1125	1-20 561-583 1124-1125	1-44 621-669 1246-1250	1-22 311-334 623-624	1-22 263-284
Field Indicator = 0	1-312	4-265	1-625	1-525	1-563	1-563	1-625	1-312	4-265
Field Indicator = 1	313-625	266-525, 1-3	N/A	N/A	564-1125	564-1125	626-1250	313-624	266-524, 1-3
Vsync Line (From VIDDEC)	3, 316	6, 269	3	9	3, 566	3, 566	3, 628	3, 315	6, 268

[9-1] 525i and 524ni use the NTSC line numbering system

9.5 ITU656 Formatter Settings

Table 10: ITU656 Formatter Settings

Display Mode	625i	525i	576p	480p	1080i/50Hz	1080i/60Hz	1152i/50Hz	624ni	524ni
config (0x000)	0x00008000	0x00008001	0x00008000	0x00008001	0x00008003	0x00008002	0x00008000	0x00008000	0x00008001
data ID: VBI (0x004)	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154	0x15491154
data ID:HBI (0x008)	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA	0x2AAAAAA
capture (0x00C)	0x0000526E	0x0000526A	0x00100000	0x00100000	0x00100000	0x00100000	0x00100000	0x0000526E	0x0000526A
vf_control (0x014)	0x00001271	0x0000120D	0x00003271	0x0000320D	0x00003465	0x00003465	0x000034E2	0x00001270	0x0000120C
vf_sync (0x018)	0x0013C003	0x0010D006	0x00003003	0x00009009	0x00236003	0x00236003	0x00274003	0x0013B003	0x0010C006
field_1 (0x01C)	0x00271138	0x00003109	0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFFFFF	0x00465233	0x00465233	0x004E2271	0x00270138	0x00003109
field_2 (0x020)	0x0000313C	0x0000610D	0x00003FFF	0x00009FFF	0x00003236	0x00003236	0x00003274	0x0000313B	0x0000610C
vbi_1 (0x024)	0x0014F136	0x0001620D	0x0002C26C	0x0002D20D	0x00014463	0x00014463	0x0002C4DD	0x0014E136	0x0001620C
vbi_2 (0x028)	0x0001626F	0x0011D106	0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFFFFF	0x00247230	0x00247230	0x0029D26C	0x0001626E	0x0011C106
vbi_3 (0x02C)	0x00FFF003	0x00FFF006	0x00FFF003	0x00FFF009	0x00FFF003	0x00FFF003	0x00FFF003	0x00FFF003	0x00FFF006
vbi_4 (0x030)	0x00FFF13C	0x00FFF10D	0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFFFFF	0x00FFF236	0x00FFF236	0x00FFF274	0x00FFF13B	0x00FFF10C

[10-1] The "data ID: VBI" values are set for the Jaguar system (VIPER).

[10-2] The "data ID: HBI" values are nominal to ensure a timing code is not generated, Columbus doesn't use the ANC header.

Table 11: Different Settings when Interfacing to Columbus

Display Mode	625i	525i	1080i/50Hz	1080i/60Hz	624ni	524ni
config (0x000)	0x00008044	0x00008045	0x00008000	0x00008001	0x00008044	0x00008045
capture (0x00C)			0x0003BF60	0x1F100000		

Table 12: Different Settings when using External Syncs in Display Mode 1152i/50Hz

Display Mode	1152i/50Hz
vf_sync (0x018)	0x00275002
field_1 (0x01C)	0x004E2270
field_2 (0x020)	0x00002275
vbi_3 (0x02C)	0x00FFF002
vbi_4 (0x030)	0x00FFF275

9.6 Viddec Settings

Table 13: Viddec Settings

Display Mode	625i + 624ni	525i + 524ni	625i YPrPb	525i YPrPb	625i YPrPb Syncon CVBS	525i YPrPb Syncon CVBS	625i YC	525i YC	625i RGB	525i RGB	625i SOG RGB	525i SOG RGB	576p YPrPb	480p YPrPb	1080i/ 50Hz YPrPb	1080i/ 60Hz YPrPb	1152i/ 50Hz YPrPb
MUX0 (0x040)	0x0000 0100	0x000 00100	0x000 00104	0x000 00104	0x00000 100	0x00000 100	0x000 00108	0x000 00108	0x000 00100	0x000 00100	0x000 00104	0x000 00104	0x000 00104	0x000 00104	0x000 00104	0x000 00104	0x000 00104
AGC_Y_C YC_AMP (0x088)	0x8138 0080	0x813 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x61380 080	0x61380 080	0x81c 00000	0x81c 00000	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080	0x613 80080
AGC_CVB S_YYC_C ONTROL (0x094)	0x03E1 01CD	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E1 01CD	0x03E1 01CD	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101C D	0x03E 101CD	0x03E 101CD	0x03E 101CD
AGC_Y_C YC_CONT ROL (0x098)	0x0361 00E8	0x036 100E8	0x036 1015D	0x036 1015D	0x03610 15D	0x03610 15D	0x006 10500	0x006 10500	0x016 1015D	0x016 1015D	0x016 1015D	0x016 1015D	0x036 1015D	0x036 1015D	0x036 1015D	0x036 1015D	0x036 1015D
AGC_Y_C YC_TARG ETS (0x09C)	0x0100 01FF	0x010 001FF	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x01000 13B	0x01000 13B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x010 0013B	0x00F F01FF
AGC_LOW ER_GAIN_ LIMITS (0x0A0)	0x11F5 08AB	0x11F 508A B	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F55 08AB	0x0F55 08AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x0F5 508AB	0x11F 508AB
AGC_UPP ER_GAIN_ LIMITS (0x0A4)	0x332E 6ADB	0x332 E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BAE 6ADB	0x2BAE 6ADB	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x15D E6AD B	0x15D E6AD B	0x15D E6AD B	0x15D E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B	0x2BA E6AD B
FSTBLNK (0x0C0)	0x0000 1400	0x000 01400	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x00001 800	0x00001 800	0x000 01400	0x000 01400	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800	0x000 01800
HV_INFO_ 1 (0x100)	0x0000 0060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x00000 060	0x00000 060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x000 00060	0x000 0002B	0x000 0002C	0x000 00004	0x000 0004B	0x000 0002A
HV_INFO_ 2 (0x104)	0x0000 0048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x00000 048	0x00000 048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x000 00048	0x000 00024	0x000 00024	0x000 00014	0x000 00014	0x000 00024
HV_INFO_ 3 (0x108)	0x0100 0080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x01000 080	0x01000 080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x010 00080	0x010 00040	0x010 00040	0x010 0002C	0x010 0002C	0x010 0002C
HV_INFO_ 4 (0x10C)	0x0000 0120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x00000 120	0x00000 120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x000 00120	0x000 00090	0x000 00090	0x000 00090	0x000 00090	0x000 00090
SUBPIX_P LL_SYNC0 (0x140)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	0x000 00200	0x000 00200	0x006 C0600	0x000 C0600	0x004 C0200
SUBPIX_P LL_SYNC1 (0x144)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	0x000 00407	0x000 20407	0x000 60407	0x000 60407	0x000 60005
SUBPIX_P LL_SYNC2 (0x148)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	0x000 9B403	0x000 82404	0x000 8BC04	0x000 8BC04	0x000 8BC04
SUBPIX_P LL_SYNC3 (0x14C)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	0x000 0C7A1	0x000 0C7A7	0x000 F37BF	0x000 0A7BF	0x000 0AF9F
DMSD_V_ SYNC (0x184)	0x012F 0150	0x00F E01D 0	0x012 F0150	0x00F E01D0	0x012F 0150	0x00FE 01D0	0x012 F0150	0x00F E01D0	0x012 F0150	0x00F E01D 0	0x012 F0150	0x00F E01D 0	0x012 F0150	0x00F E01D0	0x012 F0150	0x00F E01D0	0x012 F0150

Table 14: Different Settings when Decoding SECAM

Display Mode	625i	525i	624ni	524ni
DMSD_FILTERS (0x190)	0x016A2DEB	0x016A2DEB	0x016A2DEB	0x016A2DEB

Table 15: Different Settings when Decoding YC

Display Mode	625i	525i	624ni	524ni
DMSD_FILTERS (0x190)	0x016A8006	0x016A8006	0x016A8006	0x016A8006

Table 16: Additional Settings when Interfacing to Columbus

Display Mode	625i	525i	624ni	524ni
DMSD_FILTERS (0x190)	0x016A0006	0x016A0006	0x016A0006	0x016A0006
DMSD_COL_DEC (0x18C)	0x00780200	0x00780200	0x00780200	0x00780200

Table 17: Additional/Different Settings using External HV Syncs

Display Mode	576p RGB	480p RGB	1080i/50Hz RGB	1080i/60Hz RGB	1152i/50Hz RGB
MUX0 (0x040)	0x00000004	0x00000004	0x00000004	0x00000004	0x00000004
FSTBLNK (0x0C0)	0x00001800	0x00001800	0x00001800	0x00001800	0x00001800
SUBPIX_PLL_SYNC0 (0x140)	0x00000A00	0x00000A00	0x006C0E00	0x000C0E00	0x004C0A00
SUBPIX_PLL_SYNC3 (0x14C)	0x00001775	0x00001F7D	0x000E7793	0x000FF793	0x00000771

[17-1] Assumes V connected to vsync1, inverted V connected to vsync2 and H connected to hsync1.

[17-2] Positive syncs settings: Vertical lock achieved on vsync1

Table 18: Negative Syncs Settings

Display Mode	576p RGB	480p RGB	1080i/50Hz RGB	1080i/60Hz RGB	1152i/50Hz RGB
MUX0 (0x040)	0x00000084	0x00000084	0x00000084	0x00000084	0x00000084
FSTBLNK (0x0C0)	0x00001810	0x00001810	0x00001810	0x00001810	0x00001810
SUBPIX_PLL_SYNC0 (0x140)	0x00000A00	0x00000A00	0x006C0E00	0x000C0E00	0x004C0A00
SUBPIX_PLL_SYNC3 (0x14C)	0x000117B5	0x0000EFB9	0x000EE7B1	0x000077B3	0x0000FFAF

[18-1] Vertical lock achieved on vsync2

9.7 DCU Register Settings

Table 19: DCU Register Settings

Data Type	WST625	WST525	WSS625	WSS525	VPS625	CC525	CC625	VITC625	VITC525	NABTS
DCR1 (0x000)	0x86402701	0x86402709	0x86402701	0x86402709	0x86402701	0x86402709	0x86402701	0x86402701	0x86402709	0x86402709
LCR2_5 (0x004)	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
LCR6_9 (0x008)	0x00000000	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
LCR10_13 (0x00C)	0x00000000	0x44444444	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xCCCCCCCC
LCR14_17 (0x010)	0x00000000	0x44444444	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFF22FFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFA	0xCCCCCCCC
LCR18_21 (0x014)	0x00000000	0x44444444	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFF77FFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0x55FFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFF99FF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xCCCCCCCC
LCR22_24 (0x018)	0xFFFFFF00	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFF33FF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFF11	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF	0xFFFFFFFF
DCR2 (0x02C) Color (not YC) Monochrome + YC	0x00800444 0x00800244	0x00800644 0x00800544	0x00800444 0x00800244	0x00800644 0x00800544	0x00800444 0x00800244	0x00800644 0x00800544	0x00800444 0x00800244	0x00800444 0x00800244	0x00800644 0x00800544	0x00800644 0x00800544

Table 20: Different Settings when Interfacing to Columbus

Data Type	WST625	WST525	WSS625	WSS525	VPS625	CC525	CC625	VITC625	VITC525	NABTS
DCR2 (0x02C) Color	0x00800244	0x00800544	0x00800244	0x00800544	0x00800244	0x00800544	0x00800244	0x00800244	0x00800544	0x00800544

9.8 I²D Settings

Table 21: I²D Settings

Display Mode	625i (Except YC)	525i (Except YC)	576p	480p	1080i/50Hz	1080i/60Hz	1152i/50Hz	624ni (Except YC)	524ni (Except YC)
RX_CTRL (0x000)	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000
REC DEMUX MODE (0x018)	0x0001FFF9	0x0001FFF9	0x0001FFFA	0x0001FFFA	0x0001FFFA	0x0001FFFA	0x0001FFFA	0x0001FFF9	0x0001FFF9

Table 22: I²D Settings (YC)

Display Mode	625i YC	525i YC	624ni YC	524ni YC
RX_CTRL (0x000)	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000	0x00000000
REC DEMUX MODE (0x018)	0x0001FFF8	0x0001FFF8	0x0001FFF8	0x0001FFF8

9.9 GTU Settings

Table 23: Crystal Divider Settings

	GP_XTALCLKSEL	Input Crystal/Clock frequency	Xtal_clk frequency
GP_CLKSEL[0] (0x004)	0	27 MHz	27 MHz
GP_CLKSEL[0] (0x004)	1	27 MHz	13.5 MHz
GP_CLKSEL[0] (0x004)	0	13.5 MHz	13.5 MHz
GP_CLKSEL[0] (0x004)	1	13.5 MHz	6.75 MHz

[23-1] For initialization procedure to set-up and enable clocks refer to Section 10.1.

Table 24: SYSPLL and TURBOPLL Divider Settings

Xtal clk	27MHz	13.5MHz (default)	6.75MHz
GP_SYSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x0018162C	0x0018162C	0x0018162C
GP_SYSPLLSEL (0x034)	0x00880008	0x010E0200	0x01DA00C0
GP_TURBOPLLCONTROL (0x02C)	0x00016420	0x00001420	0x00101420
GP_TURBOPLLSEL (0x028)	0x037E1006	0x037E1006	0x037E1006

Table 25: WSPLL Divider Settings - Auto Master Mode

Xtal clk	27MHz	13.5MHz (default)	6.75MHz
Audio sample rate = 48KHz			
GP_WSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x030659D0	0x030149D0	0x030509D0
GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL (0x010)	0x00BE5B69	0x00BE5B69	0x00BE5B69
Audio sample rate = 44.1kHz			
GP_WSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x03077030	0x030550E0	0x030550E0
GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL (0x010)	0x00BE29ED	0x00BE29ED	0x00BE6EB5
Audio sample rate = 32kHz			
GP_WSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x030149D0	0x030509D0	0x030519D0
GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL (0x010)	0x013E1200	0x013E1200	0x013E1200

Table 26: WSPLL Divider Settings - Master Mode

Xtal clk	27MHz	13.5MHz (default)	6.75MHz
Audio sample rate = 48KHz			
GP_WSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x008659D0	0x008149D0	0x008509D0
GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL (0x010)	0x00BE5B69	0x00BE5B69	0x00BE5B69
Audio sample rate = 44.1kHz			
GP_WSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x00877030	0x008550E0	0x008550E0
GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL (0x010)	0x00BE29ED	0x00BE29ED	0x00BE6EB5
Audio sample rate = 32kHz			
GP_WSPLLCONTROL (0x038)	0x008149D0	0x008509D0	0x008519D0
GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL (0x010)	0x013E1200	0x013E1200	0x013E1200

Table 27: Clock Settings for 1fh/2fh video modes

	Control Bit	1FH	2FH
GP_CLKSEL[1] (0x004)	GP_DTOFREQSEL_VID	0	1
GP_CLKSEL[3:2] (0x004)	GP_ITUCLKSEL	01	00
GP_CLKSEL[4] (0x004)	GP_MPIFCLKSEL	0	1

Table 28: Enables/Resets

GP_CLKEN (0x000)	0x000001FF
GP_DISTRICONTROL (0x00C)	0x00000027

9.10 BCU Settings

Table 29: BCU Settings

TOUT (0x018)	0x00000800

[29-1] Timeout after 2048 PI bus cycles. This is slightly longer than two audio samples at the lowest sample rate and highest PI bus clock frequency.

9.11 MPIF Settings

Table 30: Recommended MPIF to AVIP Video Settings

Display Mode	1FH CVBS	1FH RGB	1FH YC	1FH YPrPb	480p 576p 1152i RGB	480p 576p 1152i YPrPb	1080i RGB	1080i YPrPb
Data link mode (0x07)	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x01	0x01	0x11	0x11
Video switches 0 (0x08)	0x01	0x02	0x0B	0x02	0x02	0x02	0x02	0x02
Video switches 2 (0x0A)	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00
RGB switches (0x0B)	0x22	0x62	0x22	0x52	0x62	0x52	0x62	0x52

[30-1] Setting shown were used during AVIP M1 validation using a JBS or AMB/ADB

[30-2] CVBS source uses Scart 1 connector (Bottom)

[30-3] RGB/YPrPb source uses Scart 2 connector (Top)

[30-4] YC source uses SVHS in connector

10.1 Power-up Sequence (after Power-on Reset)

1. Set BCU timeout.

   Write value 0x00000800 to address 0x07fe8018 (BCU TOUT register)

2. Configure xtal divider, if required.

   Write value 1 to bit 0 of address 0x07ff7004 (bit GP_XTALCLKSEL of register GP_CLKSEL)

3. Configure PLL sel registers, if required.

   Write the desired values to addresses 0x07ff7010, 0x07ff7028, 0x07ff7034 (registers GP_WSPLLMASTERSEL, GP_TURBOPLLSEL, GP_SYSPLLSEL)

4. Configure PLL control registers & clear power-down bits.

   Write desired values to addresses 0x07ff7018, 0x07ff702c, 0x07ff7038 (registers GP_WSPLLCONTROL, GP_TURBOPLLCONTROL, and GP_SYSPLLCONTROL)

5. Check that PLLs are locked.

   Read Lock bits (bit 3) of PLL status registers, addresses 0x07ff701c, 0x07ff7030, 0x07ff703c (registers GP_WSPLLSTATUS, GP_TURBOPLLSTATUS, and GP_SYSPLLSTATUS). Reading a value of 1 indicates that the PLL is locked. PLLs should lock in around 3 ms.

6. Enable internal clock signals.

   Write value 0x000001ff to address 0x07ff7000 (register GP_CLKEN) and write value 0x00000027 to address 0x07ff700c (register GP_DISTRICONTROL).

7. Release soft resets.

   Write value 0x00000ff to address 0x07ff7058 (register GP_RESETS).

Device is now in full-power mode. All internal registers are accessible.

10.2 Full-power to Standby Sequence

1. Power-down I^2D receivers

   Write value 0x00000001 to address 0x07ff800 (register RX_CTRL).

2. Disable internal clock signals.

   Write value 0x0 to address 0x07ff700c (register GP_DISTRICONTROL) and write value 0x0 to address 0x07ff7000 (register GP_CLKEN).

3. Power-down PLLs.

Write value 0 to bit 0 of addresses 0x07ff7010, 0x07ff702c, 0x07ff7038 (registers GP_WSPLLCONTROL, GP_TURBOPLLCONTROL, and GP_SYSPLLCONTROL).

Device is now in standby mode. Only GTU and BCU registers are accessible.

10.3 Standby to Full-power Sequence

1. Clear PLL power-down bits.

   Write desired values to addresses 0x07ff7018, 0x07ff702c, 0x07ff7038 (registers GP_WSPLLCONTROL, GP_TURBOPLLCONTROL, and GP_SYSPLLCONTROL)

2. Check that PLLs are locked.

   Read Lock bits (bit 3) of PLL status registers, addresses 0x07ff701c, 0x07ff7030, 0x07ff703c (registers GP_WSPLLSTATUS, GP_TURBOPLLSTATUS, and GP_SYSPLLSTATUS). Reading a value of 1 indicates that the PLL is locked. PLLs should lock in around 3 ms.

3. Enable internal clock signals.

   Write value 0x000001ff to address 0x07ff7000 (register GP_CLKEN) and write value 0x00000027 to address 0x07ff700c (register GP_DISTRICONTROL).

4. Power-up I^2D receivers

   Write value 0x0 to address 0x07ff8000 (register RX_CTRL)

Device is now in full-power mode. All internal registers are accessible.

11.1 Application Example (Single PNX2000)

Figure 1 shows an overview of the top level hardware architecture of a typical TV application with a PNX3000 as the frontend and a PNX8550 as the main processor.

It is an analogue 2fH system chassis, with a single tuner providing high picture quality (natural motion). The low power standby mode is implemented using a separate microprocessor.

The single PNX2000, connected to a 13.5/27MHz crystal oscillator, provides the necessary PLL generated frequencies and clock domains, with ensuing clock skew, reset and power management.

Serial data words into the chip are received on one of the three I^2D data links, and then de-multiplexed into 44-bit audio/video parallel streams. The multi-standard decoder takes the 10 bit wide CVBS, Y/C and YUV signals and corrects deviation levels from +3 dB to – 3dB, improving signal to noise in the chain. This decoder can handle all world standards of PAL, SECAM and NTSC including Latin American. The decoder also incorporates a 2D comb filter for PAL (4 lines) and NTSC (2 lines) for improved luminance and chrominance separation. The YUV path and the synchronization can handle both 1Fh signals and 2Fh signals.

The PNX2000 supports VBI (Vertical Blanking Interval) data capture for e.g. Teletext, WSS, Line21 Data Services Cc and VPS., The data can be extracted from a CVBS video input source or the Y component. It may be transmitted multiplexed on a 525 or 625 line composite video transmission, or VPS in 625 line. The encoding of the input video stream into an output YUV DataStream is based on the CCIR Rec ITU-R BT.601/656. This means the YUV video components and synchronization signals are transmitted in a time multiplexed, pixel based format. Though the official recommendation is only defined for 625-line and 525-line systems (1fh), the syntax is also used for 2fh systems. VBI data from the VBI slicer is inserted in the vertical blanking interval of the DataStream. This data is formatted into an output data stream, in ITU-R BT. 601/656/1364 style., containing video and VBI data.

The sound core consists of two DSPs which include a PI bus connection with two slave select lines for control purposes. These units provide the complete sound core control functionality. The first is used to demodulate the off-air SIF signal and perform any necessary decoding to recover the mono or stereo audio content. The second performs a wide range of audio processing and enhancement features on the selected audio sources, for both analogue and digital based signal origins, before they are rendered on loudspeakers or headphones or routed to the external connectors on the set. All terrestrial TV sound standards are supported including AM/FM stereo, BTSC, NICAM and FM radio.

The PNX2000 contains five input stereo channels and two output stereo channels implemented as digital audio serial interfaces in I^2S format. The output interfaces can be used to supply audio signals from received TV broadcasts to a digital audio device in AES/EBU format. The input interfaces can be used to import serial audio signals from other sources for reproduction through the TV set's loudspeakers, headphones, scart1 and/or scart2 interfaces.

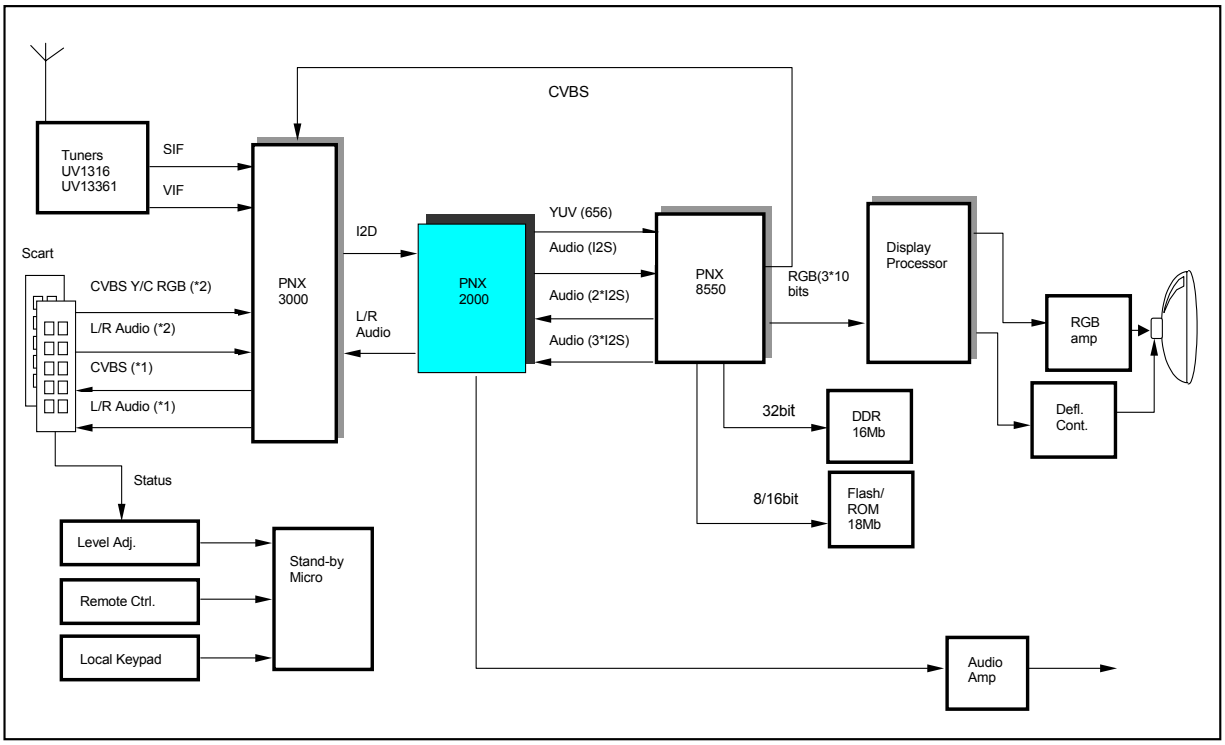


Figure 1: Typical TV Application Architecture

Chapter 12: PCB Layout Guidelines

PNX2000 User Manual

Rev. 1.0 — 28 November 2003

12.1 Introduction

In order to improve EMC performance and noise immunity, the following guidelines are suggested when designing a PCB for PNX2000 and associated components, e.g. PNX3000, tuners, saw filters etc.

12.2 Power Supplies and Grounding

This section looks at the various power supply connections that are used with the PNX2000 and the PNX3000. It provides recommendations on how to use the various layers of the PCB to achieve good electrical performance.

12.2.1 PNX2000

The PNX2000 requires nominal supplies of 1.8V (grouping 1-x), 3.3V (grouping 3-x) and 5V (grouping 5-x). The tolerances of these supplies are defined in the datasheet. x is an arbitrary group number

Table 1: PNX2000 3V3 Power Supplies

Name	Function	Grouping
VDDE	Digital peripheral (pad)	3-1
DTC_VDD3	VIDDEC	
SDAC_3V3	Sound Core DAC	

Table 2: PNX2000 1V8 Power Supplies

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
VDDI	Digital core and pads	1-1
XVDD	Oscillator	1-2
PLLVDDA	PLL	1-2
DLINK_VDDA	I^2D analogue	
DLINK_VDDD	I^2D digital	
DTC_VDDA	VIDDEC analogue	
SDAC_VDDD	Sound Core DAC	
VDDM	Memory	

Table 3: PNX2000 Ground References

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
VSSE	Ground reference for VDDE	GND
VSSIS	Ground reference for VDDI	GND
DLINK_VSSA	Ground reference for DLINK_VDDA	GND
DLINK_VSSD	Ground reference for DLINK_VDDD	GND
DTC_VSSA	Ground reference for DTC_VDDA	GND
XGND	Ground reference for XVDD	GND
SDAC_VSSD	Ground reference for SDAC	GND

Table 4: Non-connected Pins

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
NC_1		
NC_2		

12.2.2 PNX3000

The PNX3000 uses a nominal 8V and 5V supply, the allowable tolerance of these supplies is defined in the datasheet.

Table 5: PNX3000 8V / 5V Supplies

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
VCC1_ASW	Audio Switch	8-1/ 5-1
VCC2_ASW	Audio Switch	8-1/ 5-1

Table 6: PNX3000 5V Supplies

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
VCC_FILT	Filters	
VCC_RGB	RGB Matrix	
VCC_VADC	Video ADCs	
VCC_DIG	Digital	
VCC_I2D	Datalink	
VCC_AADC	Audio ADCs	
VCC_IF	IF	
VCC_SUP	Supply	
VCC1_VSW	Video Switch	
VCC2_VSW	Video Switch	

Table 7: PNX3000 Ground References

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
GND1_ASW	Ground reference for VCC1_ASW	GND
GND2_ASW	Ground reference for VCC2_ASW	GND
GND_FILT	Ground reference for VCC_FILT	GND
GND_RGB	Ground reference for VCC_RGB	GND

Table 7: PNX3000 Ground References *...Continued*

Name	Function Supplied	Grouping
GND_VADC	Ground reference for VCC_VADC	GND
GND_DIG	Ground reference for VCC_DIG	GND
GND_I2D	Ground reference for VCC_I2D	GND
GND_AADC	Ground reference for VCC_AADC	GND
GND1_IF	Ground reference for VCC_IF	GND
GND2_IF	Ground reference for VCC_IF	GND
GND_SUP	Ground reference for VCC_SUP	GND
GND_VSW	Ground reference for VCCx VSW	GND

The following recommendations are suggested for a 4-layer PCB:

- Two ground planes on both of the inner layers of the PCB with all ground connections made directly to these planes.
- A small, localised plane of 3V3 power should be provided on Layer 2. From this plane make direct connections to the supplies in group 3-1. The other supply groups may be filtered (series ferrite type BLM21), with 100nF/10nF de-coupling capacitors to the associated ground connection. Ensure suitable track thickness from the plane to source of supply.
- A small, localised plane of 1V8 power should be provided on Layer 4. From this plane make direct connections to the supplies in group 1-1. The other supply groups should be filtered (series ferrite) with de-coupling to the associated ground connection.
- Ensure suitable track thickness from the plane to source of supply.

Figure 1 shows this concept graphically to aid understanding.

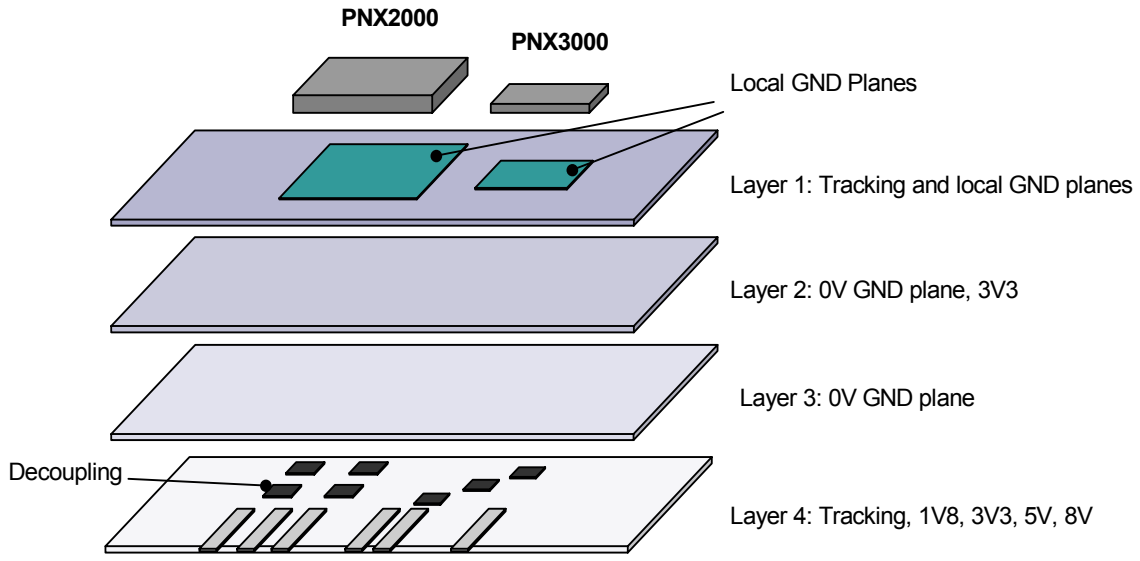


Figure 1: Example of PCB Structure

12.3 Signal Pins

12.3.1 Data-Link

The following recommendations for track layout apply:

- Ensure accuracy in the layout of the connections of the I^2D link receiver, in the PNX2000 to I^2D transmitter of PNX3000.
- Each pair of signals (e.g. DATA1N, DATAIP and STROBEIP, STROBEIN) should be routed as parallel tracks of equal length to avoid bias on these tracks. See Figure 3.
- Track length ‘L’ of 5-8 cm is recommended. However, experiments show lengths up to 20 cm can be functional.

- Tracks for I^{2}D links should be routed clear of other signals to avoid crosstalk.

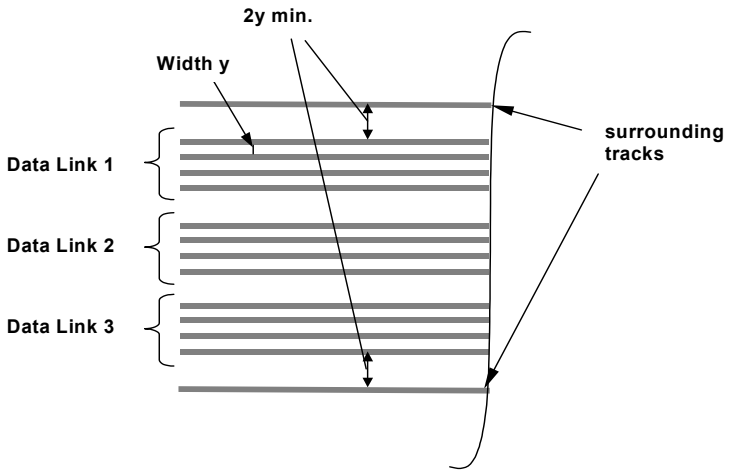


Figure 2: Suggested Data Link Routing

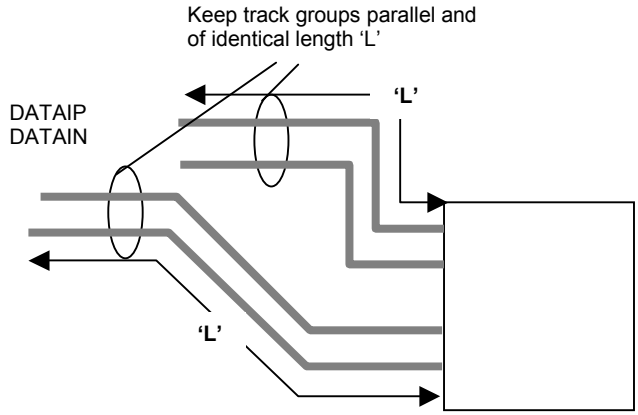


Figure 3: Track Length

12.3.2 SAW Filters and IF Leads

The tuner is normally 75Ω, while the SAW filters are specified for a source impedance of 50Ω with a load impedance of 2KΩ//3pF, therefore the following recommendations apply:

- Keep IF track between the Tuner and saw filters symmetrical (even for a asymmetric Tuner) in order to reject any common mode noise. It is recommended that ground shields are used around IF tracks.
- Keep track length between SAW filter and PNX3000 as short as possible and symmetrical, avoiding any other tracks across these connections.

- Keep a ground shield between input and output of the SAW filters, in order to achieve improved trap performance. ‘Stitch’ through to GND plane at regular intervals (see Figure 4).

More details can be found in the SAW filter manufacturer’s Application Notes.

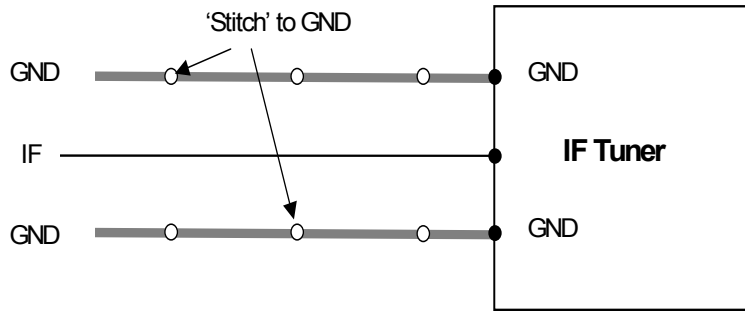


Figure 4: Ground Shields

12.3.3 DACs Reference Voltages

To ensure good audio performance, it is recommended that ADAC references (ADAC-P to ADAC-N) be connected as shown in Figure 5.

Star connections for SDAC_3V3, ADAC1..12_P, ADAC1..12_N.

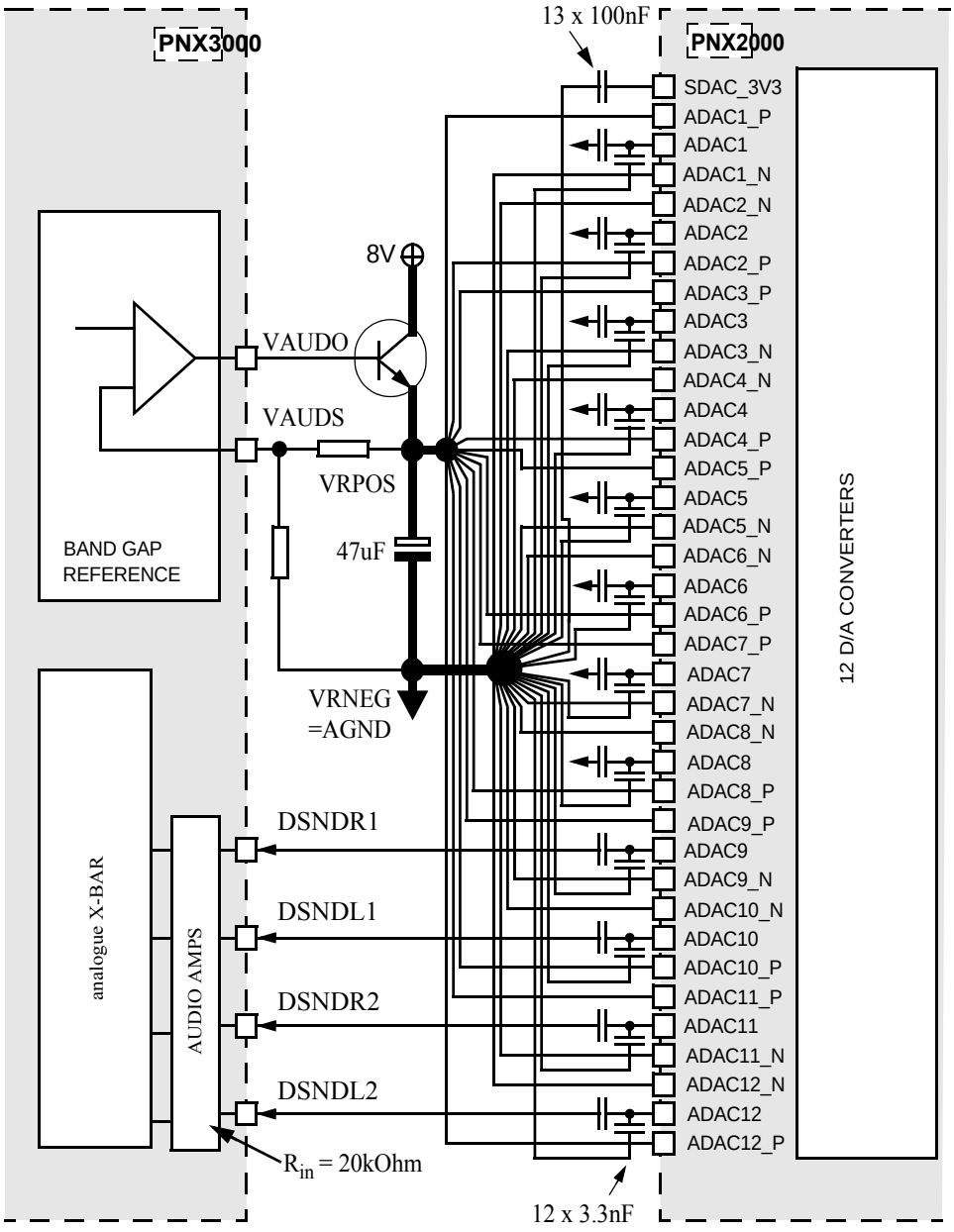


Figure 5: PNX2000 DAC Connections

13.1 Universal Register Debugger

The Universal Register Debugger (URD) is a software debugging tool available for use by customers on a PC platform.

The advanced tool can control the registers of all I^2C devices. It helps easy finding and testing of register values for specific applications.

The URD can be used with a Module Board for the PNX2000 (see Figure 1) in a PNX8550 platform. The URD supports the following features:

- Read / Write all registers
- Read / Write one register
- Write default values to registers
- Define and execute macros
- Save / Load current values of registers
- Full VBA compatible scripting language (URD basic)
- Special extensions to control the register values
- Possibility to create your own dialogs
- Full featured URD basic editor
- Syntax highlighting
- Context sensitive online help
- Debugger (Single Step, Watch)
- Push buttons to execute macros and scripts
- Sliders to control registers values
- The possibility to access COM objects
- Printer Port Support under Win NT.

The URD tool (currently v.3.12) is available to customers through the Systems & Applications Support Group Southampton:

Systems & Applications Support Group

DTV, BL-Broadband Home Servers

BU TV Systems, Southampton

tel: +44 (0) 2380 316476

fax: +44 (0) 2380 312612

Alternatively, download it from the Support Area on the Semiconductor Internet Site:

http://www.semiconductors.com.

This Support area is located at:

http://download.semiconductors.com under:

/hardware/PNX2000

To access the protected area, complete the electronic form located in the Support Area at:

http://download.semiconductors.com/unregistered/index.php?areaName=bhs

For URD tool support send an e-mail to:

URD@hamburg.sc.philips.com

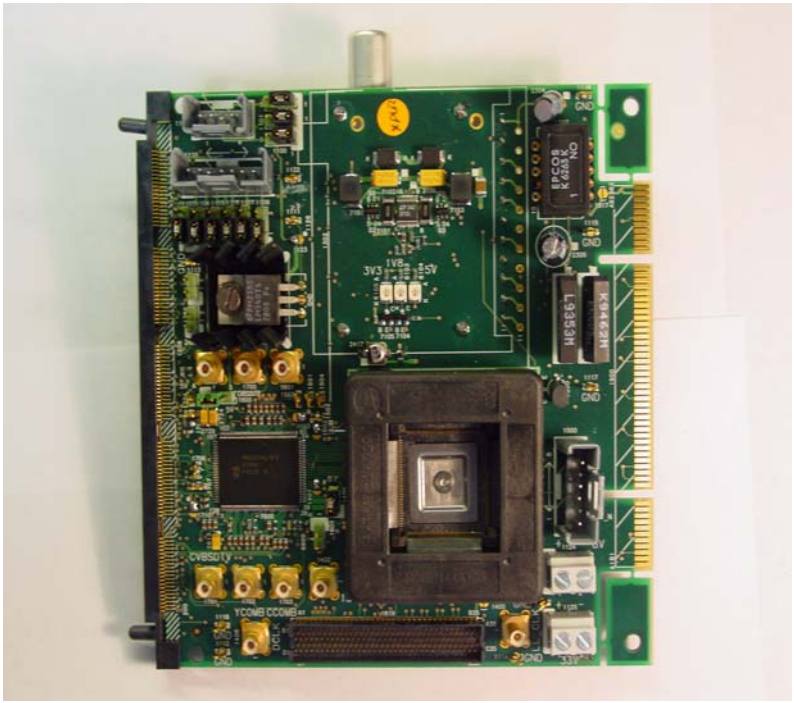


Figure 1: AMB - CE5109

1 Glossary

AES Advanced Encryption Standard

AGC Auto Gain Control

ASD Auto Standard Detection

AVL Auto Volume Level

CGU Clock Generation Unit

DBE Dynamic Bass Enhancement

DDEP Demodulator and Decoder Easy Programming

DIOP Digital Input / Output Processor

DPL Dolby® Pro Logic®

DQPSK Dual Quadrature Phase Shift Keying

DSP Digital Signal Processor

DTL Device Transaction Layer

DUB Dynamic Ultra Bass

DVP Digital Video Platform

EBU European Broadcasting Union

EMC Electro Magnetic Conduction

GTU Global Task Unit

I/O Input/Output

IP Intellectual Property

ITU International Telecommunication Union

LSB Least Significant Bit

MMIO Memory Mapped Input / Output

MSB Most Significant Bit

NICAM Near Instantaneously Companded Audio Multiplex

PI Peripheral Interface

PLL Phase Locked Loop

POR Power On Reset

RGB Red Green Blue digital/analogue color information

RSL Register Summary List

SRC Sample Rate Conversion

SSS Static Standard Selection

TCB Test Control Block

URD Universal Register De-bugger

URT Universal Register Toolkit

VBI Vertical Blanking Interval

2 References

[1] Rec. ITU-R BT.601-5

[2] Video systems (525/60) - Video and accompanied data using the vertical blanking interval, IEC 61880 1998-01

[3] Enhanced Teletext Specification, European Telecommunications Standards Institute, ETS 300 706, May 1997

[4] DTI, World System Teletext and Data Broadcasting System, Technical Specification, December 1987 (525 line WST only)

[5] EIA Standard - Line 21 Data Services, EIA-608-A, December 1999 (Closed Caption etc.)

[6] Specification of the Domestic Video Programme Delivery Control System (PDC), EBU, SPB 459 Revision 2, February 1992 (includes VPS information)

[7] 625-Line television Wide Screen Signalling (WSS), EBU / ETSI Draft prETS 300 294, November 1993

[8] Video systems (525/60) - Video and accompanied data using the vertical blanking interval - Analogue interface, IEC 61880 1998-01 (WSS525)

[9] EBU time-and-control codes for television tape-recordings (625-line television systems), EBU Tech. 3097-E, November 1985 (VITC625)

[10] Time and control code - video and audio tape for 525-line / 60-field systems, ANSI/ SMPTE 12M-1986, January 1986 (VITC525)

[11] Joint EIA / CVCC Recommended Practice for Teletext: North American Basic Teletext Specification (NABTS), EIA-516, May 1988

[12] Draft “CCIR descriptive booklet” - Japanese Teletext System Specification, Report 957 (MOD I) Doc. 11/J-, June 1985 (Moji)

[13] Rec. ITU-R BT.656-4. Interface for Digital Component Video Signals in 525-Line and 625-Line Television Systems Operating at the 4:2:2 Level of Recommended ITU-R BT.601 (Part A).

3 Definitions

Limiting values definition – Limiting values given are in accordance with the Absolute Maximum Rating System (IEC 60134). Stress above one or more of the limiting values may cause permanent damage to the device. These are stress ratings only and operation of the device at these or at any other conditions above those given in the Characteristics sections of the specification is not implied. Exposure to limiting values for extended periods may affect device reliability.

Application information – Applications that are described herein for any of these products are for illustrative purposes only. Philips Semiconductors make no representation or warranty that such applications will be suitable for the specified use without further testing or modification.

4 Disclaimers

Life support – These products are not designed for use in life support appliances, devices, or systems where malfunction of these products can reasonably be expected to result in personal injury. Philips Semiconductors customers using or selling these products for use in such applications do so at their own risk and agree to fully indemnify Philips Semiconductors for any damages resulting from such application.

Right to make changes – Philips Semiconductors reserves the right to make changes in the products - including circuits, standard cells, and/or software - described or contained herein in order to improve design and/or performance. When the product is in full production (status 'Production'), relevant changes will be communicated via a Customer Product/Process Change Notification (CPCN). Philips Semiconductors assumes no responsibility or liability for the use of any of these products, conveys no licence or title under any patent, copyright, or mask work right to these products, and makes no representations or warranties that these products are free from patent, copyright, or mask work right infringement, unless otherwise specified.

5 Licenses

Purchase of Philips I²C components

Purchase of Philips I²C components conveys a license under the Philips' I²C patent to use the components in the I²C system provided the system conforms to the I²C specification defined by Philips. This specification can be ordered using the code 9398 393 40011.

6 Trademarks

Nexperia™ – Trademark of Koninklijke Philips Electronics N.V.

Dolby® & Pro Logic® II Surround (DPL2) – Registered Trademarks of Dolby Laboratories

BBE® – Registered Trademark of BBE Sound, Inc.

7 Contact information

For additional information, please visit: **http://www.semiconductors.philips.com.**
For sales office addresses, send an email to:
sales.addresses@www.semiconductors.philips.com.

Date of release: 28 November 2003 **Document order number: UM10105_1**

PHILIPS

Let's make things better.